Chapter Nine

Mechanical Properties of Solids

9.1 INTRODUCTION

In Chapter 7, we studied the rotation of the bodies and then realised that the motion of a body depends on how mass is distributed within the body. We restricted ourselves to simpler situations of rigid bodies. A rigid body generally means a hard solid object having a definite shape and size. But in reality, bodies can be stretched, compressed and bent. Even the appreciably rigid steel bar can be deformed when a sufficiently large external force is applied on it. This means that solid bodies are not perfectly rigid.

A solid has definite shape and size. In order to change (or deform) the shape or size of a body, a force is required. If you stretch a helical spring by gently pulling its ends, the length of the spring increases slightly. When you leave the ends of the spring, it regains its original size and shape. The property of a body, by virtue of which it tends to regain its original size and shape when the applied force is removed, is known as **elasticity** and the deformation caused is known as **elastic** deformation. However, if you apply force to a lump of putty or mud, they have no gross tendency to regain their previous shape, and they get permanently deformed. Such substances are called **plastic** and this property is called **plasticity.** Putty and mud are close to ideal plastics.

The elastic behaviour of materials plays an important role in engineering design. For example, while designing a building, knowledge of elastic properties of materials like steel, concrete etc. is essential. The same is true in the design of bridges, automobiles, ropeways etc. One could also ask — Can we design an aeroplane which is very light but sufficiently strong? Can we design an artificial limb which is lighter but stronger? Why does a railway track have a particular shape like **I**? Why is glass brittle while brass is not? Answers to such questions begin with the study of how relatively simple kinds of loads or forces act to deform different solids bodies. In this chapter, we shall study the elastic behaviour and mechanical properties of solids which would answer many such questions.

9.2 ELASTIC BEHAVIOUR OF SOLIDS

We know that in a solid, each atom or molecule is surrounded by neighbouring atoms or molecules. These are bonded together by interatomic or intermolecular forces and stay in a stable equilibrium position. When a solid is deformed, the atoms or molecules are displaced from their equilibrium positions causing a change in the interatomic (or intermolecular) distances. When the deforming force is removed, the interatomic forces tend to drive them back to their original positions. Thus the body regains its original shape and size. The restoring mechanism can be visualised by taking a model of spring-ball system shown in the Fig. 9.1. Here the balls represent atoms and springs represent interatomic forces.

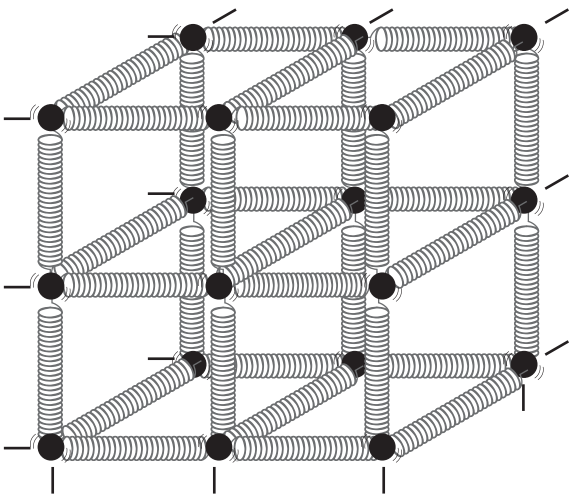


Fig. 9.1 *Spring-ball model for the illustration of elastic behaviour of solids.*

If you try to displace any ball from its equilibrium position, the spring system tries to restore the ball back to its original position. Thus elastic behaviour of solids can be explained in terms of microscopic nature of the solid. Robert Hooke, an English physicist (1635 - 1703 A.D) performed experiments on springs and found that the elongation (change in the length) produced in a body is proportional to the applied force or load. In 1676, he presented his law of elasticity, now called Hooke's law. We shall study about it in Section 9.4. This law, like Boyle's law, is one of the earliest quantitative relationships in science. It is very important to know the behaviour of the materials under various kinds of load from the context of engineering design.

9.3 STRESS AND STRAIN

When a force is applied on body, it is deformed to a small or large extent depending upon the nature of the material of the body and the magnitude of the deforming force. The deformation may not be noticeable visually in many materials but it is there. When a body is subjected to a deforming force, a restoring force is developed in the body. This restoring force is equal in magnitude but opposite in direction to the applied force. The restoring force per unit area is known as **stress.** If F is the force applied and A is the area of cross section of the body,

Magnitude of the stress = F/A (9.1)

The SI unit of stress is N m^{-2} or pascal (Pa) and its dimensional formula is [$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$].

There are three ways in which a solid may change its dimensions when an external force acts on it. These are shown in Fig. 9.2. In Fig.9.2(a), a cylinder is stretched by two equal forces applied normal to its cross-sectional area. The restoring force per unit area in this case is called **tensile stress**. If the cylinder is compressed under the action of applied forces, the restoring force per unit area is known as **compressive stress**. Tensile or compressive stress can also be termed as longitudinal stress.

In both the cases, there is a change in the length of the cylinder. The change in the length ΔL to the original length L of the body (cylinder in this case) is known as **longitudinal strain**.

$$\text{Longitudinal strain} \quad \frac{L}{L} \qquad (9.2)$$

However, if two equal and opposite deforming forces are applied parallel to the cross-sectional area of the cylinder, as shown in Fig. 9.2(b), there is relative displacement between the opposite faces of the cylinder. The restoring force per unit area developed due to the applied tangential force is known as **tangential** or **shearing stress**.

Robert Hooke
(1635 – 1703 A.D.)

Robert Hooke was born on July 18, 1635 in Freshwater, Isle of Wight. He was one of the most brilliant and versatile seventeenth century English scientists. He attended Oxford University but never graduated. Yet he was an extremely talented inventor, instrument-maker and building designer. He assisted Robert Boyle in the construction of Boylean air pump. In 1662, he was appointed as Curator of Experiments to the newly founded Royal Society. In 1665, he became Professor of Geometry in Gresham College where he carried out his astronomical observations. He built a Gregorian reflecting telescope; discovered the fifth star in the trapezium and an asterism in the constellation Orion; suggested that Jupiter rotates on its axis; plotted detailed sketches of Mars which were later used in the 19^{th} century to determine the planet's rate of rotation; stated the inverse square law to describe planetary motion, which Newton modified later etc. He was elected Fellow of Royal Society and also served as the Society's Secretary from 1667 to 1682. In his series of observations presented in Micrographia, he suggested wave theory of light and first used the word 'cell' in a biological context as a result of his studies of cork.

Robert Hooke is best known to physicists for his discovery of law of elasticity: **Ut tensio, sic vis** (This is a Latin expression and it means as the distortion, so the force). This law laid the basis for studies of stress and strain and for understanding the elastic materials.

As a result of applied tangential force, there is a relative displacement Δx between opposite faces of the cylinder as shown in the Fig. 9.2(b). The strain so produced is known as **shearing strain** and it is defined as the ratio of relative displacement of the faces Δx to the length of the cylinder L.

$$\text{Shearing strain} \quad \frac{x}{L} = \tan\theta \qquad (9.3)$$

where θ is the angular displacement of the cylinder from the vertical (original position of the cylinder). Usually θ is very small, $\tan\theta$ is nearly equal to angle θ, (if $\theta = 10°$, for example, there is only 1% difference between θ and $\tan\theta$).

It can also be visualised, when a book is pressed with the hand and pushed horizontally, as shown in Fig. 9.2 (c).

$$\text{Thus, shearing strain} = \tan\theta \approx \theta \qquad (9.4)$$

In Fig. 9.2 (d), a solid sphere placed in the fluid under high pressure is compressed uniformly on all sides. The force applied by the fluid acts in perpendicular direction at each point of the surface and the body is said to be under hydraulic compression. This leads to decrease in its volume without any change of its geometrical shape.

The body develops internal restoring forces that are equal and opposite to the forces applied by the fluid (the body restores its original shape and size when taken out from the fluid). The internal restoring force per unit area in this case

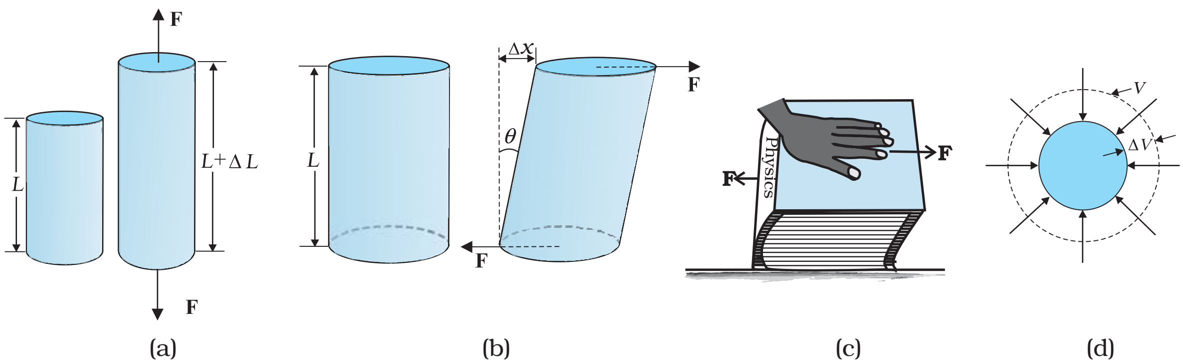


Fig. 9.2 *(a) Cylinder subjected to tensile stress stretches it by an amount ΔL. (b) A cylinder subjected to shearing (tangential) stress deforms by an angle θ .(c) A book subjected to a shearing stress (d) A solid sphere subjected to a uniform hydraulic stress shrinks in volume by an amount ΔV.*

is known as **hydraulic stress** and in magnitude is equal to the hydraulic pressure (applied force per unit area).

The strain produced by a hydraulic pressure is called **volume strain** and is defined as the ratio of change in volume (ΔV) to the original volume (V).

$$\text{Volume strain} \quad \frac{V}{V} \tag{9.5}$$

Since the strain is a ratio of change in dimension to the original dimension, it has no units or dimensional formula.

9.4 HOOKE'S LAW

Stress and strain take different forms in the situations depicted in the Fig. (9.2). For small deformations the stress and strain are proportional to each other. This is known as Hooke's law.

Thus,

stress $\propto$ strain

$$\text{stress} = k \times \text{strain} \tag{9.6}$$

where k is the proportionality constant and is known as modulus of elasticity.

Hooke's law is an empirical law and is found to be valid for most materials. However, there are some materials which do not exhibits this linear relationship.

9.5 STRESS-STRAIN CURVE

The relation between the stress and the strain for a given material under tensile stress can be found experimentally. In a standard test of tensile properties, a test cylinder or a wire is stretched by an applied force. The fractional change in length (the strain) and the applied force needed to cause the strain are recorded. The applied force is gradually increased in steps and the change in length is noted. A graph is plotted between the stress (which is equal in magnitude to the applied force per unit area) and the strain produced. A typical graph for a metal is shown in Fig. 9.3. Analogous graphs for compression and shear stress may also be obtained. The stress-strain curves vary from material to material. These curves help us to understand how a given material deforms with increasing loads. From the graph, we can see that in the region between O to A, the curve is linear. In this region, Hooke's law is obeyed. The body regains its original dimensions when the applied force is removed. In this region, the solid behaves as an elastic body.

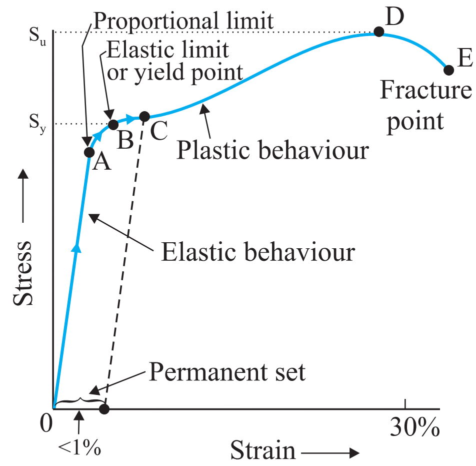


Fig. 9.3 *A typical stress-strain curve for a metal.*

In the region from A to B, stress and strain are not proportional. Nevertheless, the body still returns to its original dimension when the load is removed. The point B in the curve is known as **yield point** (also known as **elastic limit**) and the corresponding stress is known as **yield strength** (S_y) of the material.

If the load is increased further, the stress developed exceeds the yield strength and strain increases rapidly even for a small change in the stress. The portion of the curve between B and D shows this. When the load is removed, say at some point C between B and D, the body does not regain its original dimension. In this case, even when the stress is zero, the strain is not zero. The material is said to have a **permanent set**. The deformation is said to be **plastic deformation**. The point D on the graph is the ultimate **tensile strength** (S_u) of the material. Beyond this point, additional strain is produced even by a reduced applied force and fracture occurs at point E. If the ultimate strength and fracture points D and E are close, the material is said to be brittle. If they are far apart, the material is said to be ductile.

As stated earlier, the stress-strain behaviour varies from material to material. For example, rubber can be pulled to several times its original length and still returns to its original shape. Fig. 9.4 shows stress-strain curve for the elastic tissue of aorta, present in the heart. Note that although elastic region is very large, the material

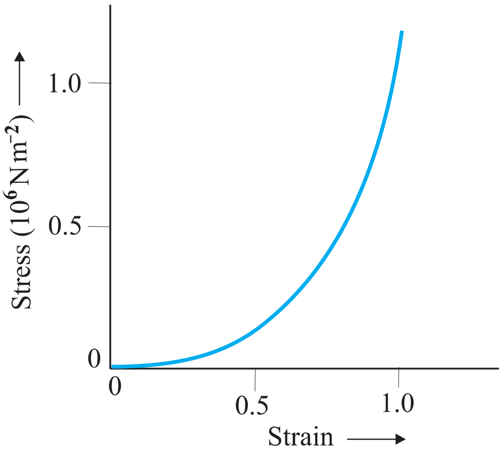


Fig. 9.4 *Stress-strain curve for the elastic tissue of Aorta, the large tube (vessel) carrying blood from the heart.*

does not obey Hooke's law over most of the region. Secondly, there is no well defined plastic region. Substances like tissue of aorta, rubber etc. which can be stretched to cause large strains are called **elastomers**.

9.6 ELASTIC MODULI

The proportional region within the elastic limit of the stress-strain curve (region OA in Fig. 9.3) is of great importance for structural and manufacturing engineering designs. The ratio of stress and strain, called **modulus of elasticity**, is found to be a characteristic of the material.

9.6.1 Young's Modulus

Experimental observation show that for a given material, the magnitude of the strain produced is same whether the stress is tensile or compressive. The ratio of tensile (or compressive) stress (σ) to the longitudinal strain (ε) is defined as **Young's modulus** and is denoted by the symbol *Y*.

$$Y = - \tag{9.7}$$

From Eqs. (9.1) and (9.2), we have

$$Y = (F/A)/(\Delta L/L)$$
$$= (F \times L)\ /(A \times \Delta L) \tag{9.8}$$

Since strain is a dimensionless quantity, the unit of Young's modulus is the same as that of stress *i.e.*, N m^{-2} or Pascal (Pa). Table 9.1 gives the values of Young's moduli and yield strengths of some materials.

From the data given in Table 9.1, it is noticed that for metals Young's moduli are large. Therefore, these materials require a large force to produce small change in length. To increase the length of a thin steel wire of 0.1 cm^2 cross-sectional area by 0.1%, a force of 2000 N is required. The force required to produce the same strain in aluminium, brass and copper wires having the same cross-sectional area are 690 N, 900 N and 1100 N respectively. It means that steel is more elastic than copper, brass and aluminium. It is for this reason that steel is

Table 9.1 **Young's moduli and yield strengths of some materials.**

Substance	Density ρ (kg m^{-3})	Young's modulus Y (10^9 N m^{-2})	Ultimate strength, S_u (10^6 N m^{-2})	Yield strength S_y (10^6 N m^{-2})
Aluminium	2710	70	110	95
Copper	8890	110	400	200
Iron (wrought)	7800-7900	190	330	170
Steel	7860	200	400	250
Glass#	2190	65	50	—
Concrete	2320	30	40	—
Wood#	525	13	50	—
Bone#	1900	9	170	—
Polystyrene	1050	3	48	—

 # substance tested under compression

preferred in heavy-duty machines and in structural designs. Wood, bone, concrete and glass have rather small Young's moduli.

Example 9.1 A structural steel rod has a radius of 10 mm and a length of 1.0 m. A 100 kN force stretches it along its length. Calculate (a) stress, (b) elongation, and (c) strain on the rod. Young's modulus, of structural steel is 2.0×10^{11} N m^{-2}.

Answer We assume that the rod is held by a clamp at one end, and the force F is applied at the other end, parallel to the length of the rod. Then the stress on the rod is given by

$$Stress = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{F}{\pi r^2}$$

$$\frac{100 \quad 10^3\,\text{N}}{3.14 \quad 10^{\;2}\,\text{m}^{\;2}}$$

$$= 3.18 \times 10^8 \text{ N m}^{-2}$$

The elongation,

$$\Delta L = \frac{(F/A)L}{Y}$$

$$= \frac{3.18 \quad 10^8\,\text{N m}^{-2} \quad 1\text{m}}{2 \quad 10^{11}\,\text{N m}^{-2}}$$

$$= 1.59 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}$$

$$= 1.59 \text{ mm}$$

The strain is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Strain} &= \Delta L/L \\ &= (1.59 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m})/(1\text{m}) \\ &= 1.59 \times 10^{-3} \\ &= 0.16\ \% \end{aligned}$$

Example 9.2 A copper wire of length 2.2 m and a steel wire of length 1.6 m, both of diameter 3.0 mm, are connected end to end. When stretched by a load, the net elongation is found to be 0.70 mm. Obtain the load applied.

Answer The copper and steel wires are under a tensile stress because they have the same tension (equal to the load W) and the same area of cross-section A. From Eq. (9.7) we have stress = strain $\times$ Young's modulus. Therefore

$$W/A = Y_c \times (\Delta L_c/L_c) = Y_s \times (\Delta L_s/L_s)$$

where the subscripts c and s refer to copper and stainless steel respectively. Or,

$$\Delta L_c/\Delta L_s = (Y_s/Y_c) \times (L_c/L_s)$$

Given $L_c = 2.2$ m, $L_s = 1.6$ m,

From Table 9.1 $Y_c = 1.1 \times 10^{11}$ N.m^{-2}, and

$Y_s = 2.0 \times 10^{11}$ N.m^{-2}.

$$\Delta L_c/\Delta L_s = (2.0 \times 10^{11}/1.1 \times 10^{11}) \times (2.2/1.6) = 2.5.$$

The total elongation is given to be

$$\Delta L_c + \Delta L_s = 7.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}$$

Solving the above equations,

$$\Delta L_c = 5.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}, \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta L_s = 2.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} W &= (A \times Y_c \times \Delta L_c)/L_c \\ &= \pi (1.5 \times 10^{-3})^2 \times [(5.0 \times 10^{-4} \times 1.1 \times 10^{11})/2.2] \\ &= 1.8 \times 10^2 \text{ N} \end{aligned}$$

Example 9.3 In a human pyramid in a circus, the entire weight of the balanced group is supported by the legs of a performer who is lying on his back (as shown in Fig. 9.5). The combined mass of all the persons performing the act, and the tables, plaques etc. involved is 280 kg. The mass of the performer lying on his back at the bottom of the pyramid is 60 kg. Each thighbone (femur) of this performer has a length of 50 cm and an effective radius of 2.0 cm. Determine the amount by which each thighbone gets compressed under the extra load.

Fig. 9.5 *Human pyramid in a circus.*

Answer Total mass of all the performers, tables, plaques etc. = 280 kg

Mass of the performer = 60 kg

Mass supported by the legs of the performer at the bottom of the pyramid

= 280 – 60 = 220 kg

Weight of this supported mass

= 220 kg wt. = 220 × 9.8 N = 2156 N.

Weight supported by each thighbone of the performer = ½ (2156) N = 1078 N.

From Table 9.1, the Young's modulus for bone is given by

$Y = 9.4 \times 10^9 \text{ N m}^{-2}$.

Length of each thighbone L = 0.5 m

the radius of thighbone = 2.0 cm

Thus the cross-sectional area of the thighbone

$A = \pi \times (2 \times 10^{-2})^2 \text{ m}^2 = 1.26 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^2$.

Using Eq. (9.8), the compression in each thighbone (ΔL) can be computed as

$$\Delta L = [(F \times L)/(Y \times A)]$$
$$= [(1078 \times 0.5)/(9.4 \times 10^9 \times 1.26 \times 10^{-3})]$$
$$= 4.55 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m or } 4.55 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm.}$$

This is a very small change! The fractional decrease in the thighbone is $\Delta L/L$ = 0.000091 or 0.0091%.

9.6.2 Determination of Young's Modulus of the Material of a Wire

A typical experimental arrangement to determine the Young's modulus of a material of wire under tension is shown in Fig. 9.6. It consists of two long straight wires of same length and equal radius suspended side by side from a fixed rigid support. The wire A (called the *reference wire*) carries a millimetre main scale M and a pan to place a weight. The wire B (called the *experimental wire*) of uniform area of cross-section also carries a pan in which known weights can be placed. A vernier scale V is attached to a pointer at the bottom of the experimental wire B, and the main scale M is fixed to the reference wire A. The weights placed in the pan exert a downward force and stretch the experimental wire under a tensile stress. The elongation of the wire (increase in length) is measured by the vernier arrangement. The reference wire is used to compensate for any change in length that may occur due to change in room temperature, since any change in length of the reference wire due to temperature change will be accompanied by an equal change in experimental wire. (We shall study these temperature effects in detail in Chapter 11.)

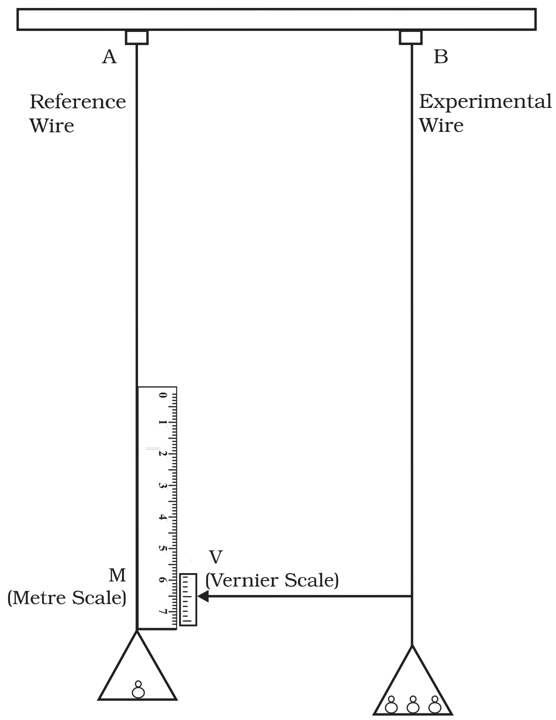


Fig. 9.6 *An arrangement for the determination of Young's modulus of the material of a wire.*

Both the reference and experimental wires are given an initial small load to keep the wires straight and the vernier reading is noted. Now the experimental wire is gradually loaded with more weights to bring it under a tensile stress and the vernier reading is noted again. The difference between two vernier readings gives the elongation produced in the wire. Let r and L be the initial radius and length of the experimental wire, respectively. Then the area of cross-section of the wire would be πr^2. Let M be the mass that produced an elongation ΔL in the wire. Thus the applied force is equal to Mg, where g is the acceleration due to gravity. From Eq. (9.8), the Young's modulus of the material of the experimental wire is given by

$$Y = \frac{\sigma}{\varepsilon} = \frac{Mg}{\pi r^2} \cdot \frac{L}{\Delta L}$$

$$= Mg \times L/(\pi r^2 \times \Delta L) \qquad (9.9)$$

9.6.3 Shear Modulus

The ratio of shearing stress to the corresponding shearing strain is called the *shear modulus* of the material and is represented by G. It is also called the *modulus of rigidity*.

G = shearing stress (σ_s)/shearing strain

$G = (F/A)/(\Delta x/L)$

$= (F \times L)/(A \times \Delta x)$ (9.10)

Similarly, from Eq. (9.4)

$G = (F/A)/\theta$

$= F/(A \times \theta)$ (9.11)

The shearing stress σ_s can also be expressed as

$\sigma_s = G \times \theta$ (9.12)

SI unit of shear modulus is N m^{-2} or Pa. The shear moduli of a few common materials are given in Table 9.2. It can be seen that shear modulus (or modulus of rigidity) is generally less than Young's modulus (from Table 9.1). For most materials $G \approx Y/3$.

Table 9.2 Shear moduli (*G*) of some common materials

Material	G (10⁹ Nm⁻² or GPa)
Aluminium	25
Brass	36
Copper	42
Glass	23
Iron	70
Lead	5.6
Nickel	77
Steel	84
Tungsten	150
Wood	10

u ***Example 9.4*** A square lead slab of side 50 cm and thickness 10 cm is subject to a shearing force (on its narrow face) of 9.0×10^4 N. The lower edge is riveted to the floor. How much will the upper edge be displaced?

Answer The lead slab is fixed and the force is applied parallel to the narrow face as shown in Fig. 9.7. The area of the face parallel to which this force is applied is

$A = 50 \text{ cm} \times 10 \text{ cm}$

$= 0.5 \text{ m} \times 0.1 \text{ m}$

$= 0.05 \text{ m}^2$

Therefore, the stress applied is

$= (9.4 \times 10^4 \text{ N}/0.05 \text{ m}^2)$

$= 1.80 \times 10^6 \text{ N.m}^{-2}$

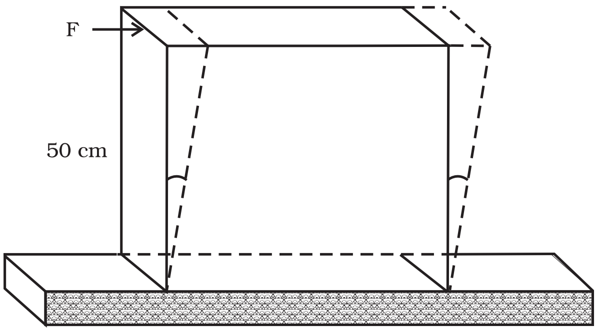


Fig. 9.7

We know that shearing strain = $(\Delta x/L)$= Stress /G.

Therefore the displacement Δx = (Stress $\times$ L)/G

$= (1.8 \times 10^6 \text{ N m}^{-2} \times 0.5\text{m})/(5.6 \times 10^9 \text{ N m}^{-2})$

$= 1.6 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m} = 0.16 \text{ mm}$ t

9.6.4 Bulk Modulus

In Section (9.3), we have seen that when a body is submerged in a fluid, it undergoes a hydraulic stress (equal in magnitude to the hydraulic pressure). This leads to the decrease in the volume of the body thus producing a strain called volume strain [Eq. (9.5)]. The ratio of hydraulic stress to the corresponding hydraulic strain is called *bulk modulus*. It is denoted by symbol B.

$B = -p/(\Delta V/V)$ (9.13)

The negative sign indicates the fact that with an increase in pressure, a decrease in volume occurs. That is, if p is positive, ΔV is negative. Thus for a system in equilibrium, the value of bulk modulus B is always positive. SI unit of bulk modulus is the same as that of pressure *i.e.*, N m^{-2} or Pa. The bulk moduli of a few common materials are given in Table 9.3.

The reciprocal of the bulk modulus is called *compressibility* and is denoted by k. It is defined as the fractional change in volume per unit increase in pressure.

$k = (1/B) = -(1/\Delta p) \times (\Delta V/V)$ (9.14)

It can be seen from the data given in Table 9.3 that the bulk moduli for solids are much larger than for liquids, which are again much larger than the bulk modulus for gases (air).

Table 9.3 **Bulk moduli (*B*) of some common Materials**

Material	B (10^9 N m^{-2} or GPa)
Solids	
Aluminium	72
Brass	61
Copper	140
Glass	37
Iron	100
Nickel	260
Steel	160
Liquids	
Water	2.2
Ethanol	0.9
Carbon disulphide	1.56
Glycerine	4.76
Mercury	25
Gases	
Air (at STP)	1.0×10^{-4}

Thus solids are least compressible whereas gases are most compressible. Gases are about a million times more compressible than solids! Gases have large compressibilities, which vary with pressure and temperature. The incompressibility of the solids is primarily due to the tight coupling between the neighbouring atoms. The molecules in liquids are also bound with their neighbours but not as strong as in solids. Molecules in gases are very poorly coupled to their neighbours.

Table 9.4 shows the various types of stress, strain, elastic moduli, and the applicable state of matter at a glance.

Example 9.5 The average depth of Indian Ocean is about 3000 m. Calculate the fractional compression, $\Delta V/V$, of water at the bottom of the ocean, given that the bulk modulus of water is 2.2×10^9 N m^{-2}. (Take g = 10 m s^{-2})

Answer The pressure exerted by a 3000 m column of water on the bottom layer

$$p = h\rho\, g = 3000 \text{ m} \times 1000 \text{ kg m}^{-3} \times 10 \text{ m s}^{-2}$$
$$= 3 \times 10^7 \text{ kg m}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-2}$$
$$= 3 \times 10^7 \text{ N m}^{-2}$$

Fractional compression $\Delta V/V$, is

$$\Delta V/V = \text{stress}/B = (3 \times 10^7 \text{ N m}^{-2})/(2.2 \times 10^9 \text{ N m}^{-2})$$
$$= 1.36 \times 10^{-2} \text{ or } 1.36\ \%$$

Table 9.4 **Stress, strain and various elastic moduli**

Type of stress	Stress	Strain	Change in shape	Change in volume	Elastic modulus	Name of modulus	State of Mater
Tensile or compressive	Two equal and opposite forces perpendicular to opposite faces ($\sigma = F/A$)	Elongation or compression parallel to force direction ($\Delta L/L$) (longitudinal strain)	Yes	No	$Y = (F\times L)/(A\times\Delta L)$	Young's modulus	Solid
Shearing	Two equal and opposite forces parallel to oppoiste surfaces [forces in each case such that total force and total torque on the body vanishes ($\sigma_s = F/A$)	Pure shear, θ	Yes	No	$G = (F\times\theta)/A$	Shear modulus	Solid
Hydraulic	Forces perpendicular everywhere to the surface, force per unit area (pressure) same everywhere.	Volume change (compression or elongation ($\Delta V/V$)	No	Yes	$B = -p/(\Delta V/V)$	Bulk modulus	Solid, liquid and gas

9.7 APPLICATIONS OF ELASTIC BEHAVIOUR OF MATERIALS

The elastic behaviour of materials plays an important role in everyday life. All engineering designs require precise knowledge of the elastic behaviour of materials. For example while designing a building, the structural design of the columns, beams and supports require knowledge of strength of materials used. Have you ever thought why the beams used in construction of bridges, as supports etc. have a cross-section of the type **I**? Why does a heap of sand or a hill have a pyramidal shape? Answers to these questions can be obtained from the study of structural engineering which is based on concepts developed here.

Cranes used for lifting and moving heavy loads from one place to another have a thick metal rope to which the load is attached. The rope is pulled up using pulleys and motors. Suppose we want to make a crane, which has a lifting capacity of 10 tonnes or metric tons (1 metric ton = 1000 kg). How thick should the steel rope be? We obviously want that the load does not deform the rope permanently. Therefore, the extension should not exceed the elastic limit. From Table 9.1, we find that mild steel has a yield strength (S_y) of about 300×10^6 N m^{-2}. Thus, the area of cross-section (*A*) of the rope should at least be

$$A \geq W/S_y = Mg/S_y \qquad (9.15)$$
$$= (10^4 \text{ kg} \times 10 \text{ m s}^{-2})/(300 \times 10^6 \text{ N m}^{-2})$$
$$= 3.3 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}^2$$

corresponding to a radius of about 1 cm for a rope of circular cross-section. Generally a large margin of safety (of about a factor of ten in the load) is provided. Thus a thicker rope of radius about 3 cm is recommended. A single wire of this radius would practically be a rigid rod. So the ropes are always made of a number of thin wires braided together, like in pigtails, for ease in manufacture, flexibility and strength.

A bridge has to be designed such that it can withstand the load of the flowing traffic, the force of winds and its own weight. Similarly, in the design of buildings use of beams and columns is very common. In both the cases, the overcoming of the problem of bending of beam under a load is of prime importance. The beam should not bend too much or break. Let us consider the case of a beam loaded at the centre and supported near its ends as shown in Fig. 9.8. A bar of length *l*, breadth *b*, and depth *d* when loaded at the centre by a load *W* sags by an amount given by

$$\delta = W\,l^3/(4bd^3Y) \qquad (9.16)$$

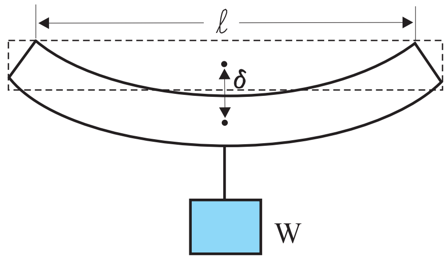


Fig. 9.8 *A beam supported at the ends and loaded at the centre.*

This relation can be derived using what you have already learnt and a little calculus. From Eq. (9.16), we see that to reduce the bending for a given load, one should use a material with a large Young's modulus *Y*. For a given material, increasing the depth *d* rather than the breadth *b* is more effective in reducing the bending, since δ is proportional to d^{-3} and only to b^{-1}(of course the length *l* of the span should be as small as possible). But on increasing the depth, unless the load is exactly at the right place (difficult to arrange in a bridge with moving traffic), the deep bar may bend as shown in Fig. 9.9(b). This is called buckling. To avoid this, a common compromise is the cross-sectional shape shown in Fig. 9.9(c). This section provides a large load-bearing surface and enough depth to prevent bending. This shape reduces the weight of the beam without sacrificing the strength and hence reduces the cost.

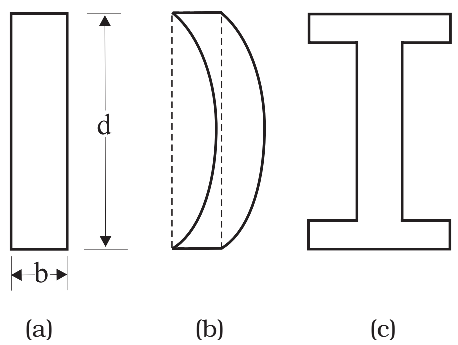


Fig. 9.9 *Different cross-sectional shapes of a beam. (a) Rectangular section of a bar; (b) A thin bar and how it can buckle; (c) Commonly used section for a load bearing bar.*

Use of pillars or columns is also very common in buildings and bridges. A pillar with rounded ends as shown in Fig. 9.10(a) supports less load than that with a distributed shape at the ends [Fig. 9.10(b)]. The precise design of a bridge or a building has to take into account the conditions under which it will function, the cost and long period, reliability of usable materials etc.

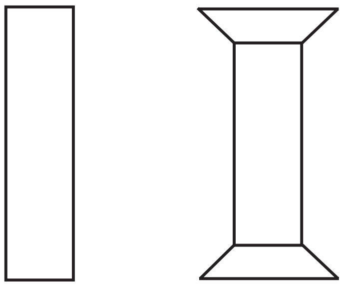


Fig. 9.10 *Pillars or columns: (a) a pillar with rounded ends, (b) Pillar with distributed ends.*

The answer to the question why the maximum height of a mountain on earth is ~10 km can also be provided by considering the elastic properties of rocks. A mountain base is not under uniform compression and this provides some shearing stress to the rocks under which they can flow. The stress due to all the material on the top should be less than the critical shearing stress at which the rocks flow.

At the bottom of a mountain of height h, the force per unit area due to the weight of the mountain is $h\rho g$ where ρ is the density of the material of the mountain and g is the acceleration due to gravity. The material at the bottom experiences this force in the vertical direction, and the sides of the mountain are free. Therefore this is not a case of pressure or bulk compression. There is a shear component, approximately $h\rho g$ itself. Now the elastic limit for a typical rock is 30×10^7 N m^{-2}. Equating this to $h\rho g$, with $\rho = 3 \times 10^3$ kg m^{-3} gives

$h\rho g = 30 \times 10^7$ N m^{-2}. Or

$h = 30 \times 10^7$ N m^{-2}/(3×10^3 kg m$^{-3} \times 10$ m s^{-2})

$= 10$ km

which is more than the height of Mt. Everest!

SUMMARY

1. Stress is the restoring force per unit area and strain is the fractional change in dimension. In general there are three types of stresses (a) tensile stress — longitudinal stress (associated with stretching) or compressive stress (associated with compression), (b) shearing stress, and (c) hydraulic stress.
2. For small deformations, stress is directly proportional to the strain for many materials. This is known as Hooke's law. The constant of proportionality is called modulus of elasticity. Three elastic moduli *viz.*, Young's modulus, shear modulus and bulk modulus are used to describe the elastic behaviour of objects as they respond to deforming forces that act on them.
   A class of solids called elastomers does not obey Hooke's law.
3. When an object is under tension or compression, the Hooke's law takes the form
   $F/A = Y\Delta L/L$
   where $\Delta L/L$ is the tensile or compressive strain of the object, F is the magnitude of the applied force causing the strain, A is the cross-sectional area over which F is applied (perpendicular to A) and Y is the Young's modulus for the object. The stress is F/A.
4. A pair of forces when applied parallel to the upper and lower faces, the solid deforms so that the upper face moves sideways with respect to the lower. The horizontal displacement ΔL of the upper face is perpendicular to the vertical height L. This type of deformation is called shear and the corresponding stress is the shearing stress. This type of stress is possible only in solids.
   In this kind of deformation the Hooke's law takes the form
   $F/A = G \times \Delta L/L$
   where ΔL is the displacement of one end of object in the direction of the applied force F, and G is the shear modulus.

5. When an object undergoes hydraulic compression due to a stress exerted by a surrounding fluid, the Hooke's law takes the form

$$p = B\,(\Delta V/V),$$

where p is the pressure (hydraulic stress) on the object due to the fluid, $\Delta V/V$ (the volume strain) is the absolute fractional change in the object's volume due to that pressure and B is the bulk modulus of the object.

POINTS TO PONDER

1. In the case of a wire, suspended from celing and stretched under the action of a weight (F) suspended from its other end, the force exerted by the ceiling on it is equal and opposite to the weight. However, the tension at any cross-section A of the wire is just F and not $2F$. Hence, tensile stress which is equal to the tension per unit area is equal to F/A.
2. Hooke's law is valid only in the linear part of stress-strain curve.
3. The Young's modulus and shear modulus are relevant only for solids since only solids have lengths and shapes.
4. Bulk modulus is relevant for solids, liquid and gases. It refers to the change in volume when every part of the body is under the uniform stress so that the shape of the body remains unchanged.
5. Metals have larger values of Young's modulus than alloys and elastomers. A material with large value of Young's modulus requires a large force to produce small changes in its length.
6. In daily life, we feel that a material which stretches more is more elastic, but it a is misnomer. In fact material which stretches to a lesser extent for a given load is considered to be more elastic.
7. In general, a deforming force in one direction can produce strains in other directions also. The proportionality between stress and strain in such situations cannot be described by just one elastic constant. For example, for a wire under longitudinal strain, the lateral dimensions (radius of cross section) will undergo a small change, which is described by another elastic constant of the material (called *Poisson ratio*).
8. Stress is not a vector quantity since, unlike a force, the stress cannot be assigned a specific direction. Force acting on the portion of a body on a specified side of a section has a definite direction.

EXERCISES

9.1 A steel wire of length 4.7 m and cross-sectional area 3.0×10^{-5} m^2 stretches by the same amount as a copper wire of length 3.5 m and cross-sectional area of 4.0×10^{-5} m^2 under a given load. What is the ratio of the Young's modulus of steel to that of copper?

9.2 Figure 9.11 shows the strain-stress curve for a given material. What are (a) Young's modulus and (b) approximate yield strength for this material?

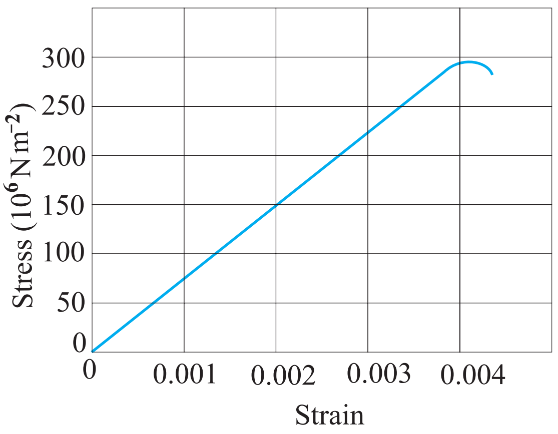


Fig. 9.11

9.3 The stress-strain graphs for materials *A* and *B* are shown in Fig. 9.12.

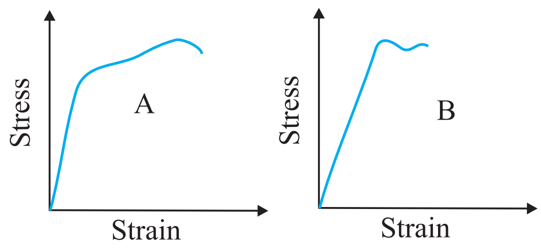


Fig. 9.12

The graphs are drawn to the same scale.

(a) Which of the materials has the greater Young's modulus?

(b) Which of the two is the stronger material?

9.4 Read the following two statements below carefully and state, with reasons, if it is true or false.

(a) The Young's modulus of rubber is greater than that of steel;

(b) The stretching of a coil is determined by its shear modulus.

9.5 Two wires of diameter 0.25 cm, one made of steel and the other made of brass are loaded as shown in Fig. 9.13. The unloaded length of steel wire is 1.5 m and that of brass wire is 1.0 m. Compute the elongations of the steel and the brass wires.

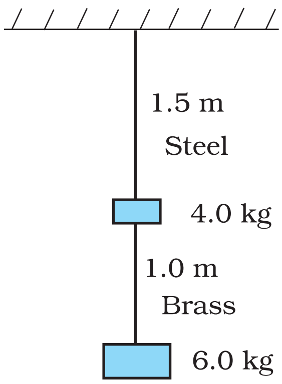


Fig. 9.13

9.6 The edge of an aluminium cube is 10 cm long. One face of the cube is firmly fixed to a vertical wall. A mass of 100 kg is then attached to the opposite face of the cube. The shear modulus of aluminium is 25 GPa. What is the vertical deflection of this face?

9.7 Four identical hollow cylindrical columns of mild steel support a big structure of mass 50,000 kg. The inner and outer radii of each column are 30 and 60 cm respectively. Assuming the load distribution to be uniform, calculate the compressional strain of each column.

9.8 A piece of copper having a rectangular cross-section of 15.2 mm $\times$ 19.1 mm is pulled in tension with 44,500 N force, producing only elastic deformation. Calculate the resulting strain?

9.9 A steel cable with a radius of 1.5 cm supports a chairlift at a ski area. If the maximum stress is not to exceed 10^8 N m^{-2}, what is the maximum load the cable can support ?

9.10 A rigid bar of mass 15 kg is supported symmetrically by three wires each 2.0 m long. Those at each end are of copper and the middle one is of iron. Determine the ratios of their diameters if each is to have the same tension.

9.11 A 14.5 kg mass, fastened to the end of a steel wire of unstretched length 1.0 m, is whirled in a vertical circle with an angular velocity of 2 rev/s at the bottom of the circle. The cross-sectional area of the wire is 0.065 cm^2. Calculate the elongation of the wire when the mass is at the lowest point of its path.

9.12 Compute the bulk modulus of water from the following data: Initial volume = 100.0 litre, Pressure increase = 100.0 atm (1 atm = 1.013 $\times$ 10^5 Pa), Final volume = 100.5 litre. Compare the bulk modulus of water with that of air (at constant temperature). Explain in simple terms why the ratio is so large.

9.13 What is the density of water at a depth where pressure is 80.0 atm, given that its density at the surface is 1.03 $\times$ 103 kg m^{-3}?

9.14 Compute the fractional change in volume of a glass slab, when subjected to a hydraulic pressure of 10 atm.

9.15 Determine the volume contraction of a solid copper cube, 10 cm on an edge, when subjected to a hydraulic pressure of 7.0 $\times$ 10^6 Pa.

9.16 How much should the pressure on a litre of water be changed to compress it by 0.10%?

Additional Exercises

9.17 Anvils made of single crystals of diamond, with the shape as shown in Fig. 9.14, are used to investigate behaviour of materials under very high pressures. Flat faces at the narrow end of the anvil have a diameter of 0.50 mm, and the wide ends are subjected to a compressional force of 50,000 N. What is the pressure at the tip of the anvil?

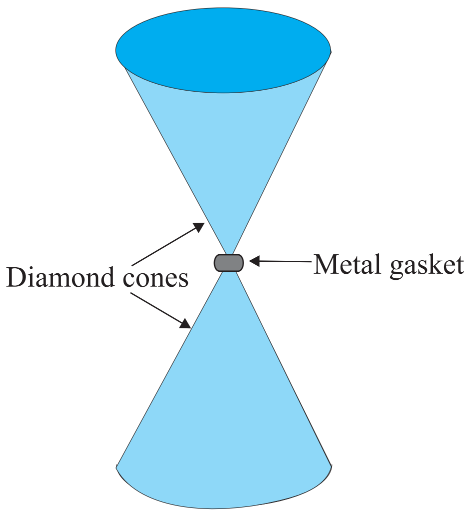


Fig. 9.14

9.18 A rod of length 1.05 m having negligible mass is supported at its ends by two wires of steel (wire A) and aluminium (wire B) of equal lengths as shown in Fig. 9.15. The cross-sectional areas of wires A and B are 1.0 mm^2 and 2.0 mm^2, respectively. At what point along the rod should a mass m be suspended in order to produce (a) equal stresses and (b) equal strains in both steel and aluminium wires.

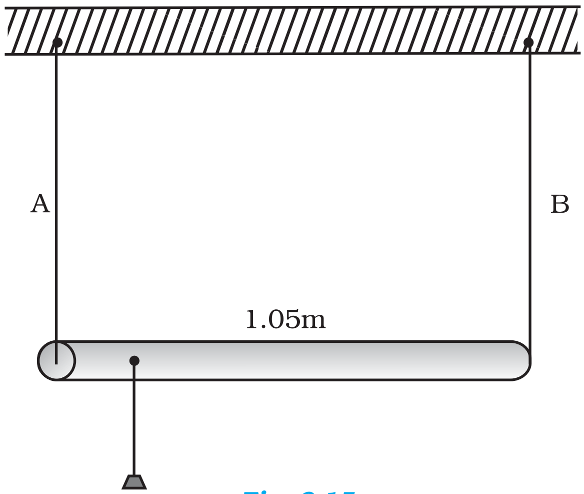


Fig. 9.15

9.19 A mild steel wire of length 1.0 m and cross-sectional area 0.50×10^{-2} cm^2 is stretched, well within its elastic limit, horizontally between two pillars. A mass of 100 g is suspended from the mid-point of the wire. Calculate the depression at the mid-point.

9.20 Two strips of metal are riveted together at their ends by four rivets, each of diameter 6.0 mm. What is the maximum tension that can be exerted by the riveted strip if the shearing stress on the rivet is not to exceed 6.9×10^7 Pa? Assume that each rivet is to carry one quarter of the load.

9.21 The Marina trench is located in the Pacific Ocean, and at one place it is nearly eleven km beneath the surface of water. The water pressure at the bottom of the trench is about 1.1×10^8 Pa. A steel ball of initial volume 0.32 m^3 is dropped into the ocean and falls to the bottom of the trench. What is the change in the volume of the ball when it reaches to the bottom?

CHAPTER TEN

MECHANICAL PROPERTIES OF FLUIDS

10.1 INTRODUCTION

In this chapter, we shall study some common physical properties of liquids and gases. Liquids and gases can flow and are therefore, called fluids. It is this property that distinguishes liquids and gases from solids in a basic way.

Fluids are everywhere around us. Earth has an envelop of air and two-thirds of its surface is covered with water. Water is not only necessary for our existence; every mammalian body constitute mostly of water. All the processes occurring in living beings including plants are mediated by fluids. Thus understanding the behaviour and properties of fluids is important.

How are fluids different from solids? What is common in liquids and gases? Unlike a solid, a fluid has no definite shape of its own. Solids and liquids have a fixed volume, whereas a gas fills the entire volume of its container. We have learnt in the previous chapter that the volume of solids can be changed by stress. The volume of solid, liquid or gas depends on the stress or pressure acting on it. When we talk about fixed volume of solid or liquid, we mean its volume under atmospheric pressure. The difference between gases and solids or liquids is that for solids or liquids the change in volume due to change of external pressure is rather small. In other words solids and liquids have much lower compressibility as compared to gases.

Shear stress can change the shape of a solid keeping its volume fixed. The key property of fluids is that they offer very little resistance to shear stress; their shape changes by application of very small shear stress. The shearing stress of fluids is about million times smaller than that of solids.

10.2 PRESSURE

A sharp needle when pressed against our skin pierces it. Our skin, however, remains intact when a blunt object with a wider contact area (say the back of a spoon) is pressed against it with the same force. If an elephant were to step on a man's chest, his ribs would crack. A circus performer across whose chest a large, light but strong wooden plank is placed first, is saved from this accident. Such everyday experiences convince us that both the force and its coverage area are important. Smaller the area on which the force acts, greater is the impact. This concept is known as pressure.

When an object is submerged in a fluid at rest, the fluid exerts a force on its surface. This force is always normal to the object's surface. This is so because if there were a component of force parallel to the surface, the object will also exert a force on the fluid parallel to it; as a consequence of Newton's third law. This force will cause the fluid to flow parallel to the surface. Since the fluid is at rest, this cannot happen. Hence, the force exerted by the fluid at rest has to be perpendicular to the surface in contact with it. This is shown in Fig.10.1(a).

The normal force exerted by the fluid at a point may be measured. An idealised form of one such pressure-measuring device is shown in Fig. 10.1(b). It consists of an evacuated chamber with a spring that is calibrated to measure the force acting on the piston. This device is placed at a point inside the fluid. The inward force exerted by the fluid on the piston is balanced by the outward spring force and is thereby measured.

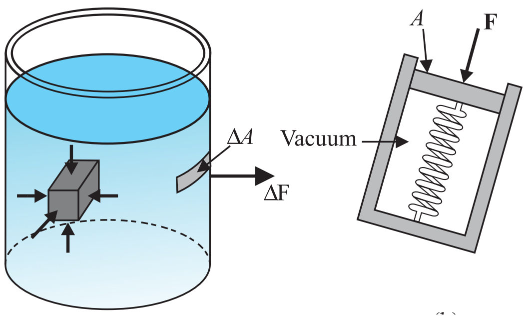


Fig. 10.1 *(a) The force exerted by the liquid in the beaker on the submerged object or on the walls is normal (perpendicular) to the surface at all points.*
(b) An idealised device for measuring pressure.

If F is the magnitude of this normal force on the piston of area A then the **average pressure** P_{av} is defined as the normal force acting per unit area.

$$P_{av} = \frac{F}{A} \tag{10.1}$$

In principle, the piston area can be made arbitrarily small. The pressure is then defined in a limiting sense as

$$P = \lim_{\Delta A \to 0} \frac{F}{A} \tag{10.2}$$

Pressure is a scalar quantity. We remind the reader that it is the component of the force normal to the area under consideration and not the (vector) force that appears in the numerator in Eqs. (10.1) and (10.2). Its dimensions are $[ML^{-1}T^{-2}]$. The SI unit of pressure is N m^{-2}. It has been named as pascal (Pa) in honour of the French scientist Blaise Pascal (1623-1662) who carried out pioneering studies on fluid pressure. A common unit of pressure is the atmosphere (atm), i.e. the pressure exerted by the atmosphere at sea level (1 atm = 1.013×10^5 Pa).

Another quantity, that is indispensable in describing fluids, is the density ρ. For a fluid of mass m occupying volume V,

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{10.3}$$

The dimensions of density are $[ML^{-3}]$. Its SI unit is kg m^{-3}. It is a positive scalar quantity. A liquid is largely incompressible and its density is therefore, nearly constant at all pressures. Gases, on the other hand exhibit a large variation in densities with pressure.

The density of water at 4°C (277 K) is 1.0×10^3 kg m^{-3}. The relative density of a substance is the ratio of its density to the density of water at 4°C. It is a dimensionless positive scalar quantity. For example the relative density of aluminium is 2.7. Its density is 2.7×10^3 kg m^{-3}. The densities of some common fluids are displayed in Table 10.1.

Table 10.1 Densities of some common fluids at STP*

Fluid	ρ (kg m^{-3})
Water	1.00×10^3
Sea water	1.03×10^3
Mercury	13.6×10^3
Ethyl alcohol	0.806×10^3
Whole blood	1.06×10^3
Air	1.29
Oxygen	1.43
Hydrogen	9.0×10^{-2}
Interstellar space	$\approx 10^{-20}$

* *STP means standard temperature (0°C) and 1 atm pressure.*

Example 10.1 The two thigh bones (femurs), each of cross-sectional area 10 cm² support the upper part of a human body of mass 40 kg. Estimate the average pressure sustained by the femurs.

Answer Total cross-sectional area of the femurs is $A = 2 \times 10\ \text{cm}^2 = 20 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^2$. The force acting on them is $F = 40$ kg wt = 400 N (taking $g = 10\ \text{m s}^{-2}$). This force is acting vertically down and hence, normally on the femurs. Thus, the average pressure is

$$P_{av} = \frac{F}{A} = 2 \times 10^5\ \text{N m}^{-2}$$

10.2.1 Pascal's Law

The French scientist Blaise Pascal observed that the pressure in a fluid at rest is the same at all points if they are at the same height. This fact may be demonstrated in a simple way.

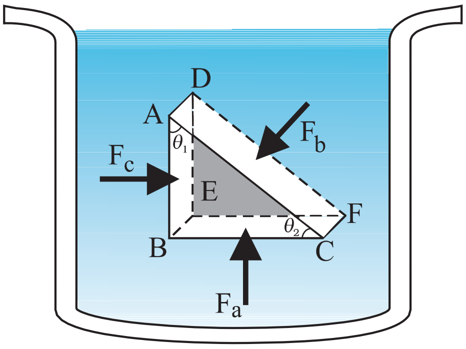


Fig. 10.2 *Proof of Pascal's law. ABC-DEF is an element of the interior of a fluid at rest. This element is in the form of a right-angled prism. The element is small so that the effect of gravity can be ignored, but it has been enlarged for the sake of clarity.*

Fig. 10.2 shows an element in the interior of a fluid at rest. This element ABC-DEF is in the form of a right-angled prism. In principle, this prismatic element is very small so that every part of it can be considered at the same depth from the liquid surface and therefore, the effect of the gravity is the same at all these points. But for clarity we have enlarged this element. The forces on this element are those exerted by the rest of the fluid and they must be normal to the surfaces of the element as discussed above. Thus, the fluid exerts pressures P_a, P_b and P_c on this element of area corresponding to the normal forces F_a, F_b and F_c as shown in Fig. 10.2 on the faces BEFC, ADFC and ADEB denoted by A_a, A_b and A_c respectively. Then

$F_b \sin\theta = F_c$, $\quad F_b \cos\theta = F_a$ (by equilibrium)

$A_b \sin\theta = A_c$, $\quad A_b \cos\theta = A_a$ (by geometry)

Thus,

$$\frac{F_b}{A_b} = \frac{F_c}{A_c} = \frac{F_a}{A_a}; \qquad P_b = P_c = P_a \tag{10.4}$$

Hence, pressure exerted is same in all directions in a fluid at rest. It again reminds us that like other types of stress, pressure is not a vector quantity. No direction can be assigned to it. The force against any area within (or bounding) a fluid at rest and under pressure is normal to the area, regardless of the orientation of the area.

Now consider a fluid element in the form of a horizontal bar of uniform cross-section. The bar is in equilibrium. The horizontal forces exerted at its two ends must be balanced or the pressure at the two ends should be equal. This proves that for a liquid in equilibrium the pressure is same at all points in a horizontal plane. Suppose the pressure were not equal in different parts of the fluid, then there would be a flow as the fluid will have some net force acting on it. Hence in the absence of flow the pressure in the fluid must be same everywhere. Wind is flow of air due to pressure differences.

10.2.2 Variation of Pressure with Depth

Consider a fluid at rest in a container. In Fig. 10.3 point 1 is at height h above a point 2. The pressures at points 1 and 2 are P_1 and P_2 respectively. Consider a cylindrical element of fluid having area of base A and height h. As the fluid is at rest the resultant horizontal forces should be zero and the resultant vertical forces should balance the weight of the element. The forces acting in the vertical direction are due to the fluid pressure at the top (P_1A) acting downward, at the bottom (P_2A) acting upward. If mg is weight of the fluid in the cylinder we have

$$(P_2 - P_1)\ A = mg \tag{10.5}$$

Now, if ρ is the mass density of the fluid, we have the mass of fluid to be $m = \rho V = \rho hA$ so that

$$P_2 - P_1 = \rho gh \tag{10.6}$$

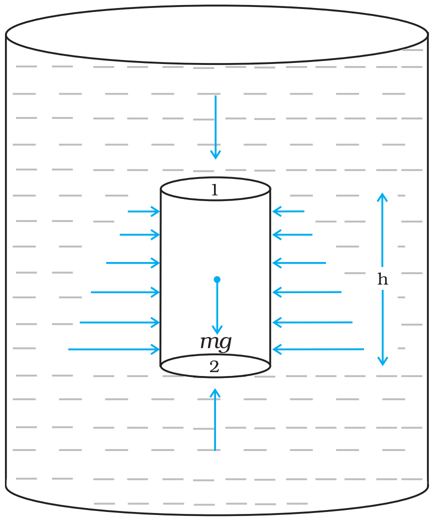


Fig.10.3 *Fluid under gravity. The effect of gravity is illustrated through pressure on a vertical cylindrical column.*

Pressure difference depends on the vertical distance h between the points (1 and 2), mass density of the fluid ρ and acceleration due to gravity g. If the point 1 under discussion is shifted to the top of the fluid (say water), which is open to the atmosphere, P_1 may be replaced by atmospheric pressure (P_a) and we replace P_2 by P. Then Eq. (10.6) gives

$$P = P_a + \rho g h \qquad (10.7)$$

Thus, the pressure P, at depth below the surface of a liquid open to the atmosphere is greater than atmospheric pressure by an amount ρgh. The excess of pressure, $P - P_a$, at depth h is called a **gauge pressure** at that point.

The area of the cylinder is not appearing in the expression of absolute pressure in Eq. (10.7). Thus, the height of the fluid column is important and not cross sectional or base area or the shape of the container. The liquid pressure is the same at all points at the same horizontal level (same depth). The result is appreciated through the example of **hydrostatic paradox**. Consider three vessels A, B and C [Fig.10.4] of different shapes. They are connected at the bottom by a horizontal pipe. On filling with water the level in the three vessels is the same though they hold different amounts of water. This is so, because water at the bottom has the same pressure below each section of the vessel.

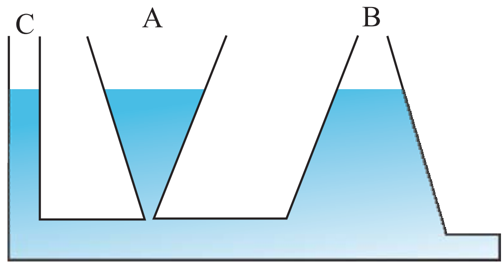


Fig 10.4 *Illustration of hydrostatic paradox. The three vessels A, B and C contain different amounts of liquids, all upto the same height.*

> ***Example 10.2*** What is the pressure on a swimmer 10 m below the surface of a lake?

Answer Here

h = 10 m *and* ρ = 1000 kg m^{-3}. Take g = 10 m s^{-2}

From Eq. (10.7)

$P = P_a + \rho g h$

$= 1.01 \times 10^5$ Pa + 1000 kg m^{-3} $\times$ 10 m s^{-2} $\times$ 10 m

$= 2.01 \times 10^5$ Pa

≈ 2 atm

This is a 100% increase in pressure from surface level. At a depth of 1 km the increase in pressure is 100 atm! Submarines are designed to withstand such enormous pressures.

10.2.3 Atmospheric Pressure and Gauge Pressure

The pressure of the atmosphere at any point is equal to the weight of a column of air of unit cross sectional area extending from that point to the top of the atmosphere. At sea level it is 1.013×10^5 Pa (1 atm). Italian scientist Evangelista Torricelli (1608-1647) devised for the first time, a method for measuring atmospheric pressure. A long glass tube closed at one end and filled with mercury is inverted into a trough of mercury as shown in Fig.10.5 (a). This device is known as mercury barometer. The space above the mercury column in the tube contains only mercury vapour whose pressure P is so small that it may be neglected. The pressure inside the column at point A must equal the pressure at point B, which is at the same level. Pressure at B = atmospheric pressure = P_a

$$P_a = \rho g h \qquad (10.8)$$

where ρ is the density of mercury and h is the height of the mercury column in the tube.

In the experiment it is found that the mercury column in the barometer has a height of about 76 cm at sea level equivalent to one atmosphere (1 atm). This can also be obtained using the value of ρ in Eq. (10.8). A common way of stating pressure is in terms of cm or mm of mercury (Hg). A pressure equivalent of 1 mm is called a torr (after Torricelli).

1 torr = 133 Pa.

The mm of Hg and torr are used in medicine and physiology. In meteorology, a common unit is the bar and millibar.

1 bar = 10^5 Pa

An open-tube manometer is a useful instrument for measuring pressure differences. It consists of a U-tube containing a suitable liquid i.e. a low density liquid (such as oil) for measuring small pressure differences and a high density liquid (such as mercury) for large pressure differences. One end of the tube is open to the atmosphere and other end is connected to the system whose pressure we want to measure [see Fig. 10.5 (b)]. The pressure P at A is equal to pressure at point B. What we normally measure is the gauge pressure, which is $P - P_a$, given by Eq. (10.8) and is proportional to manometer height h.

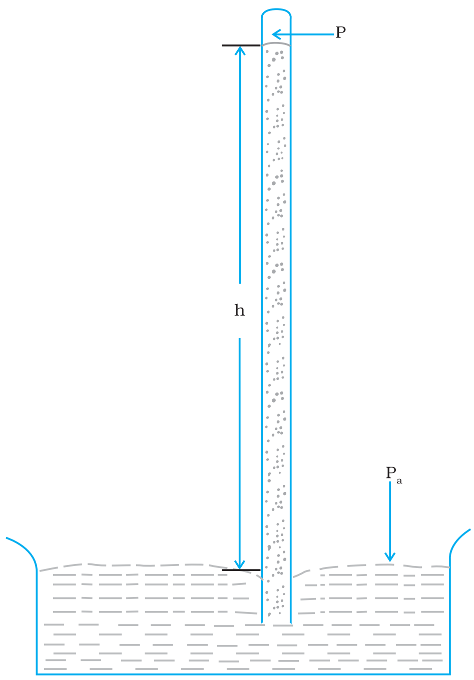
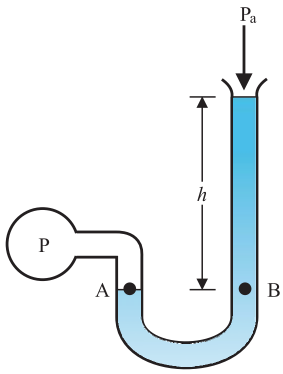


Fig 10.5 *(a) The mercury barometer.*



(b) the open tube manometer

Fig 10.5 *Two pressure measuring devices.*

Pressure is same at the same level on both sides of the U-tube containing a fluid. For liquids the density varies very little over wide ranges in pressure and temperature and we can treat it safely as a constant for our present purposes. Gases on the other hand, exhibits large variations of densities with changes in pressure and temperature. Unlike gases, liquids are therefore, largely treated as incompressible.

Example 10.3 The density of the atmosphere at sea level is 1.29 kg/m³. Assume that it does not change with altitude. Then how high would the atmosphere extend?

Answer We use Eq. (10.7)

$\rho g h$ = 1.29 kg m^{-3} × 9.8 m s^{2} × h m = 1.01 × 10^5 Pa

$\therefore h$ = 7989 m ≈ 8 km

In reality the density of air decreases with height. So does the value of g. The atmospheric cover extends with decreasing pressure over 100 km. We should also note that the sea level atmospheric pressure is not always 760 mm of Hg. A drop in the Hg level by 10 mm or more is a sign of an approaching storm.

Example 10.4 At a depth of 1000 m in an ocean (a) what is the absolute pressure? (b) What is the gauge pressure? (c) Find the force acting on the window of area 20 cm × 20 cm of a submarine at this depth, the interior of which is maintained at sea-level atmospheric pressure. (The density of sea water is 1.03×10^3 kg m^{-3}, g = 10m s^{-2}.)

Answer Here h = 1000 m and $\rho = 1.03\times 10^3$ kg m^{-3}.

(a) From Eq. (10.6), absolute pressure

$P = P_a + \rho gh$
$= 1.01 \times 10^5$ Pa
$+ 1.03 \times 10^3$ kg m^{-3} $\times$ 10 m s^{-2} $\times$ 1000 m
$= 104.01 \times 10^5$ Pa
$\approx$ 104 atm

(b) Gauge pressure is $P - P_a = \rho gh = P_g$

$P_g = 1.03 \times 10^3$ kg m^{-3} $\times$ 10 ms^2 $\times$ 1000 m
$= 103 \times 10^5$ Pa
$\approx$ 103 atm

(c) The pressure outside the submarine is $P = P_a + \rho gh$ and the pressure inside it is P_a. Hence, the net pressure acting on the window is gauge pressure, $P_g = \rho gh$. Since the area of the window is A = 0.04 m^2, the force acting on it is

$F = P_g A = 103 \times 10^5 \text{Pa} \times 0.04 \text{m}^2 = 4.12 \times 10^5$ N

10.2.4 Hydraulic Machines

Let us now consider what happens when we change the pressure on a fluid contained in a vessel. Consider a horizontal cylinder with a piston and three vertical tubes at different points. The pressure in the horizontal cylinder is indicated by the height of liquid column in the vertical tubes.It is necessarily the same in all. If we push the piston, the fluid level rises in all the tubes, again reaching the same level in each one of them.

This indicates that when the pressure on the cylinder was increased, it was distributed uniformly throughout. We can say **whenever external pressure is applied on any part of a fluid contained in a vessel, it is transmitted undiminished and equally in all directions. This is the Pascal's law for transmission of fluid pressure and has many applications in daily life.**

A number of devices such as **hydraulic lift** and **hydraulic brakes** are based on the Pascal's law. In these devices fluids are used for transmitting pressure. In a hydraulic lift as shown in Fig. 10.6 two pistons are separated by the space filled with a liquid. A piston of small cross section A_1 is used to exert a force F_1 directly on the liquid. The pressure $P = \dfrac{F_1}{A_1}$ is transmitted throughout the liquid to the larger cylinder attached with a larger piston of area A_2, which results in an upward force of $P \times A_2$. Therefore, the piston is capable of supporting a large force (large weight of, say a car, or a truck, placed on the platform) $F_2 = PA_2 = \dfrac{F_1A_2}{A_1}$. By changing the force at A_1, the platform can be

Archemedes' Principle

Fluid appears to provide partial support to the objects placed in it. When a body is wholly or partially immersed in a fluid at rest, the fluid exerts pressure on the surface of the body in contact with the fluid. The pressure is greater on lower surfaces of the body than on the upper surfaces as pressure in a fluid increases with depth. The resultant of all the forces is an upward force called buoyant force. Suppose that a cylindrical body is immersed in the fluid. The upward force on the bottom of the body is more than the downward force on its top. The fluid exerts a resultant upward force or buoyant force on the body equal to $(P_2\text{-}P_1)\ A$. We have seen in equation 10.4 that $(P_2\text{-}P_1)A = \rho ghA$. Now hA is the volume of the solid and ρhA is the weight of an equivaliant volume of the fluid. $(P_2\text{-}P_1)A = mg$. Thus the upward force exerted is equal to the weight of the displaced fluid.

The result holds true irrespective of the shape of the object and here cylindrical object is considered only for convenience. This is Archimedes' principle. For totally immersed objects the volume of the fluid displaced by the object is equal to its own volume. If the density of the immersed object is more than that of the fluid, the object will sink as the weight of the body is more than the upward thrust. If the density of the object is less than that of the fluid, it floats in the fluid partially submerged. To calculate the volume submerged. Suppose the total volume of the object is V_s and a part V_p of it is submerged in the fluid. Then the upward force which is the weight of the displaced fluid is $\rho_f g V_p$, which must equal the weight of the body; $\rho_s g V_s = \rho_f g V_p$ or $\rho_s/\rho_f = V_p/V_s$ The apparent weight of the floating body is zero.

This principle can be summarised as; 'the loss of weight of a body submerged (partially or fully) in a fluid is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced'.

moved up or down. Thus, the applied force has been increased by a factor of $\frac{A_2}{A_1}$ and this factor is the mechanical advantage of the device. The example below clarifies it.

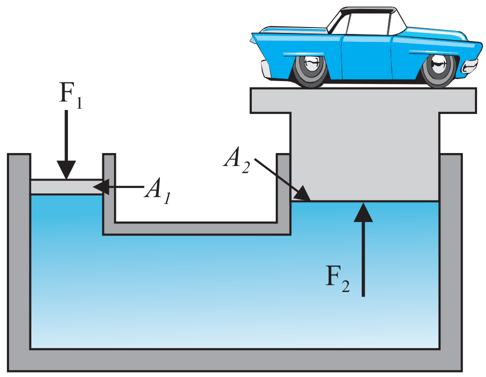


Fig 10.6 *Schematic diagram illustrating the principle behind the hydraulic lift, a device used to lift heavy loads.*

> ***Example 10.5*** Two syringes of different cross sections (without needles) filled with water are connected with a tightly fitted rubber tube filled with water. Diameters of the smaller piston and larger piston are 1.0 cm and 3.0 cm respectively. (a) Find the force exerted on the larger piston when a force of 10 N is applied to the smaller piston. (b) If the smaller piston is pushed in through 6.0 cm, how much does the larger piston move out?

Answer (a) Since pressure is transmitted undiminished throughout the fluid,

$$F_2 \quad \frac{A_2}{A_1}F_1 \quad \frac{3/2 \quad 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{m}^{\;2}}{1/2 \quad 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{m}^{\;2}} \quad 10\,\mathrm{N}$$

$$= 90\ \mathrm{N}$$

(b) Water is considered to be perfectly incompressible. Volume covered by the movement of smaller piston inwards is equal to volume moved outwards due to the larger piston.

$$L_1 A_1 = L_2 A_2$$

$$\simeq 0.67 \times 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{m} = 0.67\ \mathrm{cm}$$

Note, atmospheric pressure is common to both pistons and has been ignored.

> ***Example 10.6*** In a car lift compressed air exerts a force F_1 on a small piston having a radius of 5.0 cm. This pressure is transmitted to a second piston of radius 15 cm (Fig 10.7). If the mass of the car to be lifted is 1350 kg, calculate F_1. What is the pressure necessary to accomplish this task? ($g = 9.8\ \mathrm{ms^{-2}}$).

Answer Since pressure is transmitted undiminished throughout the fluid,

$$F_1 \quad \frac{A_1}{A_2}F_2 \quad \frac{5 \quad 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{m}^{\;2}}{15 \quad 10^{-2}\,\mathrm{m}^{\;2}} \quad 1350\ \mathrm{N} \quad 9.8\ \mathrm{m\,s^{-2}}$$

$$= 1470\ \mathrm{N}$$

$$\approx 1.5 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{N}$$

The air pressure that will produce this force is

$$P \quad \frac{F_1}{A_1} \quad \frac{1.5 \quad 10^3\,\mathrm{N}}{5 \quad 10^{-2}\;^{2}\ \mathrm{m}} \quad 1.9 \quad 10^5\,\mathrm{Pa}$$

This is almost double the atmospheric pressure.

Hydraulic brakes in automobiles also work on the same principle. When we apply a little

> ***Archimedes (287 – 212 B.C.)***
>
> 
>
> Archimedes was a Greek philosopher, mathematician, scientist and engineer. He invented the catapult and devised a system of pulleys and levers to handle heavy loads. The king of his native city Syracuse, Hiero II asked him to determine if his gold crown was alloyed with some cheaper metal such as silver without damaging the crown. The partial loss of weight he experienced while lying in his bathtub suggested a solution to him. According to legend, he ran naked through the streets of Syracuse exclaiming "Eureka, eureka!", which means "I have found it, I have found it!"

force on the pedal with our foot the master piston moves inside the master cylinder, and the pressure caused is transmitted through the brake oil to act on a piston of larger area. A large force acts on the piston and is pushed down expanding the brake shoes against brake lining. In this way a small force on the pedal produces a large retarding force on the wheel. An important advantage of the system is that the pressure set up by pressing pedal is transmitted equally to all cylinders attached to the four wheels so that the braking effort is equal on all wheels.

10.3 STREAMLINE FLOW

So far we have studied fluids at rest. The study of the fluids in motion is known as fluid dynamics. When a water-tap is turned on slowly, the water flow is smooth initially, but loses its smoothness when the speed of the outflow is increased. In studying the motion of fluids we focus our attention on what is happening to various fluid particles at a particular point in space at a particular time. The flow of the fluid is said to be **steady** if at any given point, the velocity of each passing fluid particle remains constant in time. This does not mean that the velocity at different points in space is same. The velocity of a particular particle may change as it moves from one point to another. That is, at some other point the particle may have a different velocity, but every other particle which passes the second point behaves exactly as the previous particle that has just passed that point. Each particle follows a smooth path, and the paths of the particles do not cross each other.

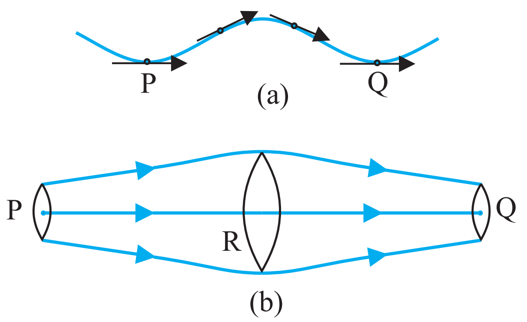


Fig. 10.7 The meaning of streamlines. (a) A typical trajectory of a fluid particle. (b) A region of streamline flow.

The path taken by a fluid particle under a steady flow is a **streamline**. It is defined as a curve whose tangent at any point is in the direction of the fluid velocity at that point. Consider the path of a particle as shown in Fig.10.7 (a), the curve describes how a fluid particle moves with time. The curve PQ is like a permanent map of fluid flow, indicating how the fluid streams. No two streamlines can cross, for if they do, an oncoming fluid particle can go either one way or the other and the flow would not be steady. Hence, in steady flow, the map of flow is stationary in time. How do we draw closely spaced streamlines ? If we intend to show streamline of every flowing particle, we would end up with a continuum of lines. Consider planes perpendicular to the direction of fluid flow e.g., at three points P, R and Q in Fig.10.7 (b). The plane pieces are so chosen that their boundaries be determined by the same set of streamlines. This means that number of fluid particles crossing the surfaces as indicated at P, R and Q is the same. If area of cross-sections at these points are A_P,A_R and A_Q and speeds of fluid particles are v_P, v_R and v_Q, then mass of fluid Δm_P crossing at A_P in a small interval of time Δt is $\rho_P A_P v_P \Delta t$. Similarly mass of fluid Δm_R flowing or crossing at A_R in a small interval of time Δt is $\rho_R A_R v_R \Delta t$ and mass of fluid Δm_Q is $\rho_Q A_Q v_Q \Delta t$ crossing at A_Q. The mass of liquid flowing out equals the mass flowing in, holds in all cases. Therefore,

$$\rho_P A_P v_P \Delta t = \rho_R A_R v_R \Delta t = \rho_Q A_Q v_Q \Delta t \qquad (10.9)$$

For flow of incompressible fluids

$$\rho_P = \rho_R = \rho_Q$$

Equation (10.9) reduces to

$$A_P v_P = A_R v_R = A_Q v_Q \qquad (10.10)$$

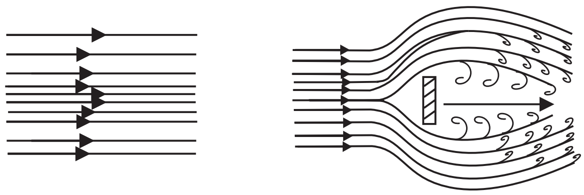
which is called the **equation of continuity** and it is a statement of conservation of mass in flow of incompressible fluids. In general

$$Av = \text{constant} \qquad (10.11)$$

Av gives the volume flux or flow rate and remains constant throughout the pipe of flow. Thus, at narrower portions where the streamlines are closely spaced, velocity increases and its vice versa. From (Fig 10.7b) it is clear that $A_R > A_Q$ or $v_R < v_Q$, the fluid is accelerated while passing from R to Q. This is associated with a change in pressure in fluid flow in horizontal pipes.

Steady flow is achieved at low flow speeds. Beyond a limiting value, called critical speed, this flow loses steadiness and becomes **turbulent**. One sees this when a fast flowing stream encounters rocks, small foamy whirlpool-like regions called 'white water rapids are formed.

Figure 10.8 displays streamlines for some typical flows. For example, Fig. 10.8(a) describes a laminar flow where the velocities at different points in the fluid may have different magnitudes but their directions are parallel. Figure 10.8 (b) gives a sketch of turbulent flow.



(a) (b)

Fig. 10.8 *(a) Some streamlines for fluid flow. (b) A jet of air striking a flat plate placed perpendicular to it. This is an example of turbulent flow.*

10.4 BERNOULLI'S PRINCIPLE

Fluid flow is a complex phenomenon. But we can obtain some useful properties for steady or streamline flows using the conservation of energy.

Consider a fluid moving in a pipe of varying cross-sectional area. Let the pipe be at varying heights as shown in Fig. 10.9. We now suppose that an incompressible fluid is flowing through the pipe in a steady flow. Its velocity must change as a consequence of equation of continuity. A force is required to produce this acceleration, which is caused by the fluid surrounding it, the pressure must be different in different regions. Bernoulli's equation is a general expression that relates the pressure difference between two points in a pipe to both velocity changes (kinetic energy change) and elevation (height) changes (potential energy change). The Swiss Physicist Daniel Bernoulli developed this relationship in 1738.

Consider the flow at two regions 1 (i.e. BC) and 2 (i.e. DE). Consider the fluid initially lying between B and D. In an infinitesimal time interval Δt, this fluid would have moved. Suppose v_1 is the speed at B and v_2 at D, then fluid initially at B has moved a distance $v_1\Delta t$ to C ($v_1\Delta t$ is small enough to assume constant cross-section along BC). In the same interval Δt the fluid initially at D moves to E, a distance equal to $v_2\Delta t$. Pressures P_1 and P_2 act as shown on the plane faces of areas A_1 and A_2 binding the two regions. The work done on the fluid at left end (BC) is $W_1 = P_1A_1(v_1\Delta t) = P_1\Delta V$. Since the same volume ΔV passes through both the regions (from the equation of continuity) the work done by the fluid at the other end (DE) is $W_2 = P_2A_2(v_2\Delta t) = P_2\Delta V$ or, the work done on the fluid is $-P_2\Delta V$. So the total work done on the fluid is

$$W_1 - W_2 = (P_1 - P_2)\,\Delta V$$

Part of this work goes into changing the kinetic energy of the fluid, and part goes into changing the gravitational potential energy. If the density of the fluid is ρ and $\Delta m = \rho A_1 v_1 \Delta t = \rho \Delta V$ is the mass passing through the pipe in time Δt, then change in gravitational potential energy is

$$\Delta U = \rho g \Delta V\,(h_2 - h_1)$$

The change in its kinetic energy is

$$\Delta K = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \rho\,\Delta V\,(v_2^2 - v_1^2)$$

We can employ the work – energy theorem (Chapter 6) to this volume of the fluid and this yields

$$(P_1 - P_2)\,\Delta V = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \rho\,\Delta V\,(v_2^2 - v_1^2) + \rho g \Delta V\,(h_2 - h_1)$$

We now divide each term by ΔV to obtain

$$(P_1 - P_2) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \rho\,(v_2^2 - v_1^2) + \rho g\,(h_2 - h_1)$$

Daniel Bernoulli (1700-1782)

Daniel Bernoulli was a Swiss scientist and mathematician who along with Leonard Euler had the distinction of winning the French Academy prize for mathematics ten times. He also studied medicine and served as a professor of anatomy and botany for a while at Basle, Switzerland. His most well known work was in hydrodynamics, a subject he developed from a single principle: the conservation of energy. His work included calculus, probability, the theory of vibrating strings, and applied mathematics. He has been called the founder of mathematical physics.

We can rearrange the above terms to obtain

$$P_1 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\rho v_1^{\,2} + \rho g h_1 = P_2 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\rho v_2^{\,2} + \rho g h_2 \tag{10.12}$$

This is **Bernoulli's equation**. Since 1 and 2 refer to any two locations along the pipeline, we may write the expression in general as

$$P + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\rho v^2 + \rho g h = \text{constant} \tag{10.13}$$

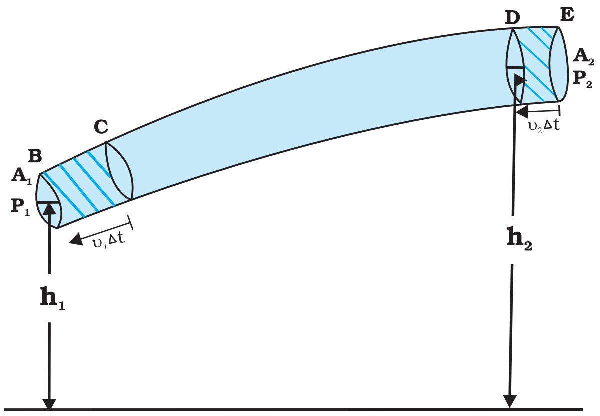


Fig. 10.9 *The flow of an ideal fluid in a pipe of varying cross section. The fluid in a section of length $v_1\Delta t$ moves to the section of length $v_2\Delta t$ in time Δt.*

In words, the Bernoulli's relation may be stated as follows: As we move along a streamline the sum of the pressure (P), the kinetic energy per unit volume $\frac{\rho v^2}{2}$ and the potential energy per unit volume ($\rho g h$) remains a constant.

Note that in applying the energy conservation principle, there is an assumption that no energy is lost due to friction. But in fact, when fluids flow, some energy does get lost due to internal friction. This arises due to the fact that in a fluid flow, the different layers of the fluid flow with different velocities. These layers exert frictional forces on each other resulting in a loss of energy. This property of the fluid is called viscosity and is discussed in more detail in a later section. The lost kinetic energy of the fluid gets converted into heat energy. Thus, Bernoulli's equation ideally applies to fluids with zero viscosity or non-viscous fluids. Another restriction on application of Bernoulli theorem is that the fluids must be incompressible, as the elastic energy of the fluid is also not taken into consideration. In practice, it has a large number of useful applications and can help explain a wide variety of phenomena for low viscosity incompressible fluids. Bernoulli's equation also does not hold for non-steady or turbulent flows, because in that situation velocity and pressure are constantly fluctuating in time.

When a fluid is at rest i.e. its velocity is zero everywhere, Bernoulli's equation becomes

$$P_1 + \rho g h_1 = P_2 + \rho g h_2$$

$$(P_1 - P_2) = \rho g\,(h_2 - h_1)$$

which is same as Eq. (10.6).

10.4.1 Speed of Efflux: Torricelli's Law

The word efflux means fluid outflow. Torricelli discovered that the speed of efflux from an open tank is given by a formula identical to that of a freely falling body. Consider a tank containing a liquid of density ρ with a small hole in its side at a height y_1 from the bottom (see Fig. 10.10). The air above the liquid, whose surface is at height y_2, is at pressure P. From the equation of continuity [Eq. (10.10)] we have

$$v_1 A_1 = v_2 A_2$$

$$v_2 = \frac{A_1}{A_2} v_1$$

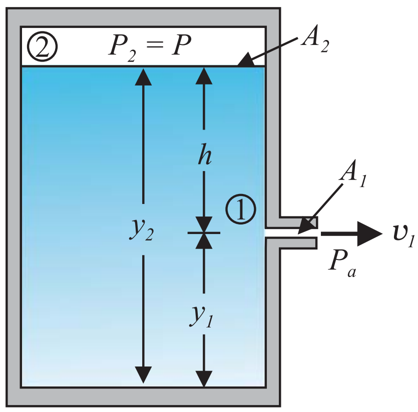


Fig. 10.10 *Torricelli's law. The speed of efflux, v_1, from the side of the container is given by the application of Bernoulli's equation. If the container is open at the top to the atmosphere then* v_1 $\sqrt{2gh}$.

If the cross sectional area of the tank A_2 is much larger than that of the hole ($A_2 >> A_1$), then we may take the fluid to be approximately at rest at the top, i.e. $v_2 = 0$. Now applying the Bernoulli equation at points 1 and 2 and noting that at the hole $P_1 = P_a$, the atmospheric pressure, we have from Eq. (10.12)

$$P_a \quad \frac{1}{2} \quad v_1^2 \qquad g\,y_1 \quad P \qquad g\,y_2$$

Taking $y_2 - y_1 = h$ we have

$$v_1 \quad \sqrt{2g\;h \quad \frac{2\;\;P \quad P_a}{}} \tag{10.14}$$

When $P >> P_a$ and $2\,g\,h$ may be ignored, the speed of efflux is determined by the container pressure. Such a situation occurs in rocket propulsion. On the other hand if the tank is open to the atmosphere, then $P = P_a$ and

$$v_1 = \sqrt{2gh} \tag{10.15}$$

This is the speed of a freely falling body. Equation (10.15) is known as **Torricelli's law**.

10.4.2 Venturi-meter

The Venturi-meter is a device to measure the flow speed of incompressible fluid. It consists of a tube with a broad diameter and a small constriction at the middle as shown in Fig. (10.11). A manometer in the form of a U-tube is also attached to it, with one arm at the broad neck point of the tube and the other at constriction as shown in Fig. (10.11). The manometer contains a liquid of density ρ_m. The speed v_1 of the liquid flowing through the tube at the broad neck area A is to be measured from equation of continuity Eq. (10.10) the speed at the constriction becomes $v_2 = \frac{A}{a} v_1$.

Then using Bernoulli's equation, we get

$$P_1 + \frac{1}{2} \rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2} \rho v_1^2 (A/a)^2$$

So that

$$P_1 - P_2 = \frac{1}{2} \rho v_1^2 \left[\left(\frac{A}{a}\right)^2 - 1\right] \tag{10.16}$$

This pressure difference causes the fluid in the U tube connected at the narrow neck to rise in comparison to the other arm. The difference in height h measure the pressure difference.

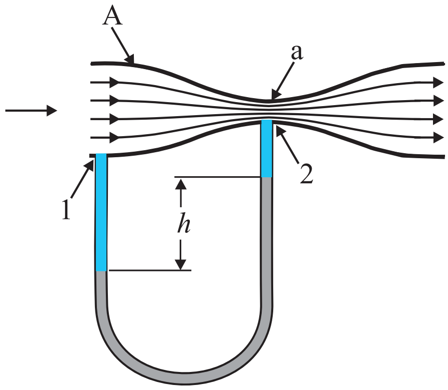


Fig. 10.11 A schematic diagram of Venturi-meter.

$$P_1 - P_2 = \rho_m g h = \frac{1}{2} \rho v_1^2 \left[\left(\frac{A}{a}\right)^2 - 1\right]$$

So that the speed of fluid at wide neck is

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\left(\frac{2\rho_m gh}{\rho}\right)} \left(\left(\frac{A}{a}\right)^2 - 1\right)^{-1/2} \tag{10.17}$$

The principle behind this meter has many applications. The carburetor of automobile has a Venturi channel (nozzle) through which air flows with a large speed. The pressure is then lowered at the narrow neck and the petrol (gasoline) is sucked up in the chamber to provide the correct mixture of air to fuel necessary for combustion. Filter pumps or aspirators, Bunsen burner, atomisers and sprayers [See Fig. 10.12] used for perfumes or to spray insecticides work on the same principle.

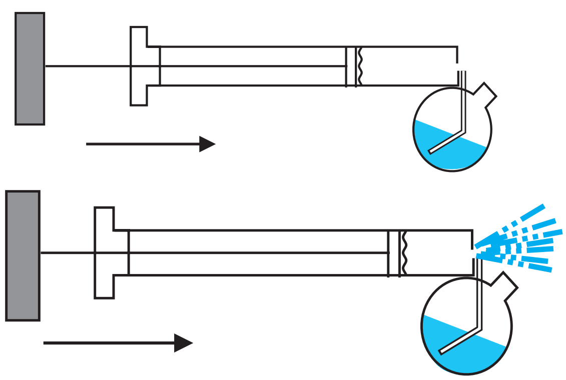


Fig. 10.12 The spray gun. Piston forces air at high speeds causing a lowering of pressure at the neck of the container.

Example 10.7 Blood velocity: The flow of blood in a large artery of an anesthetised dog is diverted through a Venturi meter. The wider part of the meter has a cross-sectional area equal to that of the artery. A = 8 mm². The narrower part has an area a = 4 mm². The pressure drop in the artery is 24 Pa. What is the speed of the blood in the artery?

Answer We take the density of blood from Table 10.1 to be 1.06×10^3 kg m^{-3}. The ratio of the areas is $\left(\frac{A}{a}\right) = 2$. Using Eq. (10.17) we obtain

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 24 Pa}{1060\,\text{kg m}^{-3} \times (2^2 - 1)}} = 0.125\,\text{m s}^{-1}$$

10.4.3 Blood Flow and Heart Attack

Bernoulli's principle helps in explaining blood flow in artery. The artery may get constricted due to the accumulation of plaque on its inner walls. In order to drive the blood through this constriction a greater demand is placed on the activity of the heart. The speed of the flow of the blood in this region is raised which lowers the pressure inside and the artery may collapse due to the external pressure. The heart exerts further pressure to open this artery and forces the blood through. As the blood rushes through the opening, the internal pressure once again drops due to same reasons leading to a repeat collapse. This may result in heart attack.

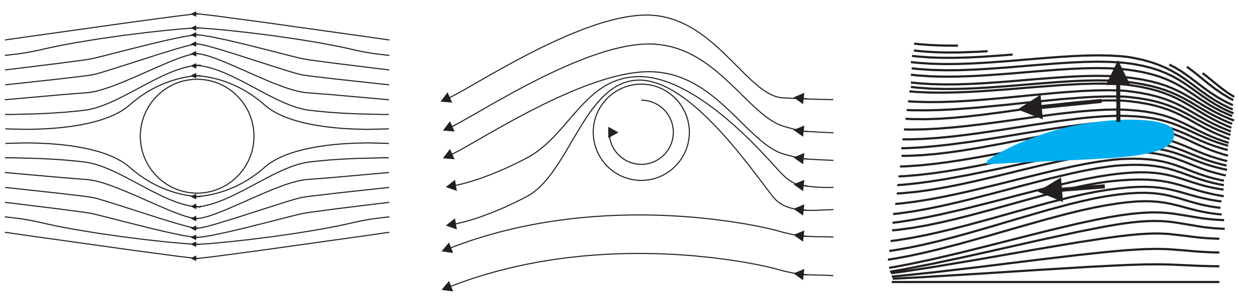
10.4.4 Dynamic Lift

Dynamic lift is the force that acts on a body, such as airplane wing, a hydrofoil or a spinning ball, by virtue of its motion through a fluid. In many games such as cricket, tennis, baseball, or golf, we notice that a spinning ball deviates from its parabolic trajectory as it moves through air. This deviation can be partly explained on the basis of Bernoulli's principle.

(i) **Ball moving without spin**: Fig. 10.13(a) shows the streamlines around a non-spinning ball moving relative to a fluid. From the symmetry of streamlines it is clear that the velocity of fluid (air) above and below the ball at corresponding points is the same resulting in zero pressure difference. The air therefore, exerts no upward or downward force on the ball.

(ii) **Ball moving with spin**: A ball which is spinning drags air along with it. If the surface is rough more air will be dragged. Fig 10.13(b) shows the streamlines of air for a ball which is moving and spinning at the same time. The ball is moving forward and relative to it the air is moving backwards. Therefore, the velocity of air above the ball relative to it is larger and below it is smaller. The stream lines thus get crowded above and rarified below.

This difference in the velocities of air results in the pressure difference between the lower and upper faces and their is a net upward force on the ball. This dynamic lift due to spining is called **Magnus effect**.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig 10.13 *(a) Fluid streaming past a static sphere. (b) Streamlines for a fluid around a sphere spinning clockwise. (c) Air flowing past an aerofoil.*

Aerofoil or lift on aircraft wing: Figure 10.13 (c) shows an aerofoil, which is a solid piece shaped to provide an upward dynamic lift when it moves horizontally through air. The cross-section of the wings of an aeroplane looks somewhat like the aerofoil shown in Fig. 10.13 (c) with streamlines around it. When the aerofoil moves against the wind, the orientation of the wing relative to flow direction causes the streamlines to crowd together above the wing more than those below it. The flow speed on top is higher than that below it. There is an upward force resulting in a dynamic lift of the wings and this balances the weight of the plane. The following example illustrates this.

Example 10.8 A fully loaded Boeing aircraft has a mass of 3.3×10^5 kg. Its total wing area is 500 m^2. It is in level flight with a speed of 960 km/h. (a) Estimate the pressure difference between the lower and upper surfaces of the wings (b) Estimate the fractional increase in the speed of the air on the upper surface of the wing relative to the lower surface. [The density of air is ρ = 1.2 kg m^{-3}]

Answer (a) The weight of the Boeing aircraft is balanced by the upward force due to the pressure difference

$\Delta P \times A = 3.3 \times 10^5 \text{ kg} \times 9.8$

$\Delta P = (3.3 \times 10^5 \text{ kg} \times 9.8 \text{ m s}^{-2}) / 500 \text{ m}^2$

$= 6.5 \times 10^3 \text{ Nm}^{-2}$

(b) We ignore the small height difference between the top and bottom sides in Eq. (10.12). The pressure difference between them is then

where v_2 is the speed of air over the upper surface and v_1 is the speed under the bottom surface.

$$v_2 - v_1 \qquad \frac{2\ P}{v_2 \quad v_1}$$

Taking the average speed

$v_{av} = (v_2 + v_1)/2 = 960$ km/h $= 267$ m s^{-1},

we have

$$v_2 - v_1 \ / v_{av} \qquad \frac{P}{v_{av}^2} \approx 0.08$$

The speed above the wing needs to be only 8 % higher than that below.

10.5 VISCOSITY

Most of the fluids are not ideal ones and offer some resistance to motion. This resistance to fluid motion is like an internal friction analogous to friction when a solid moves on a surface. It is called viscosity. This force exists when there is relative motion between layers of the liquid. Suppose we consider a fluid like oil enclosed between two glass plates as shown in Fig. 10.15 (a). The bottom plate is fixed while the top plate is moved with a constant velocity **v** relative to the fixed plate. If oil is replaced by honey, a greater force is required to move the plate with the same velocity. Hence we say that honey is more viscous than oil. The fluid in contact with a surface has the same velocity as that of the surfaces. Hence, the layer of the liquid in contact with top surface moves with a velocity **v** and the layer of the liquid in contact with the fixed surface is stationary. The velocities of layers increase uniformly from bottom (zero velocity) to the top layer (velocity **v**). For any layer of liquid, its upper layer pulls it forward while lower layer pulls it backward. This results in force between the layers. This type of flow is known as laminar. The layers of liquid slide over one another as the pages of a book do when it is placed flat on a table and a horizontal force is applied to the top cover. When a fluid is flowing in a pipe or a tube, then velocity of the liquid layer along the axis of the tube is maximum and decreases gradually as we move towards the walls where it becomes zero, Fig. 10.14 (b). The velocity on a cylindrical surface in a tube is constant.

On account of this motion, a portion of liquid, which at some instant has the shape ABCD, take the shape of AEFD after short interval of time (Δt). During this time interval the liquid has undergone a shear strain of $\Delta x/l$. Since, the strain in a flowing fluid increases with time continuously. Unlike a solid, here the stress is found experimentally to depend on 'rate of change of strain' or 'strain rate' i.e. $\Delta x/(l\,\Delta t)$ or v/l instead of strain itself. The coefficient of viscosity (pronounced 'eta') for a fluid is defined as the ratio of shearing stress to the strain rate.

$$\frac{F/A}{v/l} \quad \frac{Fl}{vA} \qquad (10.18)$$

The SI unit of viscosity is poiseiulle (Pl). Its other units are N s m^{-2} or Pa s. The dimensions

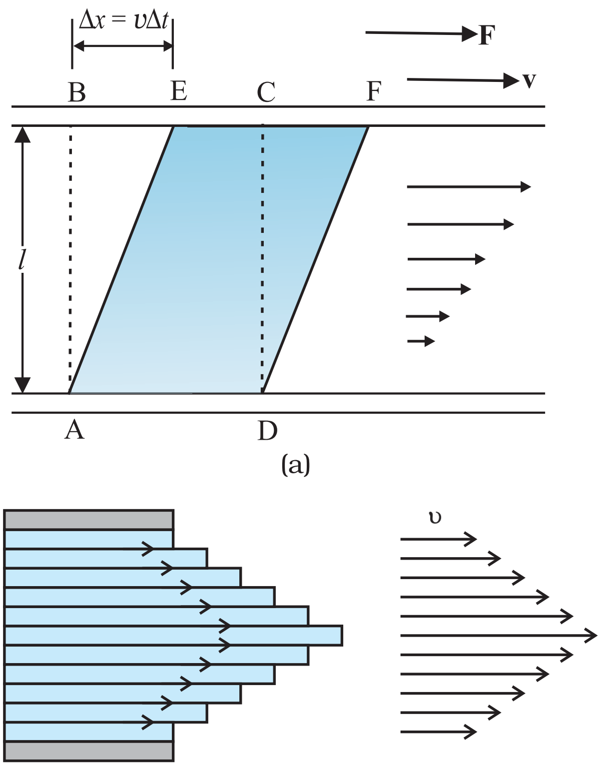


Fig 10.14 *(a) A layer of liquid sandwiched between two parallel glass plates in which the lower plate is fixed and the upper one is moving to the right with velocity* **v** *(b) velocity distribution for viscous flow in a pipe.*

of viscosity are [$ML^{-1}T^{-1}$]. Generally thin liquids like water, alcohol etc. are less viscous than thick liquids like coal tar, blood, glycerin etc. The coefficients of viscosity for some common fluids are listed in Table 10.2. We point out two facts about blood and water that you may find interesting. As Table 10.2 indicates, blood is 'thicker' (more viscous) than water. Further the relative viscosity (η/η_{water}) of blood remains constant between 0°C and 37°C.

The viscosity of liquids decreases with temperature while it increases in the case of gases.

Example 10.9 A metal block of area 0.10 m² is connected to a 0.010 kg mass via a string that passes over an ideal pulley (considered massless and frictionless), as in Fig. 10.15. A liquid with a film thickness of 0.30 mm is placed between the block and the table. When released the block moves to the right with a constant speed of 0.085 m s^{-1}. Find the coefficient of viscosity of the liquid.

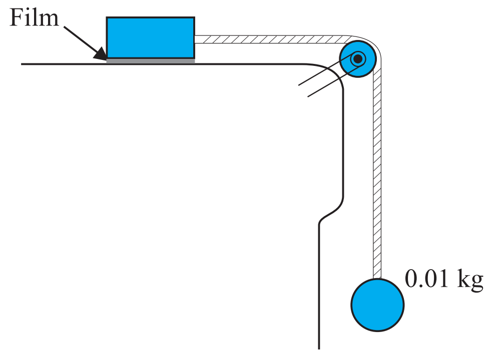


Fig. 10.15 *Measurement of the coefficient of viscosity of a liquid.*

Answer The metal block moves to the right because of the tension in the string. The tension T is equal in magnitude to the weight of the suspended mass m. Thus the shear force F is $F = T = mg = 0.010\ \text{kg} \times 9.8\ \text{m s}^{-2} = 9.8 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{N}$

$$\text{Shear stress on the fluid} = F/A = \frac{9.8 \quad 10^{-2}}{0.10}$$

$$\text{Strain rate} = \frac{v}{l} \quad \frac{0.085}{0.030}$$

$$\eta = \frac{stress}{strain\ rate}$$

$$\frac{9.8 \quad 10^{-2}N \quad 0.30 \quad 10^{-3}m}{0.085\,m\,s^{-1} \quad 0.10\,m^2}$$

$$= 3.45 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s}$$

Table10.2 The viscosities of some fluids

Fluid	T(°C)	Viscosity (mPl)
Water	20	1.0
	100	0.3
Blood	37	2.7
Machine Oil	16	113
	38	34
Glycerine	20	830
Honey		200
Air	0	0.017
	40	0.019

10.5.1 Stokes' Law

When a body falls through a fluid it drags the layer of the fluid in contact with it. A relative motion between the different layers of the fluid is set and as a result the body experiences a retarding force. Falling of a raindrop and swinging of a pendulum bob are some common examples of such motion. It is seen that the viscous force is proportional to the velocity of the object and is opposite to the direction of motion. The other quantities on which the force F depends on viscosity η of the fluid and radius a of the sphere. Sir George G. Stokes (1819-1903), an English scientist enunciated clearly the viscous drag force F as

$$F = 6\pi\eta a v \qquad (10.19)$$

This is known as Stokes' law.We shall not derive Stokes' law.

This law is an interesting example of retarding force which is proportional to velocity. We can study its consequences on an object falling through a viscous medium. We consider a raindrop in air. It accelerates initially due to gravity. As the velocity increases, the retarding force also increases. Finally when viscous force plus buoyant force becomes equal to force due to gravity, the net force becomes zero and so does the acceleration. The sphere (raindrop) then descends with a constant velocity. Thus in equilibrium, this terminal velocity v_t is given by

$$6\pi\eta a v_t = (4\pi/3)\ a^3\ (\rho-\sigma)g$$

where ρ and σ are mass densities of sphere and the fluid respectively. We obtain

$$v_t = 2a^2\ (\rho-\sigma)g\ /\ (9\eta) \qquad (10.20)$$

So the terminal velocity v_t depends on the square of the radius of the sphere and inversely on the viscosity of the medium.

You may like to refer back to Example 6.2 in this context.

Example 10.10 The terminal velocity of a copper ball of radius 2.0 mm falling through a tank of oil at 20°C is 6.5 cm s^{-1}. Compute the viscosity of the oil at 20°C. Density of oil is 1.5×10^3 kg m^{-3}, density of copper is 8.9×10^3 kg m^{-3}.

Answer We have $v_t = 6.5\times10^{-2}$ ms^{-1}, $a = 2\times10^{-3}$ m, $g = 9.8$ ms^{-2}, $\rho = 8.9\times10^3$ kg m^{-3}, $\sigma = 1.5\times10^3$ kg m^{-3}. From Eq. (10.20)

$$\eta = \frac{2}{9}\times\frac{(2\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})^2\times9.8\ \text{m s}^{-2}}{6.5\times10^{-2}\ \text{m s}^{-1}}\times7.4\times10^3\ \text{kg m}^{-3}$$

$$= 9.9\times10^{-1}\ \text{kg m}^{-1}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

10.6 REYNOLDS NUMBER

When the rate of flow of a fluid is large, the flow no longer remain laminar, but becomes turbulent. In a turbulent flow the velocity of the fluids at any point in space varies rapidly and randomly with time. Some circular motions called eddies are also generated. An obstacle placed in the path of a fast moving fluid causes turbulence [Fig. 10.8 (b)]. The smoke rising from a burning stack of wood, oceanic currents are turbulent. Twinkling of stars is the result of atmospheric turbulence. The wakes in the water and in the air left by cars, aeroplanes and boats are also turbulent.

Osborne Reynolds (1842-1912) observed that turbulent flow is less likely for viscous fluid flowing at low rates. He defined a dimensionless number, whose value gives one an approximate idea whether the flow would be turbulent . This number is called the Reynolds R_e.

$$R_e = \rho v d/\eta \qquad (10.21)$$

where ρ is the density of the fluid flowing with a speed v, d stands for the dimension of the pipe, and η is the viscosity of the fluid. R_e is a dimensionless number and therefore, it remains same in any system of units. It is found that flow is streamline or laminar for R_e less than 1000. The flow is turbulent for $R_e > 2000$. The flow becomes unsteady for R_e between 1000 and 2000. The critical value of R_e (known as critical Reynolds number), at which turbulence sets, is found to be the same for the geometrically similar flows. For example when oil and water with their different densities and viscosities, flow in pipes of same shapes and sizes, turbulence sets in at almost the same value of R_e. Using this fact a small scale laboratory model can be set up to study the character of fluid flow. They are useful in designing of ships, submarines, racing cars and aeroplanes.

R_e can also be written as

$$R_e = \rho v^2\ /\ (\eta v/d) = \rho A v^2\ /\ (\eta A v/d) \qquad (10.22)$$

= inertial force/force of viscosity.

Thus R_e represents the ratio of inertial force (force due to inertia i.e. mass of moving fluid or due to inertia of obstacle in its path) to viscous force.

Turbulence dissipates kinetic energy usually in the form of heat. Racing cars and planes are engineered to precision in order to minimise turbulence. The design of such vehicles involves experimentation and trial and error. On the other hand turbulence (like friction) is sometimes desirable. Turbulence promotes mixing and increases the rates of transfer of mass, momentum and energy. The blades of a kitchen mixer induce turbulent flow and provide thick milk shakes as well as beat eggs into a uniform texture.

Example 10.11 The flow rate of water from a tap of diameter 1.25 cm is 0.48 L/min. The coefficient of viscosity of water is 10^{-3} Pa s. After sometime the flow rate is increased to 3 L/min. Characterise the flow for both the flow rates.

Answer Let the speed of the flow be v and the diameter of the tap be d = 1.25 cm. The volume of the water flowing out per second is

$Q = v \times \pi d^2 / 4$

$v = 4\ Q /\ \ d^2$

We then estimate the Reynolds number to be

$R_e = 4\ \rho\ Q / \pi\ d\ \eta$

$= 4 \times 10^3 \text{kg m}^{-3} \times Q / (3.14 \times 1.25 \times 10^{-2} \text{m} \times 10^{-3} \text{Pa s})$

$= 1.019 \times 10^8\ \text{m}^{-3}\ \text{s}\ Q$

Since initially

$Q = 0.48$ L / min = 8 cm^3 / s = 8×10^{-6} m^3 s^{-1},

we obtain,

$R_e = 815$

Since this is below 1000, the flow is steady. After some time when

$Q = 3$ L / min = 50 cm^3 / s = 5×10^{-5} m^3 s^{-1},

we obtain,

$R_e = 5095$

The flow will be turbulent. You may carry out an experiment in your washbasin to determine the transition from laminar to turbulent flow.

10.7 SURFACE TENSION

You must have noticed that, oil and water do not mix; water wets you and me but not ducks; mercury does not wet glass but water sticks to it, oil rises up a cotton wick, inspite of gravity, Sap and water rise up to the top of the leaves of the tree, hairs of a paint brush do not cling together when dry and even when dipped in water but form a fine tip when taken out of it. All these and many more such experiences are related with the free surfaces of liquids. As liquids have no definite shape but have a definite volume, they acquire a free surface when poured in a container. These surfaces possess some additional energy. This phenomenon is known as surface tension and it is concerned with only liquid as gases do not have free surfaces. Let us now understand this phenomena.

10.7.1 Surface Energy

A liquid stays together because of attraction between molecules. Consider a molecule well inside a liquid. The intermolecular distances are such that it is attracted to all the surrounding molecules [Fig. 10.16(a)]. This attraction results in a negative potential energy for the molecule, which depends on the number and distribution of molecules around the chosen one. But the average potential energy of all the molecules is the same. This is supported by the fact that to take a collection of such molecules (the liquid) and to disperse them far away from each other in order to evaporate or vaporise, the heat of evaporation required is quite large. For water it is of the order of 40 kJ/mol.

Let us consider a molecule near the surface Fig. 10.16(b). Only lower half side of it is surrounded by liquid molecules. There is some negative potential energy due to these, but obviously it is less than that of a molecule in bulk, i.e., the one fully inside. Approximately it is half of the latter. Thus, molecules on a liquid surface have some extra energy in comparison to molecules in the interior. A liquid thus tends to have the least surface area which external conditions permit. Increasing surface area requires energy. Most surface phenomenon can be understood in terms of this fact. What is the energy required for having a molecule at the surface? As mentioned above, roughly it is half the energy required to remove it entirely from the liquid i.e., half the heat of evaporation.

Finally, what is a surface? Since a liquid consists of molecules moving about, there cannot be a perfectly sharp surface. The density of the liquid molecules drops rapidly to zero around $z = 0$ as we move along the direction indicated Fig 10.16 (c) in a distance of the order of a few molecular sizes.

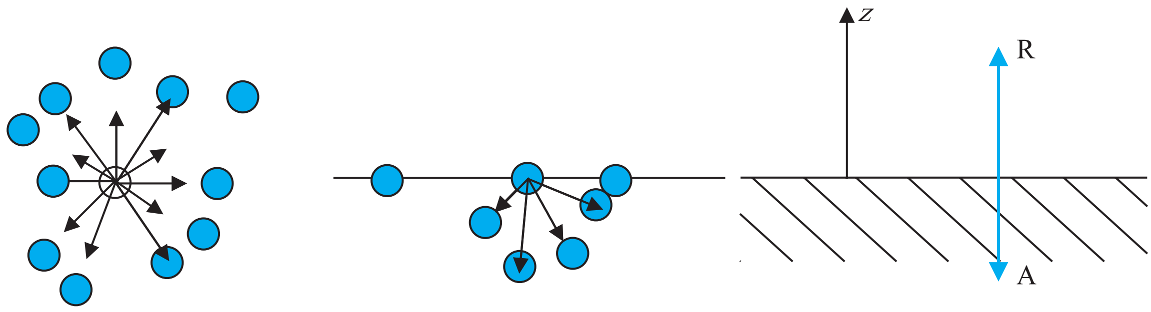


Fig. 10.16 *Schematic picture of molecules in a liquid, at the surface and balance of forces. (a) Molecule inside a liquid. Forces on a molecule due to others are shown. Direction of arrows indicates attraction of repulsion. (b) Same, for a molecule at a surface. (c) Balance of attractive (A) and repulsive (R) forces.*

10.7.2 Surface Energy and Surface Tension

As we have discussed that an extra energy is associated with surface of liquids, the creation of more surface (spreading of surface) keeping other things like volume fixed requires additional energy. To appreciate this, consider a horizontal liquid film ending in bar free to slide over parallel guides Fig (10.17).

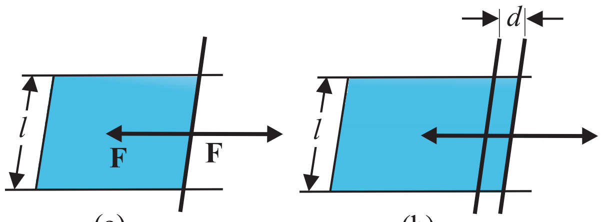


Fig. 10.17 *Stretching a film. (a) A film in equilibrium; (b) The film stretched an extra distance.*

Suppose that we move the bar by a small distance d as shown. Since the area of the surface increases, the system now has more energy, this means that some work has been done against an internal force. Let this internal force be **F**, the work done by the applied force is $\mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{d} = Fd$. From conservation of energy, this is stored as additional energy in the film. If the surface energy of the film is S per unit area, the extra area is $2dl$. A film has two sides and the liquid in between, so there are two surfaces and the extra energy is

$$S\,(2dl) = Fd \tag{10.23}$$

$$\text{Or, } S = Fd/2dl = F/2l \tag{10.24}$$

This quantity S is the magnitude of surface tension. It is equal to the surface energy per unit area of the liquid interface and is also equal to the force per unit length exerted by the fluid on the movable bar.

So far we have talked about the surface of one liquid. More generally, we need to consider fluid surface in contact with other fluids or solid surfaces. The surface energy in that case depends on the materials on both sides of the surface. For example, if the molecules of the materials attract each other, surface energy is reduced while if they repel each other the surface energy is increased. Thus, more appropriately, the surface energy is the energy of the interface between two materials and depends on both of them.

We make the following observations from above:

(i) Surface tension is a force per unit length (or surface energy per unit area) acting in the plane of the interface between the plane of the liquid and any other substance; it also is the extra energy that the molecules at the interface have as compared to molecules in the interior.

(ii) At any point on the interface besides the boundary, we can draw a line and imagine equal and opposite surface tension forces S per unit length of the line acting perpendicular to the line, in the plane of the interface. The line is in equilibrium. To be more specific, imagine a line of atoms or molecules at the surface. The atoms to the left pull the line towards them; those to the right pull it towards them! This line of atoms is in equilibrium under tension. If the line really marks the end of the interface, as in

Figure 10.16 (a) and (b) there is only the force S per unit length acting inwards.

Table 10.3 gives the surface tension of various liquids. The value of surface tension depends on temperature. Like viscosity, the surface tension of a liquid usually falls with temperature.

Table 10.3 **Surface tension of some liquids at the temperatures indicated with the heats of the vaporisation**

Liquid	Temp (°C)	Surface Tension (N/m)	Heat of vaporisation (kJ/mol)
Helium	–270	0.000239	0.115
Oxygen	–183	0.0132	7.1
Ethanol	20	0.0227	40.6
Water	20	0.0727	44.16
Mercury	20	0.4355	63.2

A fluid will stick to a solid surface if the surface energy between fluid and the solid is smaller than the sum of surface energies between solid-air, and fluid-air. Now there is cohesion between the solid surface and the liquid. It can be directly measured experimentaly as schematically shown in Fig. 10.18. A flat vertical glass plate, below which a vessel of some liquid is kept, forms one arm of the balance. The plate is balanced by weights on the other side, with its horizontal edge just over water. The vessel is raised slightly till the liquid just touches the glass plate and pulls it down a little because of surface tension. Weights are added till the plate just clears water.

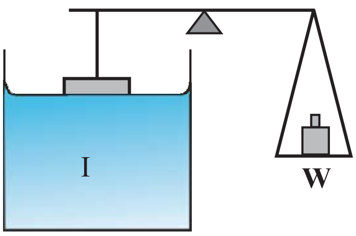


Fig. 10.18 *Measuring Surface Tension.*

Suppose the additional weight required is W. Then from Eq. 10.24 and the discussion given there, the surface tension of the liquid-air interface is

$$S_{la} = (W/2l) = (mg/2l) \tag{10.25}$$

where m is the extra mass and l is the length of the plate edge. The subscript (la) emphasises the fact that the liquid-air interface tension is involved.

10.7.3 Angle of Contact

The surface of liquid near the plane of contact, with another medium is in general curved. The angle between tangent to the liquid surface at the point of contact and solid surface inside the liquid is termed as angle of contact. It is denoted by θ. It is different at interfaces of different pairs of liquids and solids. The value of θ determines whether a liquid will spread on the surface of a solid or it will form droplets on it. For example, water forms droplets on lotus leaf as shown in Fig. 10.19 (a) while spreads over a clean plastic plate as shown in Fig. 10.19(b).

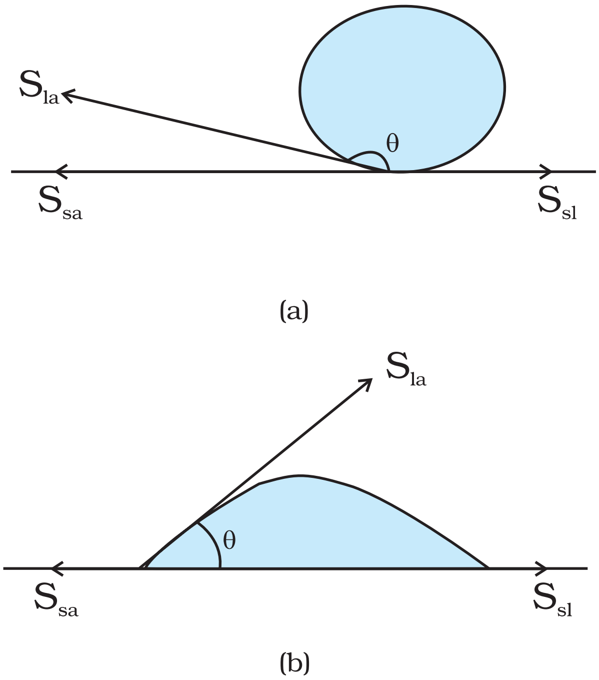


Fig. 10.19 *Different shapes of water drops with interfacial tensions (a) on a lotus leaf (b) on a clean plastic plate.*

We consider the three interfacial tensions at all the three interfaces, liquid-air, solid-air and solid-liquid denoted by S_{la}, S_{sa} & S_{sl} respectively as given in Fig. 10.19 (a) and (b). At the line of contact, the surface forces between the three media must be in equilibrium. From the Fig. 10.19(b) the following relation is easily derived.

$$S_{la}\cos\theta + S_{sl} = S_{sa} \quad (10.26)$$

The angle of contact is an obtuse angle if $S_{sl} > S_{la}$ as in the case of water-leaf interface while it is an acute angle if $S_{sl} < S_{la}$ as in the case of water-plastic interface. When θ is an obtuse angle then molecules of liquids are attracted strongly to themselves and weakly to those of solid, it costs a lot of energy to create a liquid-solid surface, and liquid then does not wet the solid. This is what happens with water on a waxy or oily surface, and with mercury on any surface. On the other hand, if the molecules of the liquid are strongly attracted to those of the solid, this will reduce S_{sl} and therefore, $\cos\theta$ may increase or θ may decrease. In this case θ is an acute angle. This is what happens for water on glass or on plastic and for kerosene oil on virtually anything (it just spreads). Soaps, detergents and dying substances are wetting agents. When they are added the angle of contact becomes small so that these may penetrate well and become effective. Water proofing agents on the other hand are added to create a large angle of contact between the water and fibres.

10.7.4 Drops and Bubbles

One consequence of surface tension is that free liquid drops and bubbles are spherical if effects of gravity can be neglected. You must have seen this especially clearly in small drops just formed in a high-speed spray or jet, and in soap bubbles blown by most of us in childhood. Why are drops and bubbles spherical? What keeps soap bubbles stable?

As we have been saying repeatedly, a liquid-air interface has energy, so for a given volume the surface with minimum energy is the one with the least area. The sphere has this property. Though it is out of the scope of this book, but you can check that a sphere is better than at least a cube in this respect! So, if gravity and other forces (e.g. air resistance) were ineffective, liquid drops would be spherical.

Another interesting consequence of surface tension is that the pressure inside a spherical drop Fig. 10.20(a) is more than the pressure outside. Suppose a spherical drop of radius r is in equilibrium. If its radius increase by Δr. The extra surface energy is

$$[4\pi(r + \Delta r)^2 - 4\pi r^2]\, S_{la} = 8\pi r\, \Delta r\, S_{la} \quad (10.27)$$

If the drop is in equilibrium this energy cost is balanced by the energy gain due to expansion under the pressure difference $(P_i - P_o)$ between the inside of the bubble and the outside. The work done is

$$W = (P_i - P_o)\, 4\pi r^2 \Delta r \quad (10.28)$$

so that

$$(P_i - P_o) = (2\, S_{la}/\, r) \quad (10.29)$$

In general, for a liquid-gas interface, the convex side has a higher pressure than the concave side. For example, an air bubble in a liquid, would have higher pressure inside it. See Fig 10.20 (b).

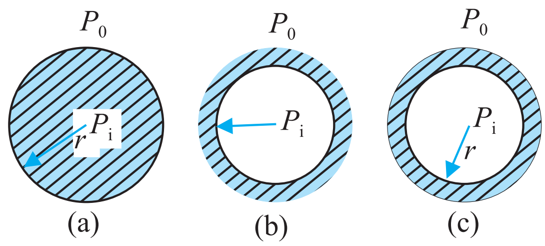


Fig. 10.20 *Drop, cavity and bubble of radius r.*

A bubble Fig 10.20 (c) differs from a drop and a cavity; in this it has two interfaces. Applying the above argument we have for a bubble

$$(P_i - P_o) = (4\, S_{la}/\, r) \quad (10.30)$$

This is probably why you have to blow hard, but not too hard, to form a soap bubble. A little extra air pressure is needed inside!

10.7.5 Capillary Rise

One consequence of the pressure difference across a curved liquid-air interface is the well-known effect that water rises up in a narrow tube in spite of gravity. The word capilla means

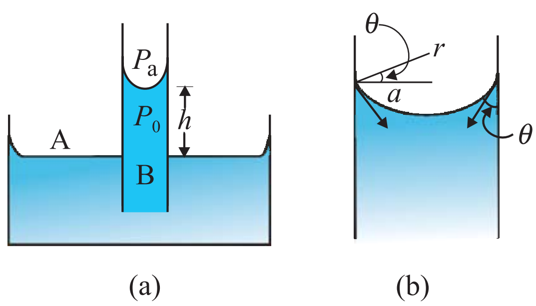


Fig. 10.21 *Capillary rise, (a) Schematic picture of a narrow tube immersed water.*
(b) Enlarged picture near interface.

hair in Latin; if the tube were hair thin, the rise would be very large. To see this, consider a vertical capillary tube of circular cross section (radius a) inserted into an open vessel of water (Fig. 10.21). The contact angle between water and glass is acute. Thus the surface of water in **the capillary is concave. This means that there is a pressure difference between the two sides of the top surface. This is given by**

$$(P_i - P_o) = (2S/r) = 2S/(a \sec \theta)$$
$$= (2S/a) \cos \theta \qquad (10.31)$$

Thus the pressure of the water inside the tube, just at the meniscus (air-water interface) is less than the atmospheric pressure. Consider the two points A and B in Fig. 10.21(a). They must be at the same pressure, namely

$$P_0 + h \rho g = P_i = P_A \qquad (10.32)$$

where ρ is the density of water and h is called the capillary rise [Fig. 10.21(a)]. Using Eq. (10.31) and (10.32) we have

$$h \rho g = (P_i - P_0) = (2S \cos \theta)/a \qquad (10.33)$$

The discussion here, and the Eqs. (10.28) and (10.29) make it clear that the capillary rise is due to surface tension. It is larger, for a smaller a. Typically it is of the order of a few cm for fine capillaries. For example, if a = 0.05 cm, using the value of surface tension for water (Table 10.3), we find that

$$h = 2S/(\rho g a)$$

$$= \frac{2 \times 0.073 \text{ N m}^{-1}}{10^3 \text{ kg m}^{-3} \times 9.8 \text{ m s}^{-2} \times 5 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}}$$

$$= 2.98 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m} = 2.98 \text{ cm}$$

Notice that if the liquid meniscus is convex, as for mercury, i.e., if cos θ is negative then from Eq. (10.32) for example, it is clear that the liquid will be lower in the capillary !

10.7.6 Detergents and Surface Tension

We clean dirty clothes containing grease and oil stains sticking to cotton or other fabrics by adding detergents or soap to water, soaking clothes in it and shaking. Let us understand this process better.

Washing with water does not remove grease stains. This is because water does not wet greasy dirt; i.e., there is very little area of contact between them. If water could wet grease, the flow of water could carry some grease away. Something of this sort is achieved through detergents. The molecules of detergents are hairpin shaped, with one end attracted to water and the other to molecules of grease, oil or wax, thus tending to form water-oil interfaces. The result is shown in Fig. 10.22 as a sequence of figures.

In our language, we would say that addition of detergents, whose molecules attract at one end and say, oil on the other, reduces drastically the surface tension S (water-oil). It may even become energetically favourable to form such interfaces, i.e., globs of dirt surrounded by detergents and then by water. This kind of process using surface active detergents or surfactants is important not only for cleaning, but also in recovering oil, mineral ores etc.

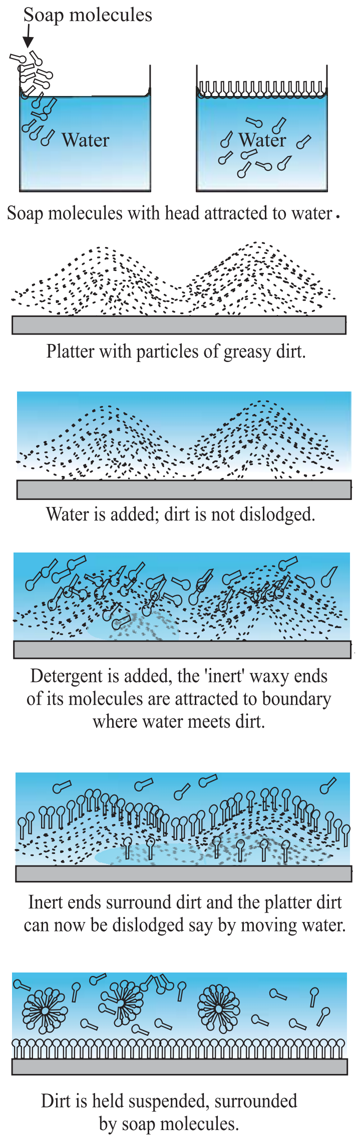


Fig. 10.22 *Detergent action in terms of what detergent molecules do.*

Example 10.12 The lower end of a capillary tube of diameter 2.00 mm is dipped 8.00 cm below the surface of water in a beaker. What is the pressure required in the tube in order to blow a hemispherical bubble at its end in water? The surface tension of water at temperature of the experiments is 7.30 $\times 10^{-2}$ Nm^{-1}. 1 atmospheric pressure = 1.01 × 10^5 Pa, density of water = 1000 kg/m^3, g = 9.80 m s^{-2}. Also calculate the excess pressure.

Answer The excess pressure in a bubble of gas in a liquid is given by $2S/r$, where S is the surface tension of the liquid-gas interface. You should note there is only one liquid surface in this case. (For a bubble of liquid in a gas, there are two liquid surfaces, so the formula for excess pressure in that case is $4S/r$.) The radius of the bubble is r. Now the pressure outside the bubble P_o equals atmospheric pressure plus the pressure due to 8.00 cm of water column. That is

$$P_o = (1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} + 0.08 \text{ m} \times 1000 \text{ kg m}^{-3} \times 9.80 \text{ m s}^{-2})$$
$$= 1.01784 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$$

Therefore, the pressure inside the bubble is

$$P_i = P_o + 2S/r$$
$$= 1.01784 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa} + (2 \times 7.3 \times 10^{-2} \text{ Pa m}/10^{-3} \text{ m})$$
$$= (1.01784 + 0.00146) \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$$
$$= 1.02 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$$

where the radius of the bubble is taken to be equal to the radius of the capillary tube, since the bubble is hemispherical ! (The answer has been rounded off to three significant figures.) The excess pressure in the bubble is 146 Pa.

SUMMARY

1. The basic property of a fluid is that it can flow. The fluid does not have any resistance to change of its shape. Thus, the shape of a fluid is governed by the shape of its container.
2. A liquid is incompressible and has a free surface of its own. A gas is compressible and it expands to occupy all the space available to it.
3. If F is the normal force exerted by a fluid on an area A then the average pressure P_{av} is defined as the ratio of the force to area
$$P_{av} = \frac{F}{A}$$
4. The unit of the pressure is the pascal (Pa). It is the same as N m^{-2}. Other common units of pressure are
1 atm = 1.01×10^5 Pa
1 bar = 10^5 Pa
1 torr = 133 Pa = 0.133 kPa
1 mm of Hg = 1 torr = 133 Pa
5. *Pascal's law* states that: Pressure in a fluid at rest is same at all points which are at the same height. A change in pressure applied to an enclosed fluid is transmitted undiminished to every point of the fluid and the walls of the containing vessel.
6. The pressure in a fluid varies with depth h according to the expression
$P = P_a + \rho gh$
where ρ is the density of the fluid, assumed uniform.
7. The volume of an incompressible fluid passing any point every second in a pipe of non uniform crossection is the same in the steady flow.
$v A$ = constant (v is the velocity and A is the area of crossection)
The equation is due to mass conservation in incompressible fluid flow.
8. *Bernoulli's principle* states that as we move along a streamline, the sum of the pressure (P), the kinetic energy per unit volume ($\rho v^2/2$) and the potential energy per unit volume (ρgy) remains a constant.
$P + \rho v^2/2 + \rho gy$ = constant

The equation is basically the conservation of energy applied to non viscuss fluid motion in steady state. There is no fluid which have zero viscosity, so the above statement is true only approximately. The viscosity is like friction and converts the kinetic energy to heat energy.

9. Though shear strain in a fluid does not require shear stress, when a shear stress is applied to a fluid, the motion is generated which causes a shear strain growing with time. The ratio of the shear stress to the time rate of shearing strain is known as coefficient of viscosity, η
where symbols have their usual meaning and are defined in the text.
10. *Stokes' law* states that the viscous drag force **F** on a sphere of radius a moving with velocity **v** through a fluid of viscosity is, $\mathbf{F} = -6\pi\eta a\mathbf{v}$.
11. The onset of turbulence in a fluid is determined by a dimensionless parameter is called the *Reynolds number* given by
$R_e = \rho v d/\eta$
Where d is a typical geometrical length associated with the fluid flow and the other symbols have their usual meaning.
12. Surface tension is a force per unit length (or surface energy per unit area) acting in the plane of interface between the liquid and the bounding surface. It is the extra energy that the molecules at the interface have as compared to the interior.

POINTS TO PONDER

1. Pressure is a *scalar quantity*. The definition of the pressure as "force per unit area" may give one false impression that pressure is a vector. The "force" in the numerator of the definition is the component of the force normal to the area upon which it is impressed. While describing fluids as a conceptual shift from particle and rigid body mechanics is required. We are concerned with properties that vary from point to point in the fluid.
2. One should not think of pressure of a fluid as being exerted only on a solid like the walls of a container or a piece of solid matter immersed in the fluid. Pressure exists at all points in a fluid. An element of a fluid (such as the one shown in Fig. 10.2) is in equilibrium because the pressures exerted on the various faces are equal.
3. The expression for pressure
$P = P_a + \rho gh$
holds true if fluid is incompressible. Practically speaking it holds for liquids, which are largely incompressible and hence is a constant with height.
4. The gauge pressure is the difference of the actual pressure and the atmospheric pressure.
$P - P_a = P_g$
Many pressure-measuring devices measure the gauge pressure. These include the tyre pressure gauge and the blood pressure gauge (sphygmomanometer).
5. A streamline is a map of fluid flow. In a steady flow two streamlines do not intersect as it means that the fluid particle will have two possible velocities at the point.
6. Bernoulli's principal does not hold in presence of viscous drag on the fluid. The work done by this dissipative viscous force must be taken into account in this case, and P_2 [Fig. 10.9] will be lower than the value given by Eq. (10.12).
7. As the temperature rises the atoms of the liquid become more mobile and the coefficient of viscosity, η falls. In a gas the temperature rise increases the random motion of atoms and η increases.
8. The critical Reynolds number for the onset of turbulence is in the range 1000 to 10000, depending on the geometry of the flow. For most cases $R_e < 1000$ signifies laminar flow; $1000 < R_e < 2000$ is unsteady flow and $R_e > 2000$ implies turbulent flow.
9. Surface tension arises due to excess potential energy of the molecules on the surface in comparison to their potential energy in the interior. Such a surface energy is present at the interface separating two substances at least one of which is a fluid. It is not the property of a single fluid alone.

Physical Quantity	Symbol	Dimensions	Unit	Remarks
Pressure	P	$[M L^{-1} T^{-2}]$	pascal (Pa)	1 atm = 1.013×10^5 Pa, Scalar
Density	ρ	$[M L^{-3}]$	kg m^{-3}	Scalar
Specific Gravity		No	No	$\frac{\rho_{substance}}{\rho_{water}}$, Scalar
Co-efficient of viscosity	η	$[M L^{-1} T^{-1}]$	Pa s or poiseiulles (Pl)	Scalar
Reynold's Number	R_e	No	No	$R_e = \frac{\rho v d}{\eta}$ scalar
Surface Tension	S	$[M T^{-2}]$	N m^{-1}	Scalar

EXERCISES

10.1 Explain why
(a) The blood pressure in humans is greater at the feet than at the brain
(b) Atmospheric pressure at a height of about 6 km decreases to nearly half of its value at the sea level, though the height of the atmosphere is more than 100 km
(c) Hydrostatic pressure is a scalar quantity even though pressure is force divided by area.

10.2 Explain why
(a) The angle of contact of mercury with glass is obtuse, while that of water with glass is acute.
(b) Water on a clean glass surface tends to spread out while mercury on the same surface tends to form drops. (Put differently, water wets glass while mercury does not.)
(c) Surface tension of a liquid is independent of the area of the surface
(d) Water with detergent disolved in it should have small angles of contact.
(e) A drop of liquid under no external forces is always spherical in shape

10.3 Fill in the blanks using the word(s) from the list appended with each statement:
(a) Surface tension of liquids generally ... with temperatures (increases / decreases)
(b) Viscosity of gases ... with temperature, whereas viscosity of liquids ... with temperature (increases / decreases)
(c) For solids with elastic modulus of rigidity, the shearing force is proportional to ... , while for fluids it is proportional to ... (shear strain / rate of shear strain)
(d) For a fluid in a steady flow, the increase in flow speed at a constriction follows (conservation of mass / Bernoulli's principle)
(e) For the model of a plane in a wind tunnel, turbulence occurs at a ... speed for turbulence for an actual plane (greater / smaller)

10.4 Explain why
(a) To keep a piece of paper horizontal, you should blow over, not under, it
(b) When we try to close a water tap with our fingers, fast jets of water gush through the openings between our fingers
(c) The size of the needle of a syringe controls flow rate better than the thumb pressure exerted by a doctor while administering an injection
(d) A fluid flowing out of a small hole in a vessel results in a backward thrust on the vessel
(e) A spinning cricket ball in air does not follow a parabolic trajectory

10.5 A 50 kg girl wearing high heel shoes balances on a single heel. The heel is circular with a diameter 1.0 cm. What is the pressure exerted by the heel on the horizontal floor ?

10.6 Toricelli's barometer used mercury. Pascal duplicated it using French wine of density 984 kg m^{-3}. Determine the height of the wine column for normal atmospheric pressure.

10.7 A vertical off-shore structure is built to withstand a maximum stress of 10^9 Pa. Is the structure suitable for putting up on top of an oil well in the ocean ? Take the depth of the ocean to be roughly 3 km, and ignore ocean currents.

10.8 A hydraulic automobile lift is designed to lift cars with a maximum mass of 3000 kg. The area of cross-section of the piston carrying the load is 425 cm^2. What maximum pressure would the smaller piston have to bear ?

10.9 A U-tube contains water and methylated spirit separated by mercury. The mercury columns in the two arms are in level with 10.0 cm of water in one arm and 12.5 cm of spirit in the other. What is the specific gravity of spirit ?

10.10 In the previous problem, if 15.0 cm of water and spirit each are further poured into the respective arms of the tube, what is the difference in the levels of mercury in the two arms ? (Specific gravity of mercury = 13.6)

10.11 Can Bernoulli's equation be used to describe the flow of water through a rapid in a river ? Explain.

10.12 Does it matter if one uses gauge instead of absolute pressures in applying Bernoulli's equation ? Explain.

10.13 Glycerine flows steadily through a horizontal tube of length 1.5 m and radius 1.0 cm. If the amount of glycerine collected per second at one end is 4.0×10^{-3} kg s^{-1}, what is the pressure difference between the two ends of the tube ? (Density of glycerine = 1.3×10^3 kg m^{-3} and viscosity of glycerine = 0.83 Pa s). [You may also like to check if the assumption of laminar flow in the tube is correct].

10.14 In a test experiment on a model aeroplane in a wind tunnel, the flow speeds on the upper and lower surfaces of the wing are 70 m s^{-1} and 63 m s^{-1} respectively. What is the lift on the wing if its area is 2.5 m^2 ? Take the density of air to be 1.3 kg m^{-3}.

10.15 Figures 10.23(a) and (b) refer to the steady flow of a (non-viscous) liquid. Which of the two figures is incorrect ? Why ?

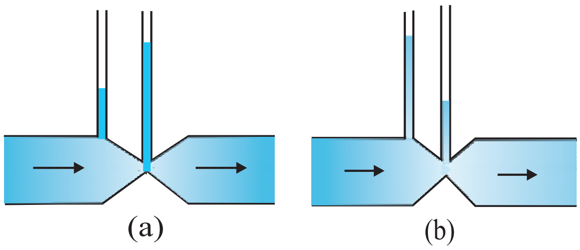


Fig. 10.23

10.16 The cylindrical tube of a spray pump has a cross-section of 8.0 cm^2 one end of which has 40 fine holes each of diameter 1.0 mm. If the liquid flow inside the tube is 1.5 m min^{-1}, what is the speed of ejection of the liquid through the holes ?

10.17 A U-shaped wire is dipped in a soap solution, and removed. The thin soap film formed between the wire and the light slider supports a weight of 1.5×10^{-2} N (which includes the small weight of the slider). The length of the slider is 30 cm. What is the surface tension of the film ?

10.18 Figure 10.24 (a) shows a thin liquid film supporting a small weight = 4.5×10^{-2} N. What is the weight supported by a film of the same liquid at the same temperature in Fig. (b) and (c) ? Explain your answer physically.

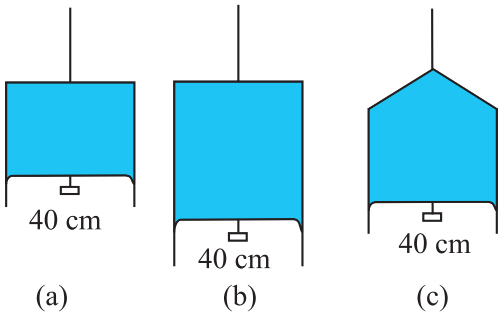


Fig. 10.24

10.19 What is the pressure inside the drop of mercury of radius 3.00 mm at room temperature ? Surface tension of mercury at that temperature (20 °C) is 4.65×10^{-1} N m^{-1}. The atmospheric pressure is 1.01×10^5 Pa. Also give the excess pressure inside the drop.

10.20 What is the excess pressure inside a bubble of soap solution of radius 5.00 mm, given that the surface tension of soap solution at the temperature (20 °C) is 2.50×10^{-2} N m^{-1}? If an air bubble of the same dimension were formed at depth of 40.0 cm inside a container containing the soap solution (of relative density 1.20), what would be the pressure inside the bubble ? (1 atmospheric pressure is 1.01×10^5 Pa).

Additional Exercises

10.21 A tank with a square base of area 1.0 m^2 is divided by a vertical partition in the middle. The bottom of the partition has a small-hinged door of area 20 cm^2. The tank is filled with water in one compartment, and an acid (of relative density 1.7) in the other, both to a height of 4.0 m. compute the force necessary to keep the door close.

10.22 A manometer reads the pressure of a gas in an enclosure as shown in Fig. 10.25 (a) When a pump removes some of the gas, the manometer reads as in Fig. 10.25 (b) The liquid used in the manometers is mercury and the atmospheric pressure is 76 cm of mercury.

(a) Give the absolute and gauge pressure of the gas in the enclosure for cases (a) and (b), in units of cm of mercury.

(b) How would the levels change in case (b) if 13.6 cm of water (immiscible with mercury) are poured into the right limb of the manometer ? (Ignore the small change in the volume of the gas).

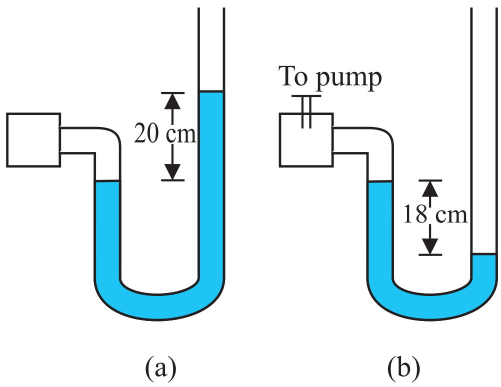


Fig. 10.25

10.23 Two vessels have the same base area but different shapes. The first vessel takes twice the volume of water that the second vessel requires to fill upto a particular common height. Is the force exerted by the water on the base of the vessel the same in the two cases ? If so, why do the vessels filled with water to that same height give different readings on a weighing scale ?

10.24 During blood transfusion the needle is inserted in a vein where the gauge pressure is 2000 Pa. At what height must the blood container be placed so that blood may just enter the vein ? [Use the density of whole blood from Table 10.1].

10.25 In deriving Bernoulli's equation, we equated the work done on the fluid in the tube to its change in the potential and kinetic energy. (a) What is the largest average velocity of blood flow in an artery of diameter 2×10^{-3} m if the flow must remain laminar ? (b) Do the dissipative forces become more important as the fluid velocity increases ? Discuss qualitatively.

10.26 (a) What is the largest average velocity of blood flow in an artery of radius 2×10^{-3}m if the flow must remain lanimar? (b) What is the corresponding flow rate ? (Take viscosity of blood to be 2.084×10^{-3} Pa s).

10.27 A plane is in level flight at constant speed and each of its two wings has an area of 25 m^2. If the speed of the air is 180 km/h over the lower wing and 234 km/h over the upper wing surface, determine the plane's mass. (Take air density to be 1 kg m^{-3}).

10.28 In Millikan's oil drop experiment, what is the terminal speed of an uncharged drop of radius 2.0×10^{-5} m and density 1.2×10^{3} kg m^{-3}. Take the viscosity of air at the temperature of the experiment to be 1.8×10^{-5} Pa s. How much is the viscous force on the drop at that speed ? Neglect buoyancy of the drop due to air.

10.29 Mercury has an angle of contact equal to 140° with soda lime glass. A narrow tube of radius 1.00 mm made of this glass is dipped in a trough containing mercury. By what amount does the mercury dip down in the tube relative to the liquid surface outside ? Surface tension of mercury at the temperature of the experiment is 0.465 N m^{-1}. Density of mercury = 13.6×10^{3} kg m^{-3}.

10.30 Two narrow bores of diameters 3.0 mm and 6.0 mm are joined together to form a U-tube open at both ends. If the U-tube contains water, what is the difference in its levels in the two limbs of the tube ? Surface tension of water at the temperature of the experiment is 7.3×10^{-2} N m^{-1}. Take the angle of contact to be zero and density of water to be 1.0×10^{3} kg m^{-3} (g = 9.8 m s^{-2}) .

Calculator/Computer – Based Problem

10.31 (a) It is known that density ρ of air decreases with height y as

$$_{0}e^{\ y/y_o}$$

where ρ_0 = 1.25 kg m^{-3} is the density at sea level, and y_0 is a constant. This density variation is called the law of atmospheres. Obtain this law assuming that the temperature of atmosphere remains a constant (isothermal conditions). Also assume that the value of g remains constant.

(b) A large He balloon of volume 1425 m^3 is used to lift a payload of 400 kg. Assume that the balloon maintains constant radius as it rises. How high does it rise ?

[Take y_0 = 8000 m and ρ_{He} = 0.18 kg m^{-3}].

APPENDIX 10.1 : WHAT IS BLOOD PRESSURE ?

In evolutionary history there occurred a time when animals started spending a significant amount of time in the upright position. This placed a number of demands on the circulatory system. The venous system that returns blood from the lower extremities to the heart underwent changes. You will recall that veins are blood vessels through which blood returns to the heart. Humans and animals such as the giraffe have adapted to the problem of moving blood upward against gravity. But animals such as snakes, rats and rabbits will die if held upwards, since the blood remains in the lower extremities and the venous system is unable to move it towards the heart.

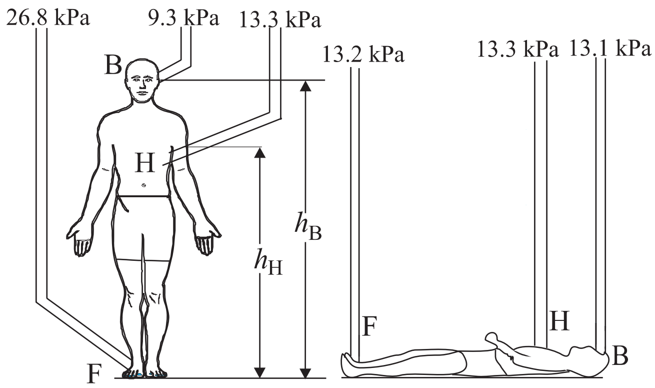


Fig. 10.26 *Schematic view of the gauge pressures in the arteries in various parts of the human body while standing or lying down. The pressures shown are averaged over a heart cycle.*

Figure 10.26 shows the average pressures observed in the arteries at various points in the human body. Since viscous effects are small, we can use Bernoulli's equation, Eq. (10.13),

$$P \quad \frac{1}{2} \quad v^2 \qquad gy \quad \text{Constant}$$

to understand these pressure values. The kinetic energy term ($\rho\, v^2/2$) can be ignored since the velocities in the three arteries are small ($\approx$ 0.1 m s^{-1}) and almost constant. Hence the gauge pressures at the brain P_B, the heart P_H, and the foot P_F are related by

$$P_F = P_H + \rho\, g\, h_H = P_B + \rho\, g\, h_B \tag{10.34}$$

where ρ is the density of blood.

Typical values of the heights to the heart and the brain are h_H = 1.3 m and h_B = 1.7 m. Taking $\rho = 1.06 \times 10^3$ kg m^{-3} we obtain that P_F = 26.8 kPa (kilopascals) and P_B = 9.3 kPa given that P_H = 13.3 kPa. Thus the pressures in the lower and upper parts of the body are so different when a person is standing, but are almost equal when he is lying down. As mentioned in the text the units for pressure more commonly employed in medicine and physiology are torr and mm of Hg. 1 mm of Hg = 1 torr = 0.133 kPa. Thus the average pressure at the heart is P_H = 13.3 kPa = 100 mm of Hg.

The human body is a marvel of nature. The veins in the lower extremities are equipped with valves, which open when blood flows towards the heart and close if it tends to drain down. Also, blood is returned at least partially by the pumping action associated with breathing and by the flexing of the skeletal muscles during walking. This explains why a soldier who is required to stand at attention may faint because of insufficient return of the blood to the heart. Once he is made to lie down, the pressures become equalized and he regains consciousness.

An instrument called the sphygmomanometer usually measures the blood pressure of humans. It is a fast, painless and non-invasive technique and gives the doctor a reliable idea about the patient's health. The measurement process is shown in Fig. 10.27. There are two reasons why the upper arm is used. First, it is at the same level as the heart and measurements here give values close to that at the heart. Secondly, the upper arm contains a single bone and makes the artery there (called the brachial artery) easy to compress. We have all measured pulse rates by placing our fingers over the wrist. Each pulse takes a little less than a second. During each pulse the pressure in the heart and the circulatory system goes through a maximum as the blood is pumped by the heart (**systolic pressure**) and a minimum as the heart relaxes **(diastolic pressure)**. The sphygmomanometer is a device, which measures these extreme pressures. It works on the principle that **blood flow in the brachial (upper arm) artery can be made to go from laminar to turbulent by suitable compression. Turbulent flow is dissipative, and its sound can be picked up on the stethoscope**.

The gauge pressure in an air sack wrapped around the upper arm is measured using a manometer or a dial pressure gauge (Fig. 10.27). The pressure in the sack is first increased till the brachial artery is closed. The pressure in the sack is then slowly reduced while a stethoscope placed just below the sack is used to listen to noises arising in the brachial artery. When the pressure is just below the **systolic** (peak) pressure, the artery opens briefly. During this brief period, the blood velocity in the highly constricted artery is high and turbulent and hence noisy. The resulting noise is heard as a **tapping sound** on the stethoscope. When the pressure in the sack is lowered further, the artery remains open for a longer portion of the heart cycle. Nevertheless, it remains closed during the **diastolic** (minimum pressure) phase of the heartbeat. Thus the duration of the tapping sound is longer. When the pressure in the sack reaches the diastolic pressure the artery is open during the entire heart cycle. The flow is however, still turbulent and noisy. But instead of a tapping sound we hear a steady, continuous roar on the stethoscope.

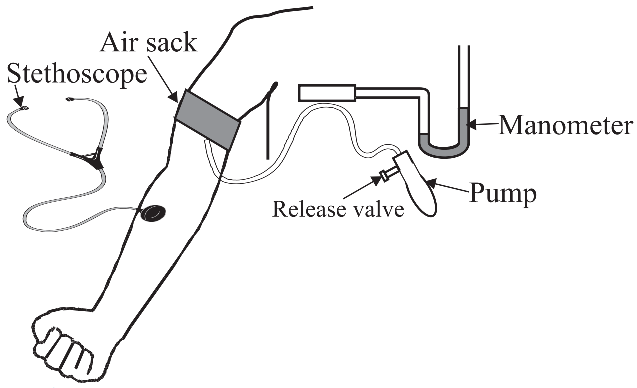


Fig. 10.27 *Blood pressure measurement using the sphygmomanometer and stethoscope.*

The blood pressure of a patient is presented as the ratio of systolic/diastolic pressures. For a resting healthy adult it is typically 120/80 mm of Hg (120/80 torr). Pressures above 140/90 require medical attention and advice. High blood pressures may seriously damage the heart, kidney and other organs and must be controlled.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

THERMAL PROPERTIES OF MATTER

11.1 INTRODUCTION

We all have common-sense notions of heat and temperature. Temperature is a measure of 'hotness' of a body. A kettle with boiling water is hotter than a box containing ice. In physics, we need to define the notion of heat, temperature, etc., more carefully. In this chapter, you will learn what heat is and how it is measured, and study the various proceses by which heat flows from one body to another. Along the way, you will find out why blacksmiths heat the iron ring before fitting on the rim of a wooden wheel of a bullock cart and why the wind at the beach often reverses direction after the sun goes down. You will also learn what happens when water boils or freezes, and its temperature does not change during these processes even though a great deal of heat is flowing into or out of it.

11.2 TEMPERATURE AND HEAT

We can begin studying thermal properties of matter with definitions of temperature and heat. Temperature is a relative measure, or indication of hotness or coldness. A hot utensil is said to have a high temperature, and ice cube to have a low temperature. An object that has a higher temperature than another object is said to be hotter. Note that hot and cold are relative terms, like tall and short. We can perceive temperature by touch. However, this temperature sense is somewhat unreliable and its range is too limited to be useful for scientific purposes.

We know from experience that a glass of ice-cold water left on a table on a hot summer day eventually warms up whereas a cup of hot tea on the same table cools down. It means that when the temperature of body, ice-cold water or hot tea in this case, and its surrounding medium are different, heat transfer takes place between the system and the surrounding medium, until the body and the surrounding medium are at the same temperature. We also know that in the case of glass tumbler of ice cold water, heat flows from the environment to the glass tumbler, whereas in the case of hot tea, it flows from the cup of hot tea to the environment. So, we can say that **heat is the form of energy transferred between two (or more) systems or a system and its surroundings by virtue of temperature difference.** The SI unit of heat energy transferred is expressed in joule (J) while SI unit of temperature is kelvin (K), and °C is a commonly used unit of temperature. When an object is heated, many changes may take place. Its temperature may rise, it may expand or change state. We will study the effect of heat on different bodies in later sections.

11.3 MEASUREMENT OF TEMPERATURE

A measure of temperature is obtained using a thermometer. Many physical properties of materials change sufficiently with temperature to be used as the basis for constructing thermometers. The commonly used property is variation of the volume of a liquid with temperature. For example, a common thermometer (the liquid-in-glass type) with which you are familiar. Mercury and alcohol are the liquids used in most liquid-in-glass thermometers.

Thermometers are calibrated so that a numerical value may be assigned to a given temperature. For the definition of any standard scale, two fixed reference points are needed. Since all substances change dimensions with temperature, an absolute reference for expansion is not available. However, the necessary fixed points may be correlated to physical phenomena that always occur at the same temperature. The ice point and the steam point of water are two convenient fixed points and are known as the freezing and boiling points. These two points are the temperatures at which pure water freezes and boils under standard pressure. The two familiar temperature scales are the Fahrenheit temperature scale and the Celsius temperature scale. The ice and steam point have values 32 °F and 212 °F respectively, on the Fahrenheit scale and 0 °C and 100 °C on the Celsius scale. On the Fahrenheit scale, there are 180 equal intervals between two reference points, and on the celsius scale, there are 100.

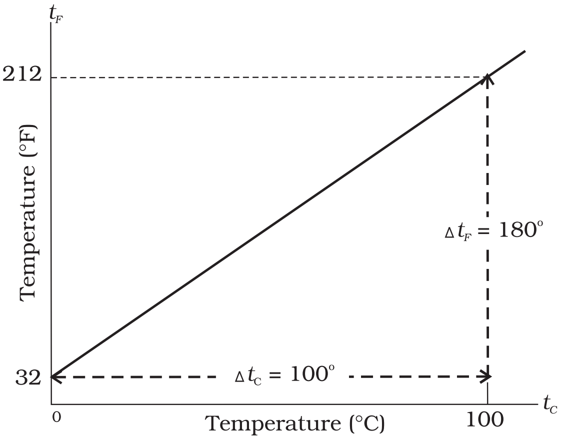


Fig. 11.1 *A plot of Fahrenheit temperature (t_F) versus Celsius temperature (t_c).*

A relationship for converting between the two scales may be obtained from a graph of Fahrenheit temperature (t_F) versus celsius temperature (t_C) in a straight line (Fig. 11.1), whose equation is

$$\frac{t_F - 32}{180} = \frac{t_C}{100} \tag{11.1}$$

11.4 IDEAL-GAS EQUATION AND ABSOLUTE TEMPERATURE

Liquid-in-glass thermometers show different readings for temperatures other than the fixed points because of differing expansion properties. A thermometer that uses a gas, however, gives the same readings regardless of which gas is used. Experiments show that all gases at low densities exhibit same expansion behaviour. The variables that describe the behaviour of a given quantity (mass) of gas are pressure, volume, and temperature (P, V, and T)(where $T = t + 273.15$; t is the temperature in °C). When temperature is held constant, the pressure and volume of a quantity of gas are related as PV = constant. This relationship is known as Boyle's law, after Robert Boyle (1627-1691) the English Chemist who discovered it. When the pressure is held constant, the volume of a quantity of the gas is related to the temperature as V/T = constant. This relationship is known as Charles' law, after the French scientist Jacques Charles (1747-1823). Low density gases obey these laws, which may be combined into a single relationship.

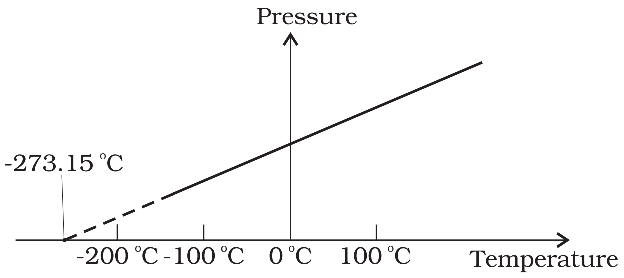


Fig. 11.2 *Pressure versus temperature of a low density gas kept at constant volume.*

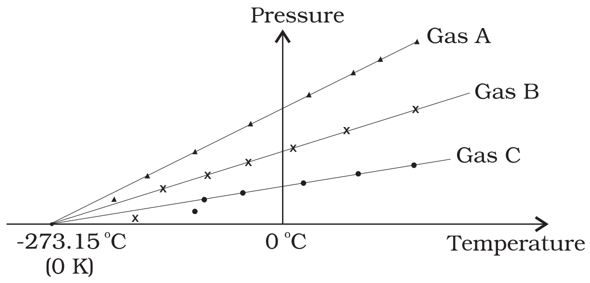


Fig. 11.3 *A plot of pressure versus temperature and extrapolation of lines for low density gases indicates the same absolute zero temperature.*

Notice that since PV = constant and V/T = constant for a given quantity of gas, then PV/T should also be a constant. This relationship is known as ideal gas law. It can be written in a more general form that applies not just to a given quantity of a single gas but to any quantity of any dilute gas and is known as **ideal-gas equation**:

$$\frac{PV}{T} = \mu R$$

or $PV = \mu RT$ (11.2)

where, μ is the number of moles in the sample of gas and R is called universal gas constant:

$R = 8.31 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$

In Eq. 11.2, we have learnt that the pressure and volume are directly proportional to temperature : $PV \propto T$. This relationship allows a gas to be used to measure temperature in a constant volume gas thermometer. Holding the volume of a gas constant, it gives $P \propto T$. Thus, with a constant-volume gas thermometer, temperature is read in terms of pressure. A plot of pressure versus temperature gives a straight line in this case, as shown in Fig. 11.2.

However, measurements on real gases deviate from the values predicted by the ideal gas law at low temperature. But the relationship is linear over a large temperature range, and it looks as though the pressure might reach zero with decreasing temperature if the gas continued to be a gas. The absolute minimum temperature for an ideal gas, therefore, inferred by extrapolating the straight line to the axis, as in Fig. 11.3. This temperature is found to be – 273.15 °C and is designated as **absolute zero**. Absolute zero is the foundation of the Kelvin temperature scale or absolute scale temperature named after the British scientist Lord Kelvin. On this scale, – 273.15 °C is taken as the zero point, that is 0 K (Fig. 11.4).

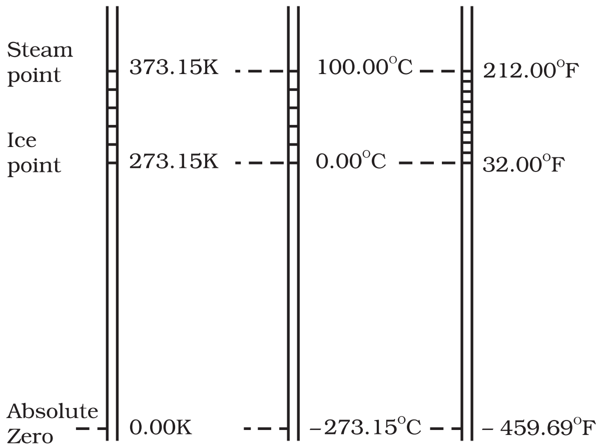


Fig. 11.4 *Comparision of the Kelvin, Celsius and Fahrenheit temperature scales.*

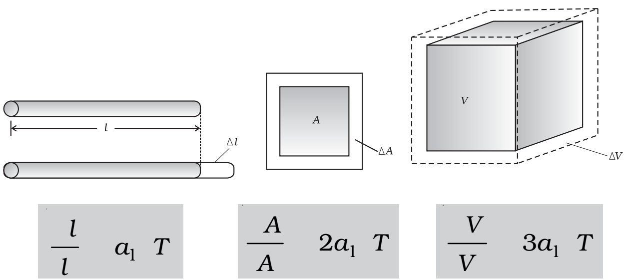
The size of the unit for Kelvin temperature is the same celsius degree, so temperature on these scales are related by

$$T = t_C + 273.15 \quad (11.3)$$

11.5 THERMAL EXPANSION

You may have observed that sometimes sealed bottles with metallic lids are so tightly screwed that one has to put the lid in hot water for sometime to open the lid. This would allow the metallic cover to expand, thereby loosening it to unscrew easily. In case of liquids, you may have observed that mercury in a thermometer rises, when the thermometer is put in a slightly warm water. If we take out the thermometer from the warm water the level of mercury falls again. Similarly, in the case of gases, a balloon partially inflated in a cool room may expand to full size when placed in warm water. On the other hand, a fully inflated balloon when immersed in cold water would start shrinking due to contraction of the air inside.

It is our common experience that most substances expand on heating and contract on cooling. A change in the temperature of a body causes change in its dimensions. The increase in the dimensions of a body due to the increase in its temperature is called thermal expansion. The expansion in length is called **linear expansion**. The expansion in area is called **area expansion**. The expansion in volume is called **volume expansion** (Fig. 11.5).



(a) Linear expansion (b) Area expansion (c) Volume expansion

Fig. 11.5 *Thermal Expansion.*

If the substance is in the form of a long rod, then for small change in temperature, ΔT, the fractional change in length, $\Delta l/l$, is directly proportional to ΔT.

$$\frac{\Delta l}{l} = \alpha_1 \Delta T \tag{11.4}$$

where α_1 is known as the **coefficient of linear expansion** and is characteristic of the material of the rod. In Table 11.1 are given typical average values of the coefficient of linear expansion for some materials in the temperature range 0 °C to 100 °C. From this Table, compare the value of α_l for glass and copper. We find that copper expands about five times more than glass for the same rise in temperature. Normally, metals expand more and have relatively high values of α_l.

Table 11.1 Values of coefficient of linear expansion for some materials

Materials	α_l (10^{-5} K^{-1})
Aluminium	2.5
Brass	1.8
Iron	1.2
Copper	1.7
Silver	1.9
Gold	1.4
Glass (pyrex)	0.32
Lead	0.29

Similarly, we consider the fractional change in volume, $\frac{\Delta V}{V}$, of a substance for temperature change ΔT and define the **coefficient of volume expansion**, α_V as

$$\alpha_V = \left(\frac{\Delta V}{V}\right)\frac{1}{\Delta T} \tag{11.5}$$

Here α_V is also a characteristic of the substance but is not strictly a constant. It depends in general on temperature (Fig 11.6). It is seen that α_V becomes constant only at a high temperature.

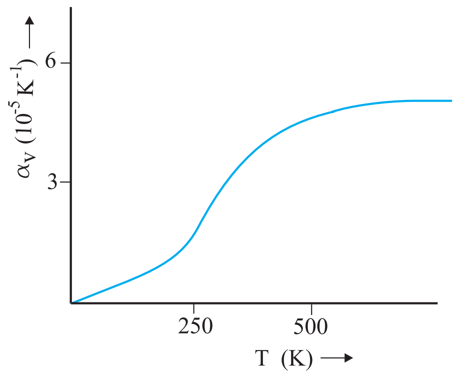


Fig. 11.6 *Coefficient of volume expansion of copper as a function of temperature.*

Table 11.2 gives the values of co-efficient of volume expansion of some common substances in the temperature range 0 –100 °C. You can see that thermal expansion of these substances (solids and liquids) is rather small, with materials like pyrex glass and invar (a special iron-nickel alloy) having particularly low values of α_V. From this Table we find that the value of α_v for alcohol (ethyl) is more than mercury and expands more than mercury for the same rise in temperature.

Table 11.2 **Values of coefficient of volume expansion for some substances**

Materials	α_v (K^{-1})
Aluminium	7×10^{-5}
Brass	6×10^{-5}
Iron	3.55×10^{-5}
Paraffin	58.8×10^{-5}
Glass (ordinary)	2.5×10^{-5}
Glass (pyrex)	1×10^{-5}
Hard rubber	2.4×10^{-4}
Invar	2×10^{-6}
Mercurry	18.2×10^{-5}
Water	20.7×10^{-5}
Alcohol (ethyl)	110×10^{-5}

Water exhibits an anomalous behavour; it contracts on heating between 0 °C and 4 °C. The volume of a given amount of water decreases as it is cooled from room temperature, until its temperature reaches 4 °C, [Fig. 11.7(a)]. Below 4 °C, the volume increases, and therefore the density decreases [Fig. 11.7(b)].

This means that water has a maximum density at 4 °C. This property has an important environmental effect: Bodies of water, such as lakes and ponds, freeze at the top first. As a lake cools toward 4 °C, water near the surface loses energy to the atmosphere, becomes denser, and sinks; the warmer, less dense water near the bottom rises. However, once the colder water on top reaches temperature below 4 °C, it becomes less dense and remains at the surface, where it freezes. If water did not have this property, lakes and ponds would freeze from the bottom up, which would destroy much of their animal and plant life.

Gases at ordinary temperature expand more than solids and liquids. For liquids, the coefficient of volume expansion is relatively independent of the temperature. However, for gases it is dependent on temperature. For an ideal gas, the coefficient of volume expansion at constant pressure can be found from the ideal gas equation :

$PV = \mu RT$

At constant pressure

$P\Delta V = \mu R \, \Delta T$

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V} = \frac{\Delta T}{T}$$

$$\text{i.e. } \alpha_v = \frac{1}{T} \text{ for ideal gas} \tag{11.6}$$

At 0 °C, $\alpha_v = 3.7 \times 10^{-3}\ K^{-1}$, which is much larger than that for solids and liquids. Equation (11.6) shows the temperature dependence of α_v; it decreases with increasing temperature. For a gas at room temperature and constant pressure α_v is about $3300 \times 10^{-6} K^{-1}$, as

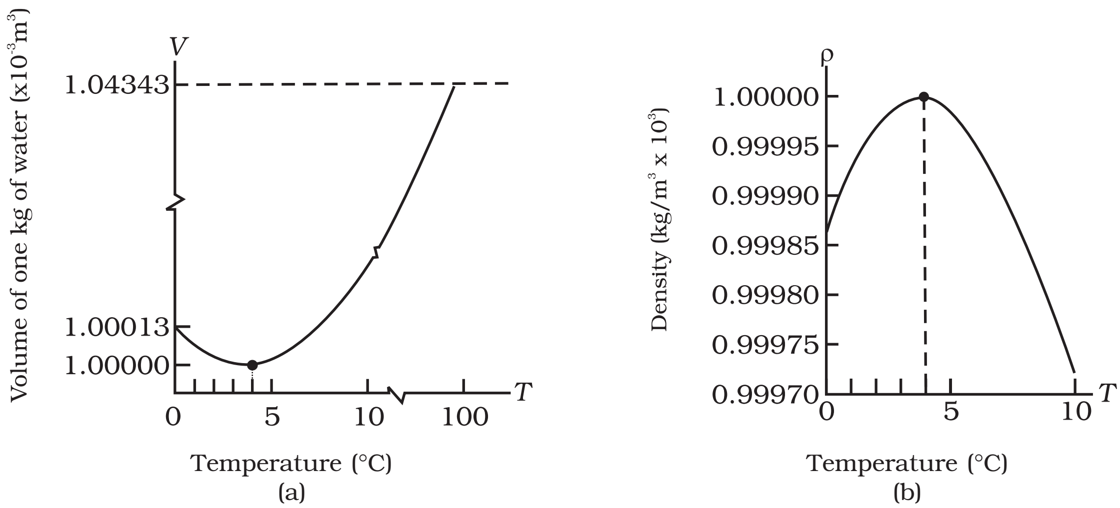


Fig. 11.7 *Thermal expansion of water.*

much as order(s) of magnitude larger than the coefficient of volume expansion of typical liquids.

There is a simple relation between the coefficient of volume expansion (α_v) and coefficient of linear expansion (α_l). Imagine a cube of length, l, that expands equally in all directions, when its temperature increases by ΔT. We have

$\Delta l = \alpha_l \, l \, \Delta T$

so, $\Delta V = (l+\Delta l)^3 - l^3 \; ; \; 3l^2 \, \Delta l$ (11.7)

In equation (11.7), terms in $(\Delta l)^2$ and $(\Delta l)^3$ have been neglected since Δl is small compared to l. So

$$\Delta V = \frac{3V\,\Delta l}{l} = 3V\alpha_l\;\Delta T \qquad (11.8)$$

which gives

$$\alpha_v = 3\alpha_l \qquad (11.9)$$

What happens by preventing the thermal expansion of a rod by fixing its ends rigidly? Clearly, the rod acquires a compressive strain due to the external forces provided by the rigid support at the ends. The corresponding stress set up in the rod is called **thermal stress**. For example, consider a steel rail of length 5 m and area of cross section 40 cm^2 that is prevented from expanding while the temperature rises by 10 °C. The coefficient of linear expansion of steel is $\alpha_{l(steel)} = 1.2 \times 10^{-5}$ K^{-1}. Thus, the compressive strain is $\frac{\Delta l}{l} = \alpha_{l(steel)} \Delta T = 1.2 \times 10^{-5} \times 10 = 1.2 \times 10^{-4}$.

Youngs modulus of steel is $Y_{(steel)} = 2 \times 10^{11}$ N m^{-2}. Therefore, the thermal stress developed is $\frac{\Delta F}{A} = Y_{steel}\left(\frac{\Delta l}{l}\right) = 2.4 \times 10^7$ N m^{-2}, which corresponds to an external force of

$$\Delta F = AY_{steel}\left(\frac{\Delta l}{l}\right) = 2.4 \times 10^7 \times 40 \times 10^{-4} \simeq 10^5 \text{N}.$$

If two such steel rails, fixed at their outer ends, are in contact at their inner ends, a force of this magnitude can easily bend the rails.

▶ ***Example 11.1*** Show that the coefficient of area expansions, $(\Delta A/A)/\Delta T$, of a rectangular sheet of the solid is twice its linear expansivity, α_l.

Answer

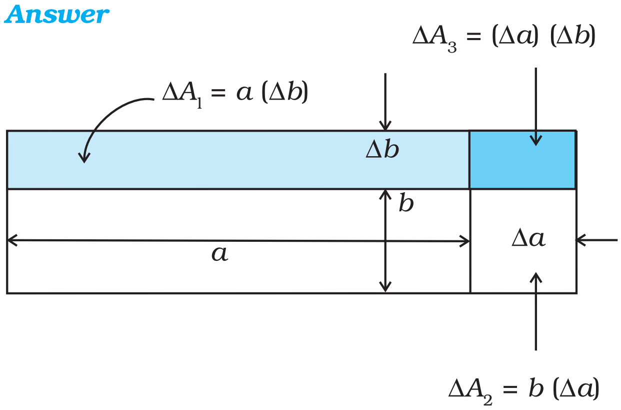


Fig. 11.8

Consider a rectangular sheet of the solid material of length a and breadth b (Fig. 11.8). When the temperature increases by ΔT, a increases by $\Delta a = \alpha_l a \Delta T$ and b increases by $\Delta b = \alpha_l b \, \Delta T$. From Fig. 11.8, the increase in area

$$\Delta A = \Delta A_1 + \Delta A_2 + \Delta A_3$$
$$\Delta A = a\,\Delta b + b\,\Delta a + (\Delta a)\ (\Delta b)$$
$$= a\,\alpha_l b\,\Delta T + b\,\alpha_l\,a\,\Delta T + (\alpha_l)^2\,ab\,(\Delta T)^2$$
$$= \alpha_l\,ab\,\Delta T\,(2 + \alpha_l\,\Delta T) = \alpha_l\,A\,\Delta T\,(2 + \alpha_l\,\Delta T)$$

Since $\alpha_l \; ; \; 10^{-5}$ K^{-1}, from Table 11.1, the product $\alpha_l \, \Delta T$ for fractional temperature is small in comparision with 2 and may be neglected. Hence,

$$\left(\frac{\Delta A}{A}\right)\frac{1}{\Delta T} \simeq 2\alpha_l$$ ◀

▶ ***Example 11.2*** A blacksmith fixes iron ring on the rim of the wooden wheel of a bullock cart. The diameter of the rim and the iron ring are 5.243 m and 5.231 m respectively at 27 °C. To what temperature should the ring be heated so as to fit the rim of the wheel?

Given, $T_1 = 27$ °C

$L_{T1} = 5.231$ m

$L_{T2} = 5.243$ m

So,

$L_{T2} = L_{T1}\ [1+\alpha_l\ (T_2-T_1)]$

5.243 m = 5.231 m [1 + 1.20×10^{-5} K^{-1} (T_2–27 °C)]

or T_2 = 218 °C. ◀

11.6 SPECIFIC HEAT CAPACITY

Take some water in a vessel and start heating it on a burner. Soon you will notice that bubbles begin to move upward. As the temperature is raised the motion of water particles increases till it becomes turbulent as water starts boiling. What are the factors on which the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of a substance depend? In order to answer this question in the first step, heat a given quantity of water to raise its temperature by, say 20 °C and note the time taken. Again take the same amount of water and raise its temperature by 40 °C using the same source of heat. Note the time taken by using a stopwatch. You will find it takes about twice the time and therefore, double the quantity of heat required raising twice the temperature of same amount of water.

In the second step, now suppose you take double the amount of water and heat it, using the same heating arrangement, to raise the temperature by 20 °C, you will find the time taken is again twice that required in the first step.

In the third step, in place of water, now heat the same quantity of some oil, say mustard oil, and raise the temperature again by 20 °C. Now note the time by the same stopwatch. You will find the time taken will be shorter and therefore, the quantity of heat required would be less than that required by the same amount of water for the same rise in temperature.

The above observations show that the quantity of heat required to warm a given substance depends on its mass, m, the change in temperature, ΔT and the nature of substance. The change in temperature of a substance, when a given quantity of heat is absorbed or rejected by it, is characterised by a quantity called the **heat capacity** of that substance. We define heat capacity, S of a substance as

$$S = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T} \qquad (11.10)$$

where ΔQ is the amount of heat supplied to the substance to change its temperature from T to $T + \Delta T$.

You have observed that if equal amount of heat is added to equal masses of different substances, the resulting temperature changes will not be the same. It implies that every substance has a unique value for the amount of heat absorbed or rejected to change the temperature of unit mass of it by one unit. This quantity is referred to as the **specific heat capacity** of the substance.

If ΔQ stands for the amount of heat absorbed or rejected by a substance of mass m when it undergoes a temperature change ΔT, then the specific heat capacity, of that substance is given by

$$s = \frac{S}{m} = \frac{1}{m}\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T} \qquad (11.11)$$

The **specific heat capacity** is the property of the substance which determines the change in the temperature of the substance (undergoing no phase change) when a given quantity of heat is absorbed (or rejected) by it. It is defined as the amount of heat per unit mass absorbed or rejected by the substance to change its temperature by one unit. It depends on the nature of the substance and its temperature. The SI unit of specific heat capacity is J kg^{-1} K^{-1}.

If the amount of substance is specified in terms of moles μ, instead of mass m in kg, we can define heat capacity per mole of the substance by

$$C = \frac{S}{\mu} = \frac{1}{\mu}\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T} \qquad (11.12)$$

where C is known as **molar specific heat capacity** of the substance. Like S, C also depends on the nature of the substance and its temperature. The SI unit of molar specific heat capacity is J mol^{-1} K^{-1}.

However, in connection with specific heat capacity of gases, additional conditions may be needed to define C. In this case, heat transfer can be achieved by keeping either pressure or volume constant. If the gas is held under constant pressure during the heat transfer, then it is called the **molar specific heat capacity at constant pressure** and is denoted by C_p. On the other hand, if the volume of the gas is maintained during the heat transfer, then the corresponding molar specific heat capacity is called **molar specific heat capacity at constant volume** and is denoted by C_v. For details see Chapter 12. Table 11.3 lists measured specific heat capacity of some substances at atmospheric pressure and ordinary temperature while Table 11.4 lists molar specific heat capacities of some gases. From Table 11.3 you can note that water

Table 11.3 Specific heat capacity of some substances at room temperature and atmospheric pressure

Substance	Specific heat capacity ($J\ kg^{-1}\ K^{-1}$)	Substance	Specific heat capacity ($J\ kg^{-1}\ K^{-1}$)
Aluminium	900.0	Ice	2060
Carbon	506.5	Glass	840
Copper	386.4	Iron	450
Lead	127.7	Kerosene	2118
Silver	236.1	Edible oil	1965
Tungesten	134.4	Mercury	140
Water	4186.0		

has the highest specific heat capacity compared to other substances. For this reason water is used as a coolant in automobile radiators as well as a heater in hot water bags. Owing to its high specific heat capacity, the water warms up much more slowly than the land during summer and consequently wind from the sea has a cooling effect. Now, you can tell why in desert areas, the earth surface warms up quickly during the day and cools quickly at night.

Table 11.4 Molar specific heat capacities of some gases

Gas	C_p ($J\ mol^{-1}K^{-1}$)	C_v($J\ mol^{-1}K^{-1}$)
He	20.8	12.5
H_2	28.8	20.4
N_2	29.1	20.8
O_2	29.4	21.1
CO_2	37.0	28.5

11.7 CALORIMETRY

A system is said to be isolated if no exchange or transfer of heat occurs between the system and its surroundings. When different parts of an isolated system are at different temperature, a quantity of heat transfers from the part at higher temperature to the part at lower temperature. The heat lost by the part at higher temperature is equal to the heat gained by the part at lower temperature.

Calorimetry means measurement of heat. When a body at higher temperature is brought in contact with another body at lower temperature, the heat lost by the hot body is equal to the heat gained by the colder body, provided no heat is allowed to escape to the surroundings. A device in which heat measurement can be made is called a **calorimeter**. It consists a metallic vessel and stirrer of the same material like copper or alumiunium. The vessel is kept inside a wooden jacket which contains heat insulating materials like glass wool etc. The outer jacket acts as a heat shield and reduces the heat loss from the inner vessel. There is an opening in the outer jacket through which a mercury thermometer can be inserted into the calorimeter. The following example provides a method by which the specific heat capacity of a given solid can be determinated by using the principle, heat gained is equal to the heat lost.

Example 11.3 A sphere of aluminium of 0.047 kg placed for sufficient time in a vessel containing boiling water, so that the sphere is at 100 °C. It is then immediately transfered to 0.14 kg copper calorimeter containing 0.25 kg of water at 20 °C. The temperature of water rises and attains a steady state at 23 °C. Calculate the specific heat capacity of aluminium.

Answer In solving this example we shall use the fact that at a steady state, heat given by an aluminium sphere will be equal to the heat absorbed by the water and calorimeter.

Mass of aluminium sphere (m_1) = 0.047 kg
Initial temp. of aluminium sphere = 100 °C
Final temp. = 23 °C
Change in temp (ΔT) = (100 °C - 23 °C) = 77 °C
Let specific heat capacity of aluminium be s_{Al}.

The amount of heat lost by the aluminium sphere = $m_1 s_{Al} \Delta T = 0.047 \text{kg} \times s_{Al} \times 77\ °C$

Mass of water (m_2) = 0.25 kg

Mass of calorimeter (m_3) = 0.14 kg

Initial temp. of water and calorimeter = 20 °C

Final temp. of the mixture = 23 °C

Change in temp. (ΔT_2) = 23 °C – 20 °C = 3 °C

Specific heat capacity of water (s_w)

$= 4.18 \times 10^3$ J kg^{-1} K^{-1}

Specific heat capacity of copper calorimeter

$= 0.386 \times 10^3$ J kg^{-1} K^{-1}

The amount of heat gained by water and calorimeter = $m_2\, s_w\, \Delta T_2 + m_3 s_{cu} \Delta T_2$

$= (m_2 s_w + m_3 s_{cu})\ (\Delta T_2)$

$= 0.25$ kg $\times 4.18 \times 10^3$ J kg^{-1} K^{-1} + 0.14 kg $\times$ 0.386×10^3 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) (23 °C – 20 °C)

In the steady state heat lost by the aluminium sphere = heat gained by water + heat gained by calorimeter.

So, 0.047 kg $\times s_{Al} \times 77$ °C

$= (0.25$ kg $\times 4.18 \times 10^3$ J kg^{-1} K^{-1}+ 0.14 kg $\times$ 0.386×10^3 J kg^{-1} K^{-1})(3 °C)

$s_{Al} = 0.911$ kJ kg^{-1} K^{-1} ◀

11.8 CHANGE OF STATE

Matter normally exists in three states: solid, liquid, and gas. A transition from one of these states to another is called a change of state. Two common changes of states are solid to liquid and liquid to gas (and vice versa). These changes can occur when the exchange of heat takes place between the substance and its surroundings. To study the change of state on heating or cooling, let us perform the following activity.

Take some cubes of ice in a beaker. Note the temperature of ice (0 °C). Start heating it slowly on a constant heat source. Note the temperature after every minute. Continuously stir the mixture of water and ice. Draw a graph between temperature and time (Fig. 11.9). You will observe no change in the temperature so long as there is ice in the beaker. In the above process, the temperature of the system does not change even though heat is being continuously supplied. The heat supplied is being utilised in changing the state from solid (ice) to liquid (water).

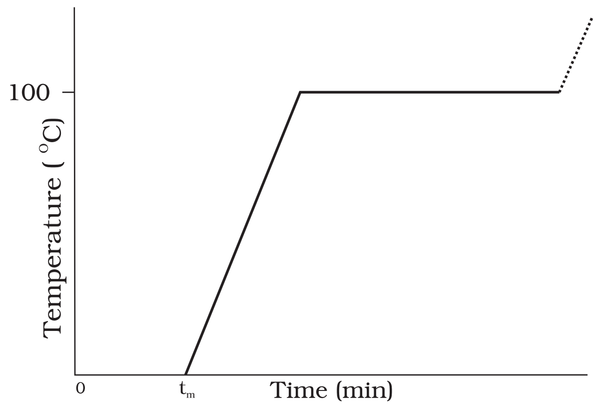


Fig. 11.9 *A plot of temperature versus time showing the changes in the state of ice on heating (not to scale).*

The change of state from solid to liquid is called **melting** and from liquid to solid is called **fusion**. It is observed that the temperature remains constant until the entire amount of the solid substance melts. That is, **both the solid and liquid states of the substance coexist in thermal equilibrium during the change of states from solid to liquid.** The temperature at which the solid and the liquid states of the substance in thermal equilibrium with each other is called its **melting point**. It is characteristic of the substance. It also depends on pressure. The melting point of a substance at standard atomspheric pressure is called its **normal melting point**. Let us do the following activity to understand the process of melting of ice.

Take a slab of ice. Take a metallic wire and fix two blocks, say 5 kg each, at its ends. Put the wire over the slab as shown in Fig. 11.10. You will observe that the wire passes through the ice slab. This happens due to the fact that just below the wire, ice melts at lower temperature due to increase in pressure. When the wire has passed, water above the wire freezes again. Thus the wire passes through the slab and the slab does not split. This phenomenon of refreezing is called **regelation**. Skating is possible on snow due to the formation of water below the skates. Water is formed due to the increase of pressure and it acts as a lubricant.

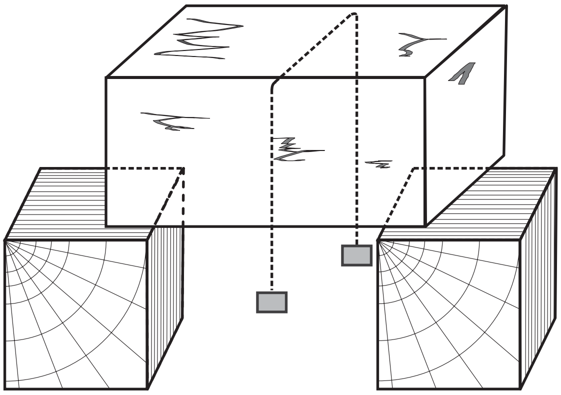


Fig. 11.10

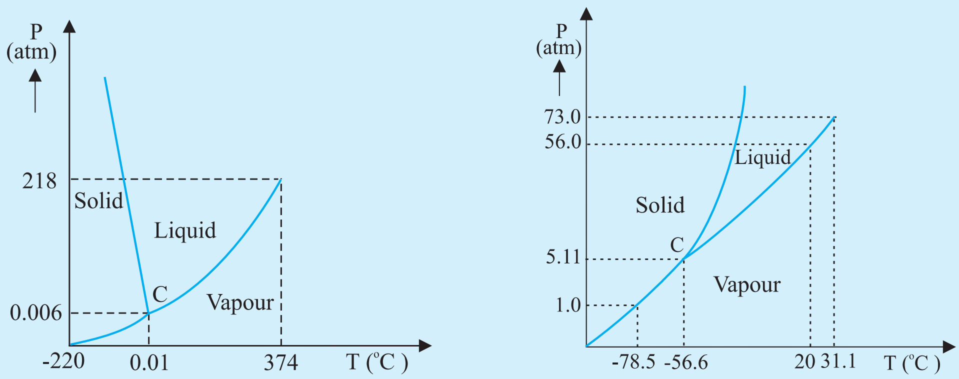
After the whole of ice gets converted into water and as we continue further heating, we shall see that temperature begins to rise. The temperature keeps on rising till it reaches nearly 100 °C when it again becomes steady. The heat supplied is now being utilised to change water from liquid state to vapour or gaseous state.

The change of state from liquid to vapour (or gas) is called **vaporisation**. It is observed that the temperature remains constant until the entire amount of the liquid is converted into vapour. That is, both the liquid and vapour states of the substance coexist in thermal equilibrium, during the change of state from liquid to vapour. The temperature at which the liquid and the vapour states of the substance coexist is called its **boiling point**. Let us do the following activity to understand the process of boiling of water.

Take a round-bottom flask, more than half filled with water. Keep it over a burner and fix a

Triple Point

The temperature of a substance remains constant during its change of state (phase change). A graph between the temperature *T* and the Pressure *P* of the substance is called a phase diagram or *P* – *T* diagram. The following figure shows the phase diagram of water and CO_2. Such a phase diagram divides the *P* – *T* plane into a solid-region, the vapour-region and the liquid-region. The regions are separated by the curves such as sublimation curve (BO), **fusion curve** (AO) and **vaporisation curve** (CO). The points on **sublimation curve** represent states in which solid and vapour phases coexist. The point on the sublimation curve BO represent states in which the solid and vapour phases co-exist. Points on the fusion curve AO represent states in which solid and liquid phase coexist. Points on the vapourisation curve CO represent states in which the liquid and vapour phases coexist. The temperature and pressure at which the fusion curve, the vaporisation curve and the sublimation curve meet and all the three phases of a substance coexist is called the **triple point** of the substance. For example the triple point of water is represented by the temperature 273.16 K and pressure 6.11×10^{-3} *Pa.*



(a) (b)

Pressure-temperature phase diagrams for (a) water and (b) CO_2 (not to the scale).

thermometer and steam outlet through the cork of the flask (Fig. 11.11). As water gets heated in the flask, note first that the air, which was dissolved in the water, will come out as small bubbles. Later, bubbles of steam will form at the bottom but as they rise to the cooler water near the top, they condense and disappear. Finally, as the temperature of the entire mass of the water reaches 100 °C, bubbles of steam reach the surface and boiling is said to occur. The steam in the flask may not be visible but as it comes out of the flask, it condenses as tiny droplets of water, giving a foggy appearance.

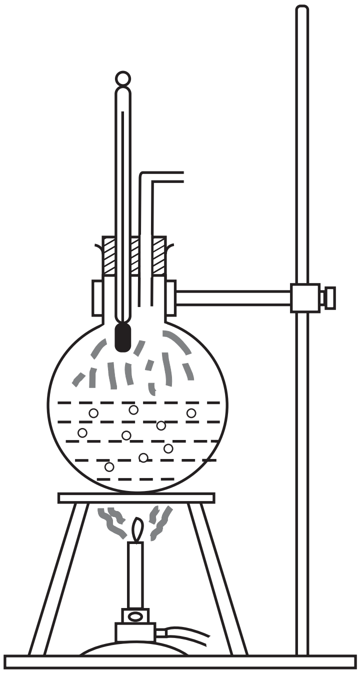


Fig. 11.11 *Boiling process.*

If now the steam outlet is closed for a few seconds to increase the pressure in the flask, you will notice that boiling stops. More heat would be required to raise the temperature (depending on the increase in pressure) before boiling begins again. Thus boiling point increases with increase in pressure.

Let us now remove the burner. Allow water to cool to about 80 °C. Remove the thermometer and steam outlet. Close the flask with the airtight cork. Keep the flask turned upside down on the stand. Pour ice-cold water on the flask. Water vapours in the flask condense reducing the pressure on the water surface inside the flask. Water begins to boil again, now at a lower temperature. Thus boiling point decreases with decrease in pressure.

This explains why cooking is difficult on hills. At high altitudes, atmospheric pressure is lower, reducing the boiling point of water as compared to that at sea level. On the other hand, boiling point is increased inside a pressure cooker by increasing the pressure. Hence cooking is faster. The boiling point of a substance at standard atmospheric pressure is called its **normal boiling point**.

However, all substances do not pass through the three states: solid-liquid-gas. There are certain substances which normally pass from the solid to the vapour state directly and vice versa. The change from solid state to vapour state without passing through the liquid state is called **sublimation**, and the substance is said to sublime. Dry ice (solid CO_2) sublimes, so also iodine. During the sublimation process both the solid and vapour states of a substance coexist in thermal equilibrium.

11.8.1 Latent Heat

In Section 11.8, we have learnt that certain amount of heat energy is transferred between a substance and its surroundings when it undergoes a change of state. The amount of heat per unit mass transferred during change of state of the substance is called latent heat of the substance for the process. For example, if heat is added to a given quantity of ice at –10 °C, the temperature of ice increases until it reaches its melting point (0 °C). At this temperature, the addition of more heat does not increase the temperature but causes the ice to melt, or changes its state. Once the entire ice melts, adding more heat will cause the temperature of the water to rise. A similar situation occurs during liquid gas change of state at the boiling point. Adding more heat to boiling water causes vaporisation, without increase in temperature.

Table 11.5 **Temperatures of the change of state and latent heats for various substances at 1 atm pressure**

Substance	Melting Point (°C)	L_f (10^5J kg^{-1})	Boiling Point (°C)	L_v (10^5J kg^{-1})
Ethyl alcohol	–114	1.0	78	8.5
Gold	1063	0.645	2660	15.8
Lead	328	0.25	1744	8.67
Mercury	–39	0.12	357	2.7
Nitrogen	–210	0.26	–196	2.0
Oxygen	–219	0.14	–183	2.1
Water	0	3.33	100	22.6

The heat required during a change of state depends upon the heat of transformation and the mass of the substance undergoing a change of state. Thus, if mass *m* of a substance undergoes a change from one state to the other, then the quantity of heat required is given by

$$Q = m\,L$$

$$\text{or} \quad L = Q/m \qquad (11.13)$$

where *L* is known as latent heat and is a characteristic of the substance. Its SI unit is J kg^{-1}. The value of *L* also depends on the pressure. Its value is usually quoted at standard atmospheric pressure. The latent heat for a solid-liquid state change is called the **latent heat of fusion** (L_f), and that for a liquid-gas state change is called the **latent heat of vaporisation** (L_v). These are often referred to as the heat of fusion and the heat of vaporisation. A plot of temperature versus heat energy for a quantity of water is shown in Fig. 11.12. The latent heats of some substances, their freezing and boiling points, are given in Table 11.5.

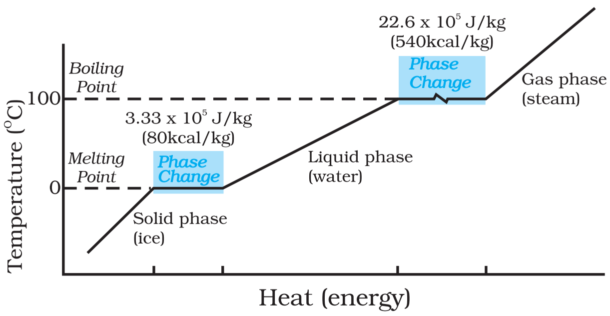


Fig. 11.12 *Temperature versus heat for water at 1 atm pressure (not to scale).*

Note that when heat is added (or removed) during a change of state, the temperature remains constant. Note in Fig. 11.12 that the slopes of the phase lines are not all the same, which indicates that specific heats of the various states are not equal. For water, the latent heat of fusion and vaporisation are $L_f = 3.33 \times 10^5$ J kg^{-1} and $L_v = 22.6 \times 10^5$ J kg^{-1} respectively. That is 3.33×10^5 J of heat are needed to melt 1 kg of ice at 0 °C, and 22.6×10^5 J of heat are needed to convert 1 kg of water to steam at 100 °C. So, steam at 100 °C carries 22.6×10^5 J kg^{-1} more heat than water at 100 °C. This is why burns from steam are usually more serious than those from boiling water.

Example 11.4 When 0.15 kg of ice of 0 °C mixed with 0.30 kg of water at 50 °C in a container, the resulting temperature is 6.7 °C. Calculate the heat of fusion of ice. (s_{water} = 4186 J kg^{-1} K^{-1})

Answer

Heat lost by water = $ms_w\,(\theta_f - \theta_i)_w$

= (0.30 kg) (4186 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) (50.0 °C – 6.7 °C)

= 54376.14 J

Heat required to melt ice = m_2L_f = (0.15 kg) L_f

Heat required to raise temperature of ice water to final temperature = $m_Is_w\,(\theta_f - \theta_i)_I$

= (0.15 kg) (4186 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) (6.7 °C – 0 °C)

= 4206.93 J

Heat lost = heat gained

54376.14 J = (0.15 kg) L_f + 4206.93 J

$L_f = 3.34 \times 10^5$ J kg^{-1}.

Example 11.5 Calculate the heat required to convert 3 kg of ice at –12 °C kept in a calorimeter to steam at 100 °C at atmospheric pressure. Given specific heat capacity of ice = 2100 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}, specific heat capacity of water = 4186 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}, latent heat of fusion of ice = 3.35×10^5 J kg^{-1} and latent heat of steam = 2.256×10^6 J kg^{-1}.

Answer We have

Mass of the ice, m = 3 kg

specific heat capacity of ice, s_{ice} = 2100 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}

specific heat capacity of water, s_{water} = 4186 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}

latent heat of fusion of ice, $L_{f\,ice}$ = 3.35×10^5 J kg^{-1}

latent heat of steam, L_{steam} = 2.256×10^6 J kg^{-1}

Now, Q = heat required to convert 3 kg of ice at –12 °C to steam at 100 °C,

Q_1 = heat required to convert ice at –12 °C to ice at 0 °C.

= $m\, s_{ice}\, \Delta T_1$ = (3 kg) (2100 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) [0–(–12)]°C = 75600 J

Q_2 = heat required to melt ice at 0 °C to water at 0 °C

= $m\, L_{f\,ice}$ = (3 kg) (3.35×10^5 J kg^{-1})

= 1005000 J

Q_3 = heat required to convert water at 0 °C to water at 100 °C.

= $m s_w\, \Delta T_2$ = (3kg) (4186J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) (100 °C)

= 1255800 J

Q_4 = heat required to convert water at 100 °C to steam at 100 °C.

= $m\, L_{steam}$ = (3 kg) (2.256×10^6 J kg^{-1})

= 6768000 J

So, Q = $Q_1 + Q_2 + Q_3 + Q_4$

= 75600J + 1005000 J + 1255800 J + 6768000 J

= 9.1×10^6 J

11.9 HEAT TRANSFER

We have seen that heat is energy transfer from one system to another or from one part of a system to another part, arising due to temperature difference. What are the different ways by which this energy transfer takes place? There are three distinct modes of heat transfer : conduction, convection and radiation (Fig. 11.13).

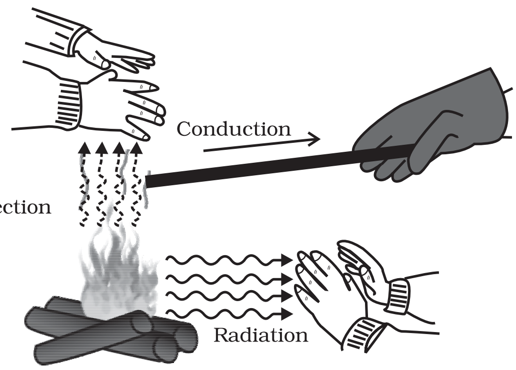


Fig. 11.13 Heating by conduction, convection and radiation.

11.9.1 Conduction

Conduction is the mechanism of transfer of heat between two adjacent parts of a body because of their temperature difference. Suppose one end of a metallic rod is put in a flame, the other end of the rod will soon be so hot that you cannot hold it by your bare hands. Here heat transfer takes place by conduction from the hot end of the rod through its different parts to the other end. Gases are poor thermal conductors while liquids have conductivities intermediate between solids and gases.

Heat conduction may be described quantitatively as the time rate of heat flow in a material for a given temperature difference. Consider a metallic bar of length L and uniform cross section A with its two ends maintained at different temperatures. This can be done, for example, by putting the ends in thermal contact with large reservoirs at temperatures, say, T_C and T_D respectively (Fig. 11.14). Let us assume the ideal condition that the sides of the bar are fully insulated so that no heat is exchanged between the sides and the surroundings.

After sometime, a steady state is reached; the temperature of the bar decreases uniformly with distance from T_C to T_D; (T_C>T_D). The reservoir at C supplies heat at a constant rate, which transfers through the bar and is given out at the same rate to the reservoir at D. It is found

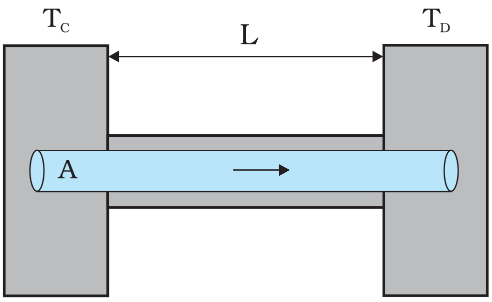


Fig. 11.14 *Steady state heat flow by conduction in a bar with its two ends maintained at temperatures T_C and T_D; ($T_C > T_D$).*

experimentally that in this steady state, the rate of flow of heat (or heat current) H is proportional to the temperature difference ($T_C - T_D$) and the area of cross section A and is inversely proportional to the length L :

$$H = KA \frac{T_C - T_D}{L} \tag{11.14}$$

The constant of proportionality K is called the **thermal conductivity** of the material. The greater the value of K for a material, the more rapidly will it conduct heat. The SI unit of K is J S^{-1} m^{-1} K^{-1} or W m^{-1} K^{-1}. The thermal conductivities of various substances are listed in Table 11.5. These values vary slightly with temperature, but can be considered to be constant over a normal temperature range.

Compare the relatively large thermal conductivities of the good thermal conductors, the metals, with the relatively small thermal conductivities of some good thermal insulators, such as wood and glass wool. You may have noticed that some cooking pots have copper coating on the bottom. Being a good conductor of heat, copper promotes the distribution of heat over the bottom of a pot for uniform cooking. Plastic foams, on the other hand, are good insulators, mainly because they contain pockets of air. Recall that gases are poor conductors, and note the low thermal conductivity of air in the Table 11.5. Heat retention and transfer are important in many other applications. Houses made of concrete roofs get very hot during summer days, because thermal conductivity of concrete (though much smaller than that of a metal) is still not small enough. Therefore, people usually prefer to give a layer of earth or foam insulation on the ceiling so that heat transfer is prohibited and keeps the room cooler. In some situations, heat transfer is critical. In a nuclear reactor, for example, elaborate heat transfer systems need to be installed so that the enormous energy produced by nuclear fission in the core transits out sufficiently fast, thus preventing the core from overheating.

Table 11.6 **Thermal conductivities of some materials**

Materials	Thermal conductivity ($J\ s^{-1}\ m^{-1}\ K^{-1}$)
Metals	
Silver	406
Copper	385
Aluminium	205
Brass	109
Steel	50.2
Lead	34.7
Mercury	8.3
Non-metals	
Insulating brick	0.15
Concrete	0.8
Body fat	0.20
Felt	0.04
Glass	0.8
Ice	1.6
Glass wool	0.04
Wood	0.12
Water	0.8
Gases	
Air	0.024
Argon	0.016
Hydrogen	0.14

Example 11.6 What is the temperature of the steel-copper junction in the steady state of the system shown in Fig. 11.15. Length of the steel rod = 15.0 cm, length of the copper rod = 10.0 cm, temperature of the furnace = 300 °C, temperature of the other end = 0 °C. The area of cross section of the steel rod is twice that of the copper rod. (Thermal conductivity of steel = 50.2 J s^{-1} $m^{-1}K^{-1}$; and of copper = 385 J $s^{-1}m^{-1}K^{-1}$).

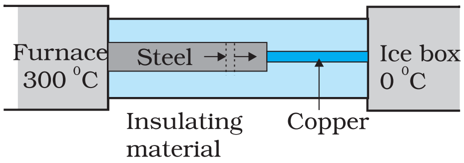


Fig. 11.15

Answer The insulating material around the rods reduces heat loss from the sides of the rods. Therefore, heat flows only along the length of the rods. Consider any cross section of the rod. In the steady state, heat flowing into the element must equal the heat flowing out of it; otherwise there would be a net gain or loss of heat by the element and its temperature would not be steady. Thus in the steady state, rate of heat flowing across a cross section of the rod is the same at every point along the length of the combined steel-copper rod. Let T be the temperature of the steel-copper junction in the steady state. Then,

$$\frac{K_1\ A_1\ \ 300\quad T}{L_1} = \frac{K_2\ A_2\ \ T-0}{L_2}$$

where 1 and 2 refer to the steel and copper rod respectively. For $A_1 = 2\ A_2$, $L_1 = 15.0$ cm, $L_2 = 10.0$ cm, $K_1 = 50.2$ J s^{-1} m^{-1} K^{-1}, $K_2 = 385$ J s^{-1} m^{-1} K^{-1}, we have

$$\frac{50.2 \times 2\,(300 - T)}{15} = \frac{385T}{10}$$

which gives $T = 44.4$ °C

Example 11.7 An iron bar ($L_1 = 0.1$ m, $A_1 = 0.02$ m^2, $K_1 = 79$ W m^{-1} K^{-1}) and a brass bar ($L_2 = 0.1$ m, $A_2 = 0.02$ m^2, $K_2 = 109$ W m^{-1}K^{-1}) are soldered end to end as shown in Fig. 11.16. The free ends of the iron bar and brass bar are maintained at 373 K and 273 K respectively. Obtain expressions for and hence compute (i) the temperature of the junction of the two bars, (ii) the equivalent thermal conductivity of the compound bar, and (iii) the heat current through the compound bar.

Answer

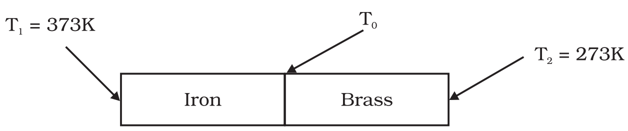


Fig 11.16

Given, $L_1 = L_2 = L = 0.1$ m, $A_1 = A_2 = A = 0.02$ m^2 $K_1 = 79$ W m^{-1} K^{-1}, $K_2 = 109$ W m^{-1} K^{-1}, $T_1 = 373$ K, and $T_2 = 273$ K.

Under steady state condition, the heat current (H_1) through iron bar is equal to the heat current (H_2) through brass bar.

So, $H = H_1 = H_2$

$$= \frac{K_1 A_1\ \ T_1 - T_0}{L_1} \quad \frac{K_2 A_2 (T_0 - T_2)}{L_2}$$

For $A_1 = A_2 = A$ and $L_1 = L_2 = L$, this equation leads to

$K_1\ (T_1 - T_0) = K_2\ (T_0 - T_2)$

Thus the junction temperature T_0 of the two bars is

$$T_0 = \frac{K_1 T_1 \quad K_2 T_2}{K_1 \quad K_2}$$

Using this equation, the heat current H through either bar is

$$H = \frac{K_1 A\ \ T_1 - T_0}{L} \quad \frac{K_2 A (T_0 - T_2)}{L}$$

$$\frac{K_1 K_2}{K_1 \quad K_2} \quad \frac{A\ \ T_1 - T_0}{L} \qquad \frac{A\ \ T_1 - T_2}{L\ \ \frac{1}{K_1} \quad \frac{1}{K_2}}$$

Using these equations, the heat current H' through the compound bar of length $L_1 + L_2 = 2L$ and the equivalent thermal conductivity K', of the compound bar are given by

$$H \quad \frac{K \quad A \quad T_1 - T_2}{2\ L} \quad H$$

$$K \quad \frac{2\ K_1\ K_2}{K_1 \quad K_2}$$

(i) $$T_0 \quad \frac{K_1 T_1 \quad K_2 T_2}{K_1 \quad K_2}$$

$$\frac{79\,\mathrm{W\,m^{-1}K^{-1}} \quad 373\,\mathrm{K} \qquad 109\,\mathrm{W\,m^{-1}K^{-1}} \quad 273\,\mathrm{K}}{79\,\mathrm{W\,m^{-1}K^{-1}} \quad 109\ \mathrm{W\,m^{-1}K^{-1}}}$$

$= 315$ K

(ii) $$K = \frac{2K_1\ K_2}{K_1 \quad K_2}$$

$$= \frac{2 \times (79\ \mathrm{W\,m^{-1}\,K^{-1}}) \times (109\ \mathrm{W\,m^{-1}\,K^{-1}})}{79\ \mathrm{W\,m^{-1}\,K^{-1}} + 109\ \mathrm{W\,m^{-1}\,K^{-1}}}$$

$= 91.6$ W m^{-1} K^{-1}

(iii) $H \quad H \quad \dfrac{K \quad A \quad T_1 - T_2}{2\ L}$

$$\frac{91.6\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-1}\ K^{-1}} \times 0.02\ \mathrm{m}^2 \quad \times \quad 373\,\mathrm{K}-273\,\mathrm{K}}{2 \times\ 0.1\ \mathrm{m}}$$

= 916.1 W

11.9.2 Convection

Convection is a mode of heat transfer by actual motion of matter. It is possible only in fluids. Convection can be natural or forced. In natural convection, gravity plays an important part. When a fluid is heated from below, the hot part expands and, therefore, becomes less dense. Because of buoyancy, it rises and the upper colder part replaces it. This again gets heated, rises up and is replaced by the colder part of the fluid. The process goes on. This mode of heat transfer is evidently different from conduction. Convection involves bulk transport of different parts of the fluid. In forced convection, material is forced to move by a pump or by some other physical means. The common examples of forced convection systems are forced-air heating systems in home, the human circulatory system, and the cooling system of an automobile engine. In the human body, the heart acts as the pump that circulates blood through different parts of the body, transferring heat by forced convection and maintaining it at a uniform temperature.

Natural convection is responsible for many familiar phenomena. During the day, the ground heats up more quickly than large bodies of water do. This occurs both because the water has a greater specific heat and because mixing currents disperse the absorbed heat throughout the great volume of water. The air in contact with the warm ground is heated by conduction. It expands, becoming less dense than the surrounding cooler air. As a result, the warm air rises (air currents) and other air moves (winds) to fill the space-creating a sea breeze near a large body of water. Cooler air descends, and a thermal convection cycle is set up, which transfers heat away from the land. At night, the ground loses its heat more quickly, and the water surface is warmer than the land. As a result, the cycle is reveresed (Fig. 11.17).

The other example of natural convection is the steady surface wind on the earth blowing in from north-east towards the equator, the so called trade wind. A resonable explanation is as follows : the equatorial and polar regions of the earth receive unequal solar heat. Air at the earth's surface near the equator is hot while the air in the upper atmosphere of the poles is cool. In the absence of any other factor, a convection current would be set up, with the air at the equatorial surface rising and moving out towards the poles, descending and streaming in towards the equator. The rotation of the earth, however, modifies this convection current. Because of this, air close to the equator has an eastward speed of 1600 km/h, while it is zero close to the poles. As a result, the air descends not at the poles but at 30° N (North) latitude and returns to the equator. This is called **trade wind**.

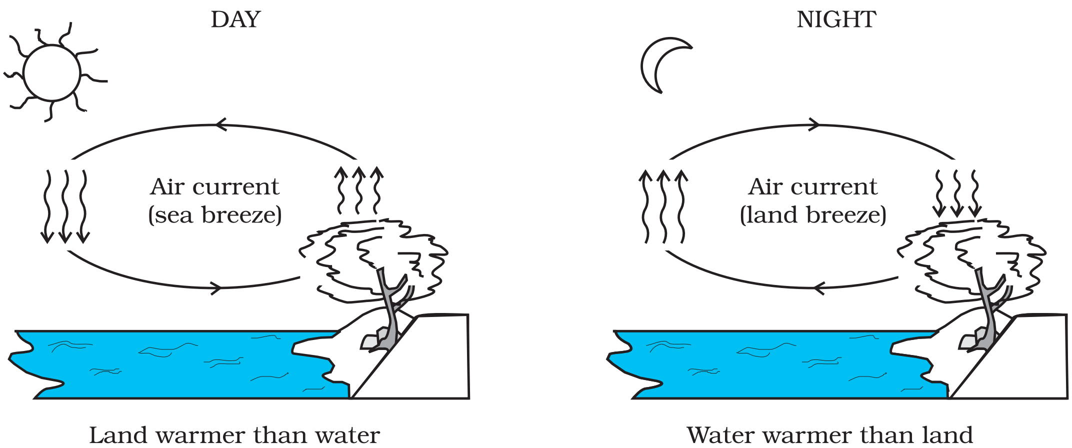


Fig. 11.17 *Convection cycles.*

11.9.3 Radiation

Conduction and convection require some material as a transport medium. These modes of heat transfer cannot operate between bodies separated by a distance in vacuum. But the earth does receive heat from the sun across a huge distance and we quickly feel the warmth of the fire nearby even though air conducts poorly and before convection can set in. The third mechanism for heat transfer needs no medium; it is called radiation and the energy so radiated by electromagnetic waves is called radiant energy. In an electromagnetic wave electric and magnetic fields oscillate in space and time. Like any wave, electromagnetic waves can have different wavelengths and can travel in vacuum with the same speed, namely the speed of light i.e., 3×10^8 m s^{-1}. You will learn these matters in more details later, but you now know why heat transfer by radiation does not need any medium and why it is so fast. This is how heat is transfered to the earth from the sun through empty space. All bodies emit radiant energy, whether they are solid, liquid or gases. The electromagnetic radiation emitted by a body by virtue of its temperature like the radiation by a red hot iron or light from a filament lamp is called thermal radiation.

When this thermal radiation falls on other bodies, it is partly reflected and partly absorbed. The amount of heat that a body can absorb by radiation depends on the colour of the body.

We find that black bodies absorb and emit radiant energy better than bodies of lighter colours. This fact finds many applications in our daily life. We wear white or light coloured clothes in summer so that they absorb the least heat from the sun. However, during winter, we use dark coloured clothes which absorb heat from the sun and keep our body warm. The bottoms of the utensils for cooking food are blackened so that they absorb maximum heat from the fire and give it to the vegetables to be cooked.

Similarly, a Dewar flask or thermos bottle is a device to minimise heat transfer between the contents of the bottle and outside. It consists of a double-walled glass vessel with the inner and outer walls coated with silver. Radiation from the inner wall is reflected back into the contents of the bottle. The outer wall similarly reflects back any incoming radiation. The space between the walls is evacuated to reduce conduction and convection losses and the flask is supported on an insulator like cork. The device is, therefore, useful for preventing hot contents (like milk) from getting cold, or alternatively to store cold contents (like ice).

11.10 NEWTON'S LAW OF COOLING

We all know that hot water or milk when left on a table begins to cool gradually. Ultimately it attains the temperature of the surroundings. To study how a given body can cool on exchanging heat with its surroundings, let us perform the following activity.

Take some water, say 300 ml, in a calorimeter with a stirrer and cover it with two holed lid. Fix a thermometer through a hole in the lid and make sure that the bulb of thermometer is immersed in the water. Note the reading of the thermometer. This reading T_1 is the temperature of the surroundings. Heat the water kept in the calorimeter till it attains a temperature, say, 40 °C above room temperature (i.e., temperature of the surroundings). Then stop heating the water by removing the heat source. Start the stop-watch and note the reading of the thermometer after fixed interval of time, say after every one minute of stirring gently with the stirrer. Continue to note the temperature (T_2) of water till it attains a temperature about 5 °C above that of the surroundings. Then plot a graph by taking each value of temperature $\Delta T = T_2 - T_1$ along y axis and the coresponding value of t along x-axis (Fig. 11.18).

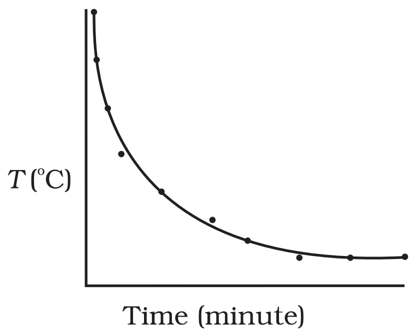


Fig. 11.18 Curve showing cooling of hot water with time.

From the graph you will infer how the cooling of hot water depends on the difference of its temperature from that of the surroundings. You will also notice that initially the rate of cooling is higher and decreases as the temperature of the body falls.

The above activity shows that a hot body loses heat to its surroundings in the form of heat radiation. The rate of loss of heat depends on the difference in temperature between the body and its surroundings. Newton was the first to study, in a systematic manner, the relation between the heat lost by a body in a given enclosure and its temperature.

According to Newton's law of cooling, the rate of loss of heat, $-\,dQ/dt$ of the body is directly proportional to the difference of temperature $\Delta T = (T_2 - T_1)$ of the body and the surroundings. The law holds good only for small difference of temperature. Also, the loss of heat by radiation depends upon the nature of the surface of the body and the area of the exposed surface. We can write

$$-\frac{dQ}{dt}=k(T_2 \quad T_1) \qquad (11.15)$$

where k is a positive constant depending upon the area and nature of the surface of the body. Suppose a body of mass m and specific heat capacity s is at temperature T_2. Let T_1 be the temperature of the surroundings. If the temperature falls by a small amount dT_2 in time dt, then the amount of heat lost is

$dQ = ms\, dT_2$

$\therefore$Rate of loss of heat is given by

$$\frac{dQ}{dt}=ms\frac{dT_2}{dt} \qquad (11.16)$$

From Eqs. (11.15) and (11.16) we have

$$-m\,s\frac{dT_2}{dt}=k(T_2-T_1)$$

$$\frac{dT_2}{T_2-T_1}=-\frac{k}{ms}dt=-K\,dt \qquad (11.17)$$

where $K = k/m\,s$

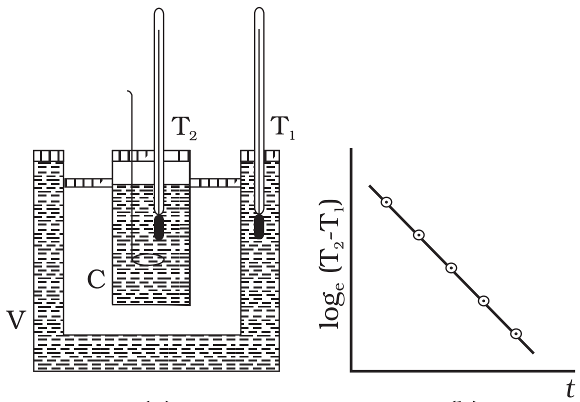
On integrating,

$$\log_e (T_2 - T_1) = -K\,t + c \qquad (11.18)$$

$$\text{or } T_2 = T_1 + C'\, e^{-Kt};\ \text{where } C' = e^c \qquad (11.19)$$

Equation (11.19) enables you to calculate the time of cooling of a body through a particular range of temperature.

For small temperature differences, the rate of cooling, due to conduction, convection, and radiation combined, is proportional to the difference in temperature. It is a valid approximation in the transfer of heat from a radiator to a room, the loss of heat through the wall of a room, or the cooling of a cup of tea on the table.



(a) (b)

Fig. 11.19 *Verification of Newton's Law of cooling.*

Newton's law of cooling can be verified with the help of the experimental set-up shown in Fig. 11.19(a). The set-up consists of a double walled vessel (V) containing water in between the two walls. A copper calorimeter (C) containing hot water is placed inside the double walled vessel. Two thermometers through the corks are used to note the temperatures T_2 of water in calorimeter and T_1 of hot water in between the double walls respectively. Temperature of hot water in the calorimeter is noted after equal intervals of time. A graph is plotted between $\log_e (T_2 - T_1)$ and time (t). The nature of the graph is observed to be a straight line having a negative slope as shown in Fig. 11.19(b). This is in support of Eq. (11.18).

Example 11.8 A pan filled with hot food cools from 94 °C to 86 °C in 2 minutes when the room temperature is at 20 °C. How long will it take to cool from 71 °C to 69 °C?

Answer The average temperature of 94 °C and 86 °C is 90 °C, which is 70 °C above the room temperature. Under these conditions the pan cools 8 °C in 2 minutes.

Using Eq. (11.17), we have

$$\frac{\text{Change in temperature}}{\text{Time}} \quad K \quad T$$

$$\frac{8\,°\mathrm{C}}{2\ \mathrm{min}} = K(70\,°\mathrm{C})$$

The average of 69 °C and 71 °C is 70 °C, which is 50 °C above room temperature. K is the same for this situation as for the original.

$$\frac{2\,°\mathrm{C}}{\mathrm{Time}} = K\,(50\,°\mathrm{C})$$

When we divide above two equations, we have

$$\frac{8\ \mathrm{C}/2\,\mathrm{min}}{2\ \mathrm{C}/\mathrm{time}} = \frac{K\ (70\ \mathrm{C})}{K\ (50\ \mathrm{C})}$$

Time = 0.7 min

= 42 s ◀

SUMMARY

1. Heat is a form of energy that flows between a body and its surrounding medium by virtue of temperature difference between them. The degree of hotness of the body is quantitatively represented by temperature.
2. A temperature-measuring device (thermometer) makes use of some measurable property (called thermometric property) that changes with temperature. Different thermometers lead to different temperature scales. To construct a temperature scale, two fixed points are chosen and assigned some arbitrary values of temperature. The two numbers fix the origin of the scale and the size of its unit.
3. The Celsius temperature (t_C) and the Farenheit temperare (t_F)are related by

$$t_F = (9/5)\ t_C + 32$$

4. The ideal gas equation connecting pressure (P), volume (V) and absolute temperature (T) is :

$$PV = \mu RT$$

where μ is the number of moles and R is the universal gas constant.

5. In the absolute temperature scale, the zero of the scale is the absolute zero of temperature – the temperature where every substance in nature has the least possible molecular activity. The Kelvin absolute temperature scale (T) has the same unit size as the Celsius scale (T_c), but differs in the origin :

$$T_C \;=\; T - 273.15$$

6. The coefficient of linear expansion (α_l) and volume expansion (α_v) are defined by the relations :

$$\frac{\Delta l}{l} = \alpha_l\ \Delta T$$

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V} = \alpha_V\ \Delta T$$

where Δl and ΔV denote the change in length l and volume V for a change of temperature ΔT. The relation between them is :

$$\alpha_v \;=\; 3\ \alpha_l$$

7. The specific heat capacity of a substance is defined by

$$s = \frac{1}{m}\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T}$$

where m is the mass of the substance and ΔQ is the heat required to change its temperature by ΔT. The molar specific heat capacity of a substance is defined by

$$C \quad \frac{1}{\ } \frac{Q}{T}$$

where μ is the number of moles of the substance.

8. The latent heat of fusion (L_f) is the heat per unit mass required to change a substance from solid into liquid at the same temperature and pressure. The latent heat of vaporisation (L_v) is the heat per unit mass required to change a substance from liquid to the vapour state without change in the temperature and pressure.
9. The three modes of heat transfer are conduction, convection and radiation.
10. In conduction, heat is transferred between neighbouring parts of a body through molecular collisions, without any flow of matter. For a bar of length L and uniform cross section A with its ends maintained at temperatures T_C and T_D, the rate of flow of heat H is :

$$H = K\ A \frac{T_C - T_D}{L}$$

where K is the thermal conductivity of the material of the bar.

11. Newton's Law of Cooling says that the rate of cooling of a body is proportional to the excess temperature of the body over the surroundings :

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = -k\,(T_2 - T_1)$$

Where T_1 is the temperature of the surrounding medium and T_2 is the temperature of the body.

Quantity	Symbol	Dimensions	Unit	Remark
Amount of substance	μ	[mol]	mol	
Celsius temperature	t_c	[K]	°C	
Kelvin absolute temperature	T	[K]	K	$t_c = T - 273.15$
Co-efficient of linear expansion	α_l	$[K^{-1}]$	K^{-1}	
Co-efficient of volume expansion	α_v	$[K^{-1}]$	K^{-1}	$\alpha_v = 3\,\alpha_l$
Heat supplied to a system	ΔQ	$[ML^2\,T^{-2}]$	J	Q is not a state variable
Specific heat	s	$[L^2\,T^{-2}\,K^{-1}]$	$J\ kg^{-1}\ K^{-1}$	
Thermal Conductivity	K	$[M\,LT^{-3}K^{-1}]$	$J\ s^{-1}K^{-1}$	$H = -KA\,\frac{dT}{dx}$

POINTS TO PONDER

1. The relation connecting Kelvin temperature (T) and the Celsius temperature t_c

$$T = t_c + 273.15$$

and the assignment $T = 273.16$ K for the triple point of water are exact relations (by choice). With this choice, the Celsius temperature of the melting point of water and boiling point of water (both at 1 atm pressure) are very close to, but not exactly equal to 0 °C and 100 °C respectively. In the original Celsius scale, these latter fixed points were exactly at 0 °C and 100 °C (by choice), but now the triple point of water is the preferred choice for the fixed point, because it has a unique temperature.

2. A liquid in equilibrium with vapour has the same pressure and temperature throughout the system; the two phases in equilibrium differ in their molar volume (i.e. density). This is true for a system with any number of phases in equilibrium.

3. Heat transfer always involves temperature difference between two systems or two parts of the same system. Any energy transfer that does not involve temperature difference in some way is not heat.

4. Convection involves flow of matter *within a fluid* due to unequal temperatures of its parts. A hot bar placed under a running tap loses heat by conduction between the surface of the bar and water and not by convection within water.

EXERCISES

11.1 The triple points of neon and carbon dioxide are 24.57 K and 216.55 K respectively. Express these temperatures on the Celsius and Fahrenheit scales.

11.2 Two absolute scales A and B have triple points of water defined to be 200 A and 350 B. What is the relation between T_A and T_B ?

11.3 The electrical resistance in ohms of a certain thermometer varies with temperature according to the approximate law :

$$R = R_o \, [1 + \alpha \, (T - T_o)]$$

The resistance is 101.6 Ω at the triple-point of water 273.16 K, and 165.5 Ω at the normal melting point of lead (600.5 K). What is the temperature when the resistance is 123.4 Ω ?

11.4 Answer the following :

(a) The triple-point of water is a standard fixed point in modern thermometry. Why ? What is wrong in taking the melting point of ice and the boiling point of water as standard fixed points (as was originally done in the Celsius scale) ?

(b) There were two fixed points in the original Celsius scale as mentioned above which were assigned the number 0 °C and 100 °C respectively. On the absolute scale, one of the fixed points is the triple-point of water, which on the Kelvin absolute scale is assigned the number 273.16 K. What is the other fixed point on this (Kelvin) scale ?

(c) The absolute temperature (Kelvin scale) T is related to the temperature t_c on the Celsius scale by

$$t_c = T - 273.15$$

Why do we have 273.15 in this relation, and not 273.16 ?

(d) What is the temperature of the triple-point of water on an absolute scale whose unit interval size is equal to that of the Fahrenheit scale ?

11.5 Two ideal gas thermometers *A* and *B* use oxygen and hydrogen respectively. The following observations are made :

Temperature	Pressure thermometer A	Pressure thermometer B
Triple-point of water	1.250×10^5 Pa	0.200×10^5 Pa
Normal melting point of sulphur	1.797×10^5 Pa	0.287×10^5 Pa

(a) What is the absolute temperature of normal melting point of sulphur as read by thermometers *A* and *B* ?

(b) What do you think is the reason behind the slight difference in answers of thermometers *A* and *B* ? (The thermometers are not faulty). What further procedure is needed in the experiment to reduce the discrepancy between the two readings ?

11.6 A steel tape 1m long is correctly calibrated for a temperature of 27.0 °C. The length of a steel rod measured by this tape is found to be 63.0 cm on a hot day when the temperature is 45.0 °C. What is the actual length of the steel rod on that day ? What is the length of the same steel rod on a day when the temperature is 27.0 °C ? Coefficient of linear expansion of steel = 1.20×10^{-5} K^{-1} .

11.7 A large steel wheel is to be fitted on to a shaft of the same material. At 27 °C, the outer diameter of the shaft is 8.70 cm and the diameter of the central hole in the wheel is 8.69 cm. The shaft is cooled using 'dry ice'. At what temperature of the shaft does the wheel slip on the shaft? Assume coefficient of linear expansion of the steel to be constant over the required temperature range :
$\alpha_{steel} = 1.20 \times 10^{-5}$ K^{-1}.

11.8 A hole is drilled in a copper sheet. The diameter of the hole is 4.24 cm at 27.0 °C. What is the change in the diameter of the hole when the sheet is heated to 227 °C? Coefficient of linear expansion of copper = 1.70×10^{-5} K^{-1}.

11.9 A brass wire 1.8 m long at 27 °C is held taut with little tension between two rigid supports. If the wire is cooled to a temperature of –39 °C, what is the tension developed in the wire, if its diameter is 2.0 mm ? Co-efficient of linear expansion of brass = 2.0×10^{-5} K^{-1}; Young's modulus of brass = 0.91×10^{11} Pa.

11.10 A brass rod of length 50 cm and diameter 3.0 mm is joined to a steel rod of the same length and diameter. What is the change in length of the combined rod at 250 °C, if the original lengths are at 40.0 °C? Is there a 'thermal stress' developed at the junction ? The ends of the rod are free to expand (Co-efficient of linear expansion of brass = 2.0×10^{-5} K^{-1}, steel = 1.2×10^{-5} K^{-1}).

11.11 The coefficient of volume expansion of glycerin is 49×10^{-5} K^{-1}. What is the fractional change in its density for a 30 °C rise in temperature ?

11.12 A 10 kW drilling machine is used to drill a bore in a small aluminium block of mass 8.0 kg. How much is the rise in temperature of the block in 2.5 minutes, assuming 50% of power is used up in heating the machine itself or lost to the surroundings. Specific heat of aluminium = 0.91 J g^{-1} K^{-1}.

11.13 A copper block of mass 2.5 kg is heated in a furnace to a temperature of 500 °C and then placed on a large ice block. What is the maximum amount of ice that can melt? (Specific heat of copper = 0.39 J g^{-1} K^{-1}; heat of fusion of water = 335 J g^{-1}).

11.14 In an experiment on the specific heat of a metal, a 0.20 kg block of the metal at 150 °C is dropped in a copper calorimeter (of water equivalent 0.025 kg) containing 150 cm^3 of water at 27 °C. The final temperature is 40 °C. Compute the specific heat of the metal. If heat losses to the surroundings are not negligible, is your answer greater or smaller than the actual value for specific heat of the metal ?

11.15 Given below are observations on molar specific heats at room temperature of some common gases.

Gas	**Molar specific heat (C_v) (cal mo1^{-1} K^{-1})**
Hydrogen	4.87
Nitrogen	4.97
Oxygen	5.02
Nitric oxide	4.99
Carbon monoxide	5.01
Chlorine	6.17

The measured molar specific heats of these gases are markedly different from those for monatomic gases. Typically, molar specific heat of a monatomic gas is 2.92 cal/mol K. Explain this difference. What can you infer from the somewhat larger (than the rest) value for chlorine ?

11.16 Answer the following questions based on the *P-T* phase diagram of carbon dioxide:

(a) At what temperature and pressure can the solid, liquid and vapour phases of CO_2 co-exist in equilibrium ?

(b) What is the effect of decrease of pressure on the fusion and boiling point of CO_2 ?

(c) What are the critical temperature and pressure for CO_2 ? What is their significance ?

(d) Is CO_2 solid, liquid or gas at (a) –70 °C under 1 atm, (b) –60 °C under 10 atm, (c) 15 °C under 56 atm ?

11.17 Answer the following questions based on the *P – T* phase diagram of CO_2:

(a) CO_2 at 1 atm pressure and temperature – 60 °C is compressed isothermally. Does it go through a liquid phase ?

(b) What happens when CO_2 at 4 atm pressure is cooled from room temperature at constant pressure ?

(c) Describe qualitatively the changes in a given mass of solid CO_2 at 10 atm pressure and temperature –65 °C as it is heated up to room temperature at constant pressure.

(d) CO_2 is heated to a temperature 70 °C and compressed isothermally. What changes in its properties do you expect to observe ?

11.18 A child running a temperature of 101°F is given an antipyrin (i.e. a medicine that lowers fever) which causes an increase in the rate of evaporation of sweat from his body. If the fever is brought down to 98 °F in 20 min, what is the average rate of extra evaporation caused, by the drug. Assume the evaporation mechanism to be the only way by which heat is lost. The mass of the child is 30 kg. The specific heat of human body is approximately the same as that of water, and latent heat of evaporation of water at that temperature is about 580 cal g^{-1}.

11.19 A 'thermacole' icebox is a cheap and efficient method for storing small quantities of cooked food in summer in particular. A cubical icebox of side 30 cm has a thickness of 5.0 cm. If 4.0 kg of ice is put in the box, estimate the amount of ice remaining after 6 h. The outside temperature is 45 °C, and co-efficient of thermal conductivity of thermacole is 0.01 J s^{-1} m^{-1} K^{-1}. [Heat of fusion of water = 335 × 10^3 J kg^{-1}]

11.20 A brass boiler has a base area of 0.15 m^2 and thickness 1.0 cm. It boils water at the rate of 6.0 kg/min when placed on a gas stove. Estimate the temperature of the part of the flame in contact with the boiler. Thermal conductivity of brass = 109 J s^{-1} m^{-1} K^{-1} ; Heat of vaporisation of water = 2256×10^3 J kg^{-1}.

11.21 Explain why :

(a) a body with large reflectivity is a poor emitter

(b) a brass tumbler feels much colder than a wooden tray on a chilly day

(c) an optical pyrometer (for measuring high temperatures) calibrated for an ideal black body radiation gives too low a value for the temperature of a red hot iron piece in the open, but gives a correct value for the temperature when the same piece is in the furnace

(d) the earth without its atmosphere would be inhospitably cold

(e) heating systems based on circulation of steam are more efficient in warming a building than those based on circulation of hot water

11.22 A body cools from 80 °C to 50 °C in 5 minutes. Calculate the time it takes to cool from 60 °C to 30 °C. The temperature of the surroundings is 20 °C.

CHAPTER TWELVE

THERMODYNAMICS

12.1 INTRODUCTION

In previous chapter we have studied thermal properties of matter. In this chapter we shall study laws that govern thermal energy. We shall study the processes where work is converted into heat and vice versa. In winter, when we rub our palms together, we feel warmer; here work done in rubbing produces the 'heat'. Conversely, in a steam engine, the 'heat' of the steam is used to do useful work in moving the pistons, which in turn rotate the wheels of the train.

In physics, we need to define the notions of heat, temperature, work, etc. more carefully. Historically, it took a long time to arrive at the proper concept of 'heat'. Before the modern picture, heat was regarded as a fine invisible fluid filling in the pores of a substance. On contact between a hot body and a cold body, the fluid (called caloric) flowed from the colder to the hotter body ! This is similar to what happens when a horizontal pipe connects two tanks containing water up to different heights. The flow continues until the levels of water in the two tanks are the same. Likewise, in the 'caloric' picture of heat, heat flows until the 'caloric levels' (i.e., the temperatures) equalise.

In time, the picture of heat as a fluid was discarded in favour of the modern concept of heat as a form of energy. An important experiment in this connection was due to Benjamin Thomson (also known as Count Rumford) in 1798. He observed that boring of a brass cannon generated a lot of heat, indeed enough to boil water. More significantly, the amount of heat produced depended on the work done (by the horses employed for turning the drill) but not on the sharpness of the drill. In the caloric picture, a sharper drill would scoop out more heat fluid from the pores; but this was not observed. A most natural explanation of the observations was that heat was a form of energy and the experiment demonstrated conversion of energy from one form to another–from work to heat.

Thermodynamics is the branch of physics that deals with the concepts of heat and temperature and the inter-conversion of heat and other forms of energy. Thermodynamics is a macroscopic science. It deals with bulk systems and does not go into the molecular constitution of matter. In fact, its concepts and laws were formulated in the nineteenth century before the molecular picture of matter was firmly established. Thermodynamic description involves relatively few macroscopic variables of the system, which are suggested by common sense and can be usually measured directly. A microscopic description of a gas, for example, would involve specifying the co-ordinates and velocities of the huge number of molecules constituting the gas. The description in kinetic theory of gases is not so detailed but it does involve molecular distribution of velocities. Thermodynamic description of a gas, on the other hand, avoids the molecular description altogether. Instead, the state of a gas in thermodynamics is specified by macroscopic variables such as pressure, volume, temperature, mass and composition that are felt by our sense perceptions and are measurable*.

The distinction between mechanics and thermodynamics is worth bearing in mind. In mechanics, our interest is in the motion of particles or bodies under the action of forces and torques. Thermodynamics is not concerned with the motion of the system as a whole. It is concerned with the internal macroscopic state of the body. When a bullet is fired from a gun, what changes is the mechanical state of the bullet (its kinetic energy, in particular), not its temperature. When the bullet pierces a wood and stops, the kinetic energy of the bullet gets converted into heat, changing the temperature of the bullet and the surrounding layers of wood. Temperature is related to the energy of the internal (disordered) motion of the bullet, not to the motion of the bullet as a whole.

12.2 THERMAL EQUILIBRIUM

Equilibrium in mechanics means that the net external force and torque on a system are zero. The term 'equilibrium' in thermodynamics appears in a different context : we say the state of a system is an equilibrium state if the macroscopic variables that characterise the system do not change in time. For example, a gas inside a closed rigid container, completely insulated from its surroundings, with fixed values of pressure, volume, temperature, mass and composition that do not change with time, is in a state of thermodynamic equilibrium.

In general, whether or not a system is in a state of equilibrium depends on the surroundings and the nature of the wall that separates the system from the surroundings. Consider two gases *A* and *B* occupying two different containers. We know experimentally that pressure and volume of a given mass of gas can be chosen to be its two independent variables. Let the pressure and volume of the gases be (P_A, V_A) and (P_B, V_B) respectively. Suppose first that the two systems are put in proximity but are separated by an **adiabatic wall** – an insulating wall (can be movable) that does not allow flow of energy (heat) from one to another. The systems are insulated from the rest of the surroundings also by similar adiabatic walls. The situation is shown schematically in Fig. 12.1 (a). In this case, it is found that any possible pair of values (P_A, V_A) will be in equilibrium with any possible pair of values (P_B, V_B). Next, suppose that the adiabatic wall is replaced by a **diathermic wall** – a conducting wall that allows energy flow (heat) from one to another. It is then found that the macroscopic variables of the systems *A* and *B* change spontaneously until both the systems attain equilibrium states. After that there is no change in their states. The situation is shown in Fig. 12.1(b). The pressure and volume variables of the two gases change to (P_B', V_B') and (P_A', V_A') such that the new states of *A* and *B* are in equilibrium with each other**. There is no more energy flow from one to another. We then say that the system *A* is in thermal equilibrium with the system *B*.

What characterises the situation of thermal equilibrium between two systems ? You can guess the answer from your experience. In thermal equilibrium, the temperatures of the two systems

* *Thermodynamics may also involve other variables that are not so obvious to our senses e.g. entropy, enthalpy, etc., and they are all macroscopic variables.*

** *Both the variables need not change. It depends on the constraints. For instance, if the gases are in containers of fixed volume, only the pressures of the gases would change to achieve thermal equilibrium.*

are equal. We shall see how does one arrive at the concept of temperature in thermodynamics? The Zeroth law of thermodynamics provides the clue.

12.3 ZEROTH LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS

Imagine two systems *A* and *B*, separated by an adiabatic wall, while each is in contact with a third system *C*, via a conducting wall [Fig. 12.2(a)]. The states of the systems (i.e., their macroscopic variables) will change until both *A* and *B* come to thermal equilibrium with *C*. After this is achieved, suppose that the adiabatic wall between *A* and *B* is replaced by a conducting wall and *C* is insulated from *A* and *B* by an adiabatic wall [Fig.12.2(b)]. It is found that the states of *A* and *B* change no further i.e. they are found **to be in thermal equilibrium with each other**. This observation forms the basis of the **Zeroth Law of Thermodynamics**, which states that **'two systems in thermal equilibrium with a third system separately are in thermal equilibrium with each other'**. R.H. Fowler formulated this law in 1931 long after the first and second Laws of thermodynamics were stated and so numbered.

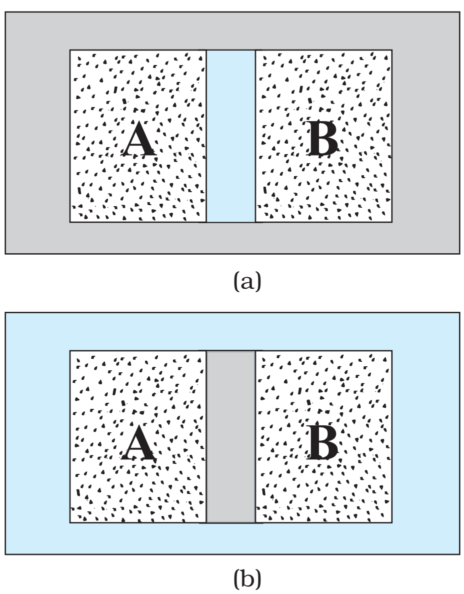


Fig. 12.1 *(a) Systems A and B (two gases) separated by an adiabatic wall – an insulating wall that does not allow flow of heat. (b) The same systems A and B separated by a diathermic wall – a conducting wall that allows heat to flow from one to another. In this case, thermal equilibrium is attained in due course.*

The Zeroth Law clearly suggests that when two systems *A* and *B*, are in thermal equilibrium, there must be a physical quantity that has the same value for both. This thermodynamic variable whose value is equal for two systems in thermal equilibrium is called temperature (T). Thus, if *A* and *B* are separately in equilibrium with *C*, $T_A = T_C$ and $T_B = T_C$. This implies that $T_A = T_B$ i.e. the systems *A* and *B* are also in thermal equilibrium.

We have arrived at the concept of temperature formally via the Zeroth Law. The next question is : how to assign numerical values to temperatures of different bodies ? In other words, how do we construct a scale of temperature ? Thermometry deals with this basic question to which we turn in the next section.

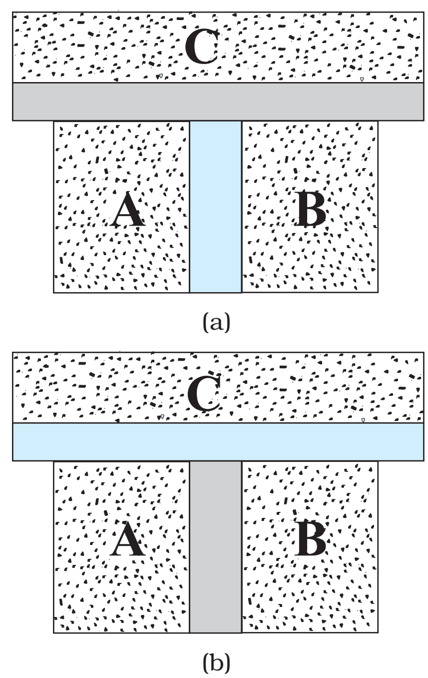


Fig. 12.2 *(a) Systems A and B are separated by an adiabatic wall, while each is in contact with a third system C via a conducting wall. (b) The adiabatic wall between A and B is replaced by a conducting wall, while C is insulated from A and B by an adiabatic wall.*

12.4 HEAT, INTERNAL ENERGY AND WORK

The Zeroth Law of Thermodynamics led us to the concept of temperature that agrees with our commonsense notion. Temperature is a marker of the 'hotness' of a body. It determines the direction of flow of heat when two bodies are placed in thermal contact. Heat flows from the body at a higher temperature to the one at lower temperature. The flow stops when the temperatures equalise; the two bodies are then in thermal equilibrium. We saw in some detail how to construct temperature scales to assign temperatures to different bodies. We now describe the concepts of heat and other relevant quantities like internal energy and work.

The concept of internal energy of a system is not difficult to understand. We know that every bulk system consists of a large number of molecules. Internal energy is simply the sum of the kinetic energies and potential energies of these molecules. We remarked earlier that in thermodynamics, the kinetic energy of the system, as a whole, is not relevant. Internal energy is thus, the sum of molecular kinetic and potential energies in the frame of reference relative to which the centre of mass of the system is at rest. Thus, it includes only the (disordered) energy associated with the random motion of molecules of the system. We denote the internal energy of a system by U.

Though we have invoked the molecular picture to understand the meaning of internal energy, as far as thermodynamics is concerned, U is simply a macroscopic variable of the system. The important thing about internal energy is that it depends only on the state of the system, not on how that state was achieved. Internal energy U of a system is an example of a thermodynamic 'state variable' – its value depends only on the given state of the system, not on history i.e. not on the 'path' taken to arrive at that state. Thus, the internal energy of a given mass of gas depends on its state described by specific values of pressure, volume and temperature. It does not depend on how this state of the gas came about. Pressure, volume, temperature, and internal energy are thermodynamic state variables of the system (gas) (see section 12.7). If we neglect the small intermolecular forces in a gas, the internal energy of a gas is just the sum of kinetic energies associated with various random motions of its molecules. We will see in the next chapter that in a gas this motion is not only translational (i.e. motion from one point to another in the volume of the container); it also includes rotational and vibrational motion of the molecules (Fig. 12.3).

What are the ways of changing internal energy of a system ? Consider again, for simplicity, the system to be a certain mass of gas contained in a cylinder with a movable piston as shown in Fig. 12.4. Experience shows there are two ways of changing the state of the gas (and hence its internal energy). One way is to put the cylinder in contact with a body at a higher temperature than that of the gas. The temperature difference will cause a flow of energy (heat) from the hotter body to the gas, thus increasing the internal energy of the gas. The other way is to push the piston down i.e. to do work on the system, which again results in increasing the internal energy of the gas. Of course, both these things could happen in the reverse direction. With surroundings at a lower temperature, heat would flow from the gas to the surroundings. Likewise, the gas could push the piston up and do work on the surroundings. In short, heat and work are two different modes of altering the state of a thermodynamic system and changing its internal energy.

The notion of heat should be carefully distinguished from the notion of internal energy. Heat is certainly energy, but it is the energy in transit. This is not just a play of words. The distinction is of basic significance. The state of a thermodynamic system is characterised by its internal energy, not heat. A statement like **'a gas in a given state has a certain amount of heat'** is as meaningless as the statement that **'a gas in a given state has a certain amount of work'**. In contrast, **'a gas in a given state has a certain amount of internal energy'** is a perfectly meaningful statement. Similarly, the statements **'a certain amount of heat is supplied to the system' or 'a certain amount of work was done by the system'** are perfectly meaningful.

To summarise, heat and work in thermodynamics are not state variables. They are modes of energy transfer to a system resulting in change in its internal energy, which, as already mentioned, is a state variable.

In ordinary language, we often confuse heat with internal energy. The distinction between them is sometimes ignored in elementary physics books. For proper understanding of thermodynamics, however, the distinction is crucial.

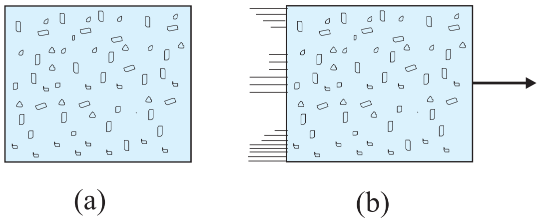


Fig. 12.3 *(a) Internal energy U of a gas is the sum of the kinetic and potential energies of its molecules when the box is at rest. Kinetic energy due to various types of motion (translational, rotational, vibrational) is to be included in U. (b) If the same box is moving as a whole with some velocity, the kinetic energy of the box is not to be included in U.*

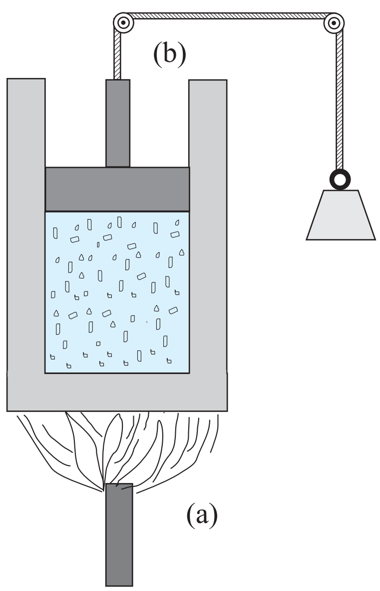


Fig. 12.4 *Heat and work are two distinct modes of energy transfer to a system that results in change in its internal energy. (a) Heat is energy transfer due to temperature difference between the system and the surroundings. (b) Work is energy transfer brought about by means (e.g. moving the piston by raising or lowering some weight connected to it) that do not involve such a temperature difference.*

12.5 FIRST LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS

We have seen that the internal energy U of a system can change through two modes of energy transfer : heat and work. Let

ΔQ = Heat supplied *to* the system *by* the surroundings

ΔW = Work done *by* the system *on* the surroundings

ΔU = Change in internal energy of the system

The general principle of conservation of energy then implies that

$$\Delta Q = \Delta U + \Delta W \qquad (12.1)$$

i.e. the energy (ΔQ) supplied to the system goes in partly to increase the internal energy of the system (ΔU) and the rest in work on the environment (ΔW). Equation (12.1) is known as the **First Law of Thermodynamics**. It is simply the general law of conservation of energy applied to any system in which the energy transfer from or to the surroundings is taken into account.

Let us put Eq. (12.1) in the alternative form

$$\Delta Q - \Delta W = \Delta U \qquad (12.2)$$

Now, the system may go from an initial state to the final state in a number of ways. For example, to change the state of a gas from (P_1, V_1) to (P_2, V_2), we can first change the volume of the gas from V_1 to V_2, keeping its pressure constant i.e. we can first go the state (P_1, V_2) and then change the pressure of the gas from P_1 to P_2, keeping volume constant, to take the gas to (P_2, V_2). Alternatively, we can first keep the volume constant and then keep the pressure constant. Since U is a state variable, ΔU depends only on the initial and final states and not on the path taken by the gas to go from one to the other. However, ΔQ and ΔW will, in general, depend on the path taken to go from the initial to final states. From the First Law of Thermodynamics, Eq. (12.2), it is clear that the combination $\Delta Q - \Delta W$, is however, path independent. This shows that if a system is taken through a process in which $\Delta U = 0$ (for example, isothermal expansion of an ideal gas, see section 12.8),

$$\Delta Q = \Delta W$$

i.e., heat supplied to the system is used up entirely by the system in doing work on the environment.

If the system is a gas in a cylinder with a movable piston, the gas in moving the piston does work. Since force is pressure times area, and area times displacement is volume, work done by the system against a constant pressure P is

$$\Delta W = P\,\Delta V$$

where ΔV is the change in volume of the gas. Thus, for this case, Eq. (12.1) gives

$$\Delta Q = \Delta U + P\,\Delta V \tag{12.3}$$

As an application of Eq. (12.3), consider the change in internal energy for 1 g of water when we go from its liquid to vapour phase. The measured latent heat of water is 2256 J/g. i.e., for 1 g of water ΔQ = 2256 J. At atmospheric pressure, 1 g of water has a volume 1 cm^3 in liquid phase and 1671 cm^3 in vapour phase.

Therefore,

$$\Delta W = P(V_g - V_l) = 1.013\times10^5 \times(1670)\times10^{-6} = 169.2\text{ J}$$

Equation (12.3) then gives

$$\Delta U = 2256 - 169.2 = 2086.8\text{ J}$$

We see that most of the heat goes to increase the internal energy of water in transition from the liquid to the vapour phase.

12.6 SPECIFIC HEAT CAPACITY

Suppose an amount of heat ΔQ supplied to a substance changes its temperature from T to $T + \Delta T$. We define heat capacity of a substance (see Chapter 11) to be

$$S = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T} \tag{12.4}$$

We expect ΔQ and, therefore, heat capacity S to be proportional to the mass of the substance. Further, it could also depend on the temperature, i.e., a different amount of heat may be needed for a unit rise in temperature at different temperatures. To define a constant characteristic of the substance and independent of its amount, we divide S by the mass of the substance m in kg :

$$s \quad \frac{S}{m} \quad \frac{1}{m}\frac{Q}{T} \tag{12.5}$$

s is known as the specific heat capacity of the substance. It depends on the nature of the substance and its temperature. The unit of specific heat capacity is J kg^{-1} K^{-1}.

If the amount of substance is specified in terms of moles μ (instead of mass m in kg), we can define heat capacity per mole of the substance by

$$C \quad \frac{S}{\ } \quad \frac{1}{\ }\frac{Q}{T} \tag{12.6}$$

C is known as molar specific heat capacity of the substance. Like s, C is independent of the amount of substance. C depends on the nature of the substance, its temperature and the conditions under which heat is supplied. The unit of C is J mol^{-1} K^{-1}. As we shall see later (in connection with specific heat capacity of gases), additional conditions may be needed to define C or s. The idea in defining C is that simple predictions can be made in regard to molar specific heat capacities.

Table 12.1 lists measured specific and molar heat capacities of solids at atmospheric pressure and ordinary room temperature.

We will see in Chapter 13 that predictions of specific heats of gases generally agree with experiment. We can use the same law of equipartition of energy that we use there to predict molar specific heat capacities of solids. Consider a solid of N atoms, each vibrating about its mean position. An oscillator in one dimension has average energy of $2 \times ½\ k_BT = k_BT$. In three dimensions, the average energy is $3\ k_BT$. For a mole of a solid, the total energy is

$$U = 3\ k_BT \times N_A = 3\ RT$$

Now, at constant pressure, $\Delta Q = \Delta U + P\,\Delta V \cong \Delta U$, since for a solid ΔV is negligible. Therefore,

$$C = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T} = \frac{\Delta U}{\Delta T} = 3R \tag{12.7}$$

Table 12.1 **Specific and molar heat capacities of some solids at room temperature and atmospheric pressure**

Substance	Specific^{-v} heat (J kg^{-1}K^{-1})	Molar specific Heat(J mol^{-1} K^{-1})
Aluminium	900.0	24.4
Carbon	506.5	6.1
Copper	386.4	24.5
Lead	127.7	26.5
Silver	236.1	25.5
Tungsten	134.4	24.9

As Table 12.1 shows, the experimentally measured values which generally agrees with predicted value 3R at ordinary temperatures. (Carbon is an exception.) The agreement is known to break down at low temperatures.

Specific heat capacity of water

The old unit of heat was calorie. One calorie was earlier defined to be the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1g of water by 1°C. With more precise measurements, it was found that the specific heat of water varies slightly with temperature. Figure 12.5 shows this variation in the temperature range 0 to 100 °C.

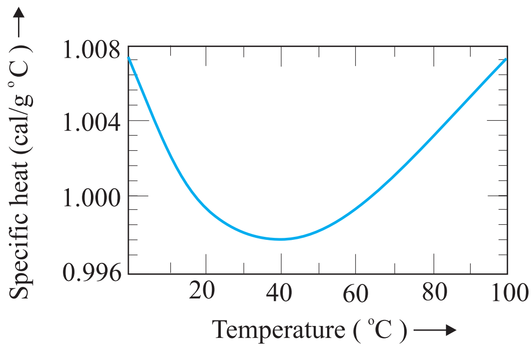


Fig. 12.5 *Variation of specific heat capacity of water with temperature.*

For a precise definition of calorie, it was, therefore, necessary to specify the unit temperature interval. One calorie is defined to be the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1g of water from 14.5 °C to 15.5 °C. Since heat is just a form of energy, it is preferable to use the unit joule, J. In SI units, the specific heat capacity of water is 4186 J kg^{-1} K^{-1} i.e. 4.186 J g^{-1} K^{-1}. The so called mechanical equivalent of heat defined as the amount of work needed to produce 1 cal of heat is in fact just a conversion factor between two different units of energy : calorie to joule. Since in SI units, we use the unit joule for heat, work or any other form of energy, the term mechanical equivalent is now superfluous and need not be used.

As already remarked, the specific heat capacity depends on the process or the conditions under which heat capacity transfer takes place. For gases, for example, we can define two specific heats : **specific heat capacity at constant volume and specific heat capacity at constant pressure**. For an ideal gas, we have a simple relation.

$$C_p - C_v = R \qquad (12.8)$$

where C_p and C_v are molar specific heat capacities of an ideal gas at constant pressure and volume respectively and R is the universal gas constant. To prove the relation, we begin with Eq. (12.3) for 1 mole of the gas :

$$\Delta Q = \Delta U + P\,\Delta V$$

If ΔQ is absorbed at constant volume, $\Delta V = 0$

$$C_v \quad \frac{Q}{T}_{v} \quad \frac{U}{T}_{v} \quad \frac{U}{T} \qquad (12.9)$$

where the subscript v is dropped in the last step, since U of an ideal gas depends only on temperature. (The subscript denotes the quantity kept fixed.) If, on the other hand, ΔQ is absorbed at constant pressure,

$$C_p \quad \frac{Q}{T}_{p} \quad \frac{U}{T}_{p} \quad P \; \frac{V}{T}_{p} \qquad (12.10)$$

The subscript p can be dropped from the first term since U of an ideal gas depends only on T. Now, for a mole of an ideal gas

$$PV = RT$$

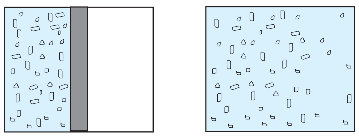
which gives

$$P \; \frac{V}{T}_{p} \quad R \qquad (12.11)$$

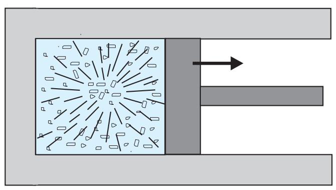
Equations (12.9) to (12.11) give the desired relation, Eq. (12.8).

12.7 THERMODYNAMIC STATE VARIABLES AND EQUATION OF STATE

Every **equilibrium state** of a thermodynamic system is completely described by specific values of some macroscopic variables, also called state variables. For example, an equilibrium state of a gas is completely specified by the values of pressure, volume, temperature, and mass (and composition if there is a mixture of gases). A thermodynamic system is not always in equilibrium. For example, a gas allowed to expand freely against vacuum is not an equilibrium state [Fig. 12.6(a)]. During the rapid expansion, pressure of the gas may not be uniform throughout. Similarly, a mixture of gases undergoing an explosive chemical reaction (e.g. a mixture of petrol vapour and air when ignited by a spark) is not an equilibrium state; again its temperature and pressure are not uniform [Fig. 12.6(b)]. Eventually, the gas attains a uniform temperature and pressure and comes to thermal and mechanical equilibrium with its surroundings.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 12.6 *(a) The partition in the box is suddenly removed leading to free expansion of the gas. (b) A mixture of gases undergoing an explosive chemical reaction. In both situations, the gas is not in equilibrium and cannot be described by state variables.*

In short, thermodynamic state variables describe equilibrium states of systems. The various state variables are not necessarily independent. The connection between the state variables is called the equation of state. For example, for an ideal gas, the equation of state is the ideal gas relation

$$P\,V = \mu\,R\,T$$

For a fixed amount of the gas i.e. given μ, there are thus, only two independent variables, say P and V or T and V. The pressure-volume curve for a fixed temperature is called an **isotherm**. Real gases may have more complicated equations of state.

The thermodynamic state variables are of two kinds: **extensive** and **intensive**. Extensive variables indicate the 'size' of the system. Intensive variables such as pressure and temperature do not. To decide which variable is extensive and which intensive, think of a relevant system in equilibrium, and imagine that it is divided into two equal parts. The variables that remain unchanged for each part are intensive. The variables whose values get halved in each part are extensive. It is easily seen, for example, that internal energy U, volume V, total mass M are extensive variables. Pressure P, temperature T, and density ρ are intensive variables. It is a good practice to check the consistency of thermodynamic equations using this classification of variables. For example, in the equation

$$\Delta Q = \Delta U + P\,\Delta V$$

quantities on both sides are extensive*. (The product of an intensive variable like P and an extensive quantity ΔV is extensive.)

12.8 THERMODYNAMIC PROCESSES

12.8.1 Quasi-static process

Consider a gas in thermal and mechanical equilibrium with its surroundings. The pressure of the gas in that case equals the external pressure and its temperature is the same as that of its surroundings. Suppose that the external pressure is suddenly reduced (say by lifting the weight on the movable piston in the container). The piston will accelerate outward. During the process, the gas passes through states that are not equilibrium states. The non-equilibrium states do not have well-defined pressure and temperature. In the same way, if a finite temperature difference exists between the gas and its surroundings, there will be a rapid exchange of heat during which the gas will pass through non-equilibrium states. In due course, the gas will settle to an equilibrium state with well-defined temperature and pressure equal to those of the surroundings. The free expansion of a gas in vacuum and a mixture of gases undergoing an explosive chemical reaction, mentioned in section 12.7 are also examples where the system goes through non-equilibrium states.

Non-equilibrium states of a system are difficult to deal with. It is, therefore, convenient to imagine an idealised process in which at every stage the system is an equilibrium state. Such a

* *As emphasised earlier, Q is not a state variable. However, ΔQ is clearly proportional to the total mass of system and hence is extensive.*

process is, in principle, infinitely slow-hence the name quasi-static (meaning nearly static). The system changes its variables (P, T, V) so slowly that it remains in thermal and mechanical equilibrium with its surroundings throughout. In a quasi-static process, at every stage, the difference in the pressure of the system and the external pressure is infinitesimally small. The same is true of the temperature difference between the system and its surroundings. To take a gas from the state (P, T) to another state (P', T') via a quasi-static process, we change the external pressure by a very small amount, allow the system to equalise its pressure with that of the surroundings and continue the process infinitely slowly until the system achieves the pressure P'. Similarly, to change the temperature, we introduce an infinitesimal temperature difference between the system and the surrounding reservoirs and by choosing reservoirs of progressively different temperatures T to T', the system achieves the temperature T'.

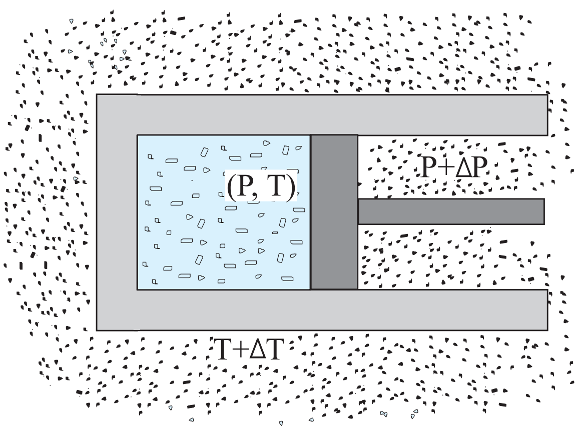


Fig. 12.7 *In a quasi-static process, the temperature of the surrounding reservoir and the external pressure differ only infinitesimally from the temperature and pressure of the system.*

A quasi-static process is obviously a hypothetical construct. In practice, processes that are sufficiently slow and do not involve accelerated motion of the piston, large temperature gradient, etc. are reasonably approximation to an ideal quasi-static process. We shall from now on deal with quasi-static processes only, except when stated otherwise.

A process in which the temperature of the system is kept fixed throughout is called an **isothermal process**. The expansion of a gas in a metallic cylinder placed in a large reservoir of fixed temperature is an example of an isothermal process. (Heat transferred from the reservoir to the system does not materially affect the temperature of the reservoir, because of its very large heat capacity.) In **isobaric processes** the pressure is constant while in **isochoric processes** the volume is constant. Finally, if the system is insulated from the surroundings and no heat flows between the system and the surroundings, the process is **adiabatic**. The definitions of these special processes are summarised in Table. 12.2

Table 12.2 **Some special thermodynamic processes**

Type of processes	Feature
Isothermal	Temperature constant
Isobaric	Pressure constant
Isochoric	Volume constant
Adiabatic	No heat flow between the system and the surroundings ($\Delta Q = 0$)

We now consider these processes in some detail :

Isothermal process

For an isothermal process (T fixed), the ideal gas equation gives

$$PV = \text{constant}$$

i.e., pressure of a given mass of gas varies inversely as its volume. This is nothing but Boyle's Law.

Suppose an ideal gas goes isothermally (at temperature T) from its initial state (P_1, V_1) to the final state (P_2, V_2). At any intermediate stage with pressure P and volume change from V to $V + \Delta V$ (ΔV small)

$$\Delta W = P \Delta V$$

Taking ($\Delta V \to 0$) and summing the quantity ΔW over the entire process,

$$W = \int_{V_1}^{V_2} P \, dV$$

$$= RT \int_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{dV}{V} = RT \ln \frac{V_2}{V_1} \tag{12.12}$$

where in the second step we have made use of the ideal gas equation $PV = \mu RT$ and taken the constants out of the integral. For an ideal gas, internal energy depends only on temperature. Thus, there is no change in the internal energy of an ideal gas in an isothermal process. The First Law of Thermodynamics then implies that heat supplied to the gas equals the work done by the gas : $Q = W$. Note from Eq. (12.12) that for $V_2 > V_1$, $W > 0$; and for $V_2 < V_1$, $W < 0$. That is, in an isothermal expansion, the gas absorbs heat and does work while in an isothermal compression, work is done on the gas by the environment and heat is released.

Adiabatic process

In an adiabatic process, the system is insulated from the surroundings and heat absorbed or released is zero. From Eq. (12.1), we see that work done by the gas results in decrease in its internal energy (and hence its temperature for an ideal gas). We quote without proof (the result that you will learn in higher courses) that for an adiabatic process of an ideal gas.

$$P V^{\gamma} = \text{const} \qquad (12.13)$$

where γ is the ratio of specific heats (ordinary or molar) at constant pressure and at constant volume.

$$\gamma = \frac{C_p}{C_v}$$

Thus if an ideal gas undergoes a change in its state adiabatically from (P_1, V_1) to (P_2, V_2) :

$$P_1 V_1^{\gamma} = P_2 V_2^{\gamma} \qquad (12.14)$$

Figure12.8 shows the *P-V* curves of an ideal gas for two adiabatic processes connecting two isotherms.

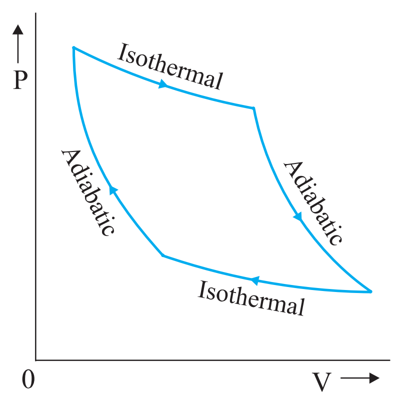


Fig. 12.8 *P-V curves for isothermal and adiabatic processes of an ideal gas.*

We can calculate, as before, the work done in an adiabatic change of an ideal gas from the state (P_1, V_1, T_1) to the state (P_2, V_2, T_2).

$$W = {}_{V_1}^{V_2} P\,dV$$

$$= \text{constant} {}_{V_1}^{V_2} \frac{dV}{V} \quad \text{constant} \left.\frac{V^{-\ +1}}{1}\right|_{V_1}^{V_2}$$

$$= \frac{\text{constant}}{(1-\gamma)} \times \left[\frac{1}{V_2^{\gamma-1}} - \frac{1}{V_1^{\gamma-1}}\right] \qquad (12.15)$$

From Eq. (12.34), the constant is $P_1V_1^{\gamma}$ or $P_2V_2^{\gamma}$

$$W = \frac{1}{1-} \quad \frac{P_2V_2}{V_2^{\ \ 1}} \quad \frac{P_1V_1}{V_1^{\ \ 1}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-} \quad P_2V_2 \quad P_1V_1 \quad \frac{R(T_1 - T_2)}{-} \qquad (12.16)$$

As expected, if work is done by the gas in an adiabatic process ($W > 0$), from Eq. (12.16), $T_2 < T_1$. On the other hand, if work is done on the gas ($W < 0$), we get $T_2 > T_1$ i.e., the temperature of the gas rises.

Isochoric process

In an isochoric process, V is constant. No work is done on or by the gas. From Eq. (12.1), the heat absorbed by the gas goes entirely to change its internal energy and its temperature. The change in temperature for a given amount of heat is determined by the specific heat of the gas at constant volume.

Isobaric process

In an isobaric process, P is fixed. Work done by the gas is

$$W = P(V_2 - V_1) = \mu R (T_2 - T_1) \qquad (12.17)$$

Since temperature changes, so does internal energy. The heat absorbed goes partly to increase internal energy and partly to do work. The change in temperature for a given amount of heat is determined by the specific heat of the gas at constant pressure.

Cyclic process

In a cyclic process, the system returns to its initial state. Since internal energy is a state variable, $\Delta U = 0$ for a cyclic process. From

Eq. (12.1), the total heat absorbed equals the work done by the system.

12.9 HEAT ENGINES

Heat engine is a device by which a system is made to undergo a cyclic process that results in conversion of heat to work.

(1) It consists of a **working substance**–the system. For example, a mixture of fuel vapour and air in a gasoline or diesel engine or steam in a steam engine are the working substances.

(2) The working substance goes through a cycle consisting of several processes. In some of these processes, it absorbs a total amount of heat Q_1 from an external reservoir at some high temperature T_1.

(3) In some other processes of the cycle, the working substance releases a total amount of heat Q_2 to an external reservoir at some lower temperature T_2.

(4) The work done (W) by the system in a cycle is transferred to the environment via some arrangement (e.g. the working substance may be in a cylinder with a moving piston that transfers mechanical energy to the wheels of a vehicle via a shaft).

The basic features of a heat engine are schematically represented in Fig. 12.9.

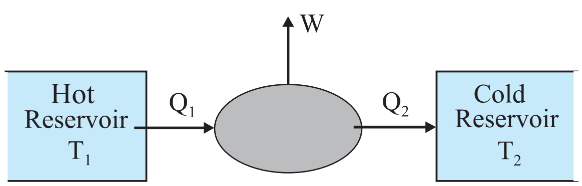


Fig. 12.9 *Schematic representation of a heat engine. The engine takes heat Q_1 from a hot reservoir at temperature T_1, releases heat Q_2 to a cold reservoir at temperature T_2 and delivers work W to the surroundings.*

The cycle is repeated again and again to get useful work for some purpose. The discipline of thermodynamics has its roots in the study of heat engines. A basic question relates to the efficiency of a heat engine. The efficiency (η) of a heat engine is defined by

$$\eta = \frac{W}{Q_1} \tag{12.18}$$

where Q_1 is the heat input i.e., the heat absorbed by the system in one complete cycle and W is the work done on the environment in a cycle. In a cycle, a certain amount of heat (Q_2) may also be rejected to the environment. Then, according to the First Law of Thermodynamics, over one complete cycle,

$$W = Q_1 - Q_2 \tag{12.19}$$

i.e.,

$$\eta = 1 - \frac{Q_2}{Q_1} \tag{12.20}$$

For $Q_2 = 0$, $\eta = 1$, i.e., the engine will have 100% efficiency in converting heat into work. Note that the First Law of Thermodynamics i.e., the energy conservation law does not rule out such an engine. But experience shows that such an ideal engine with $\eta = 1$ is never possible, even if we can eliminate various kinds of losses associated with actual heat engines. It turns out that there is a fundamental limit on the efficiency of a heat engine set by an independent principle of nature, called the Second Law of Thermodynamics (section 12.11).

The mechanism of conversion of heat into work varies for different heat engines. Basically, there are two ways : the system (say a gas or a mixture of gases) is heated by an external furnace, as in a steam engine; or it is heated internally by an exothermic chemical reaction as in an internal combustion engine. The various steps involved in a cycle also differ from one engine to another. For the purpose of general analysis, it is useful to conceptualise a heat engine as having the following essential ingredients.

12.10 REFRIGERATORS AND HEAT PUMPS

A refrigerator is the reverse of a heat engine. Here the working substance extracts heat Q_2 from the cold reservoir at temperature T_2, some external work W is done on it and heat Q_1 is released to the hot reservoir at temperature T_1 (Fig. 12.10).

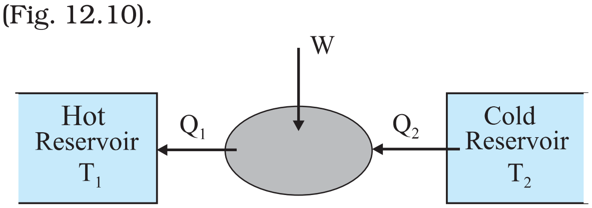
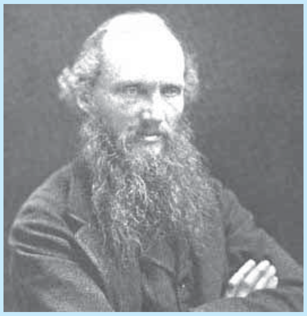


Fig. 12.10 *Schematic representation of a refrigerator or a heat pump, the reverse of a heat engine.*

Pioneers of Thermodynamics



Lord Kelvin (William Thomson) (1824-1907), born in Belfast, Ireland, is among the foremost British scientists of the nineteenth century. Thomson played a key role in the development of the law of conservation of energy suggested by the work of James Joule (1818-1889), Julius Mayer (1814-1878) and Hermann Helmholtz (1821-1894). He collaborated with Joule on the so-called Joule-Thomson effect : cooling of a gas when it expands into vacuum. He introduced the notion of the absolute zero of temperature and proposed the absolute temperature scale, now called the Kelvin scale in his honour. From the work of Sadi Carnot (1796-1832), Thomson arrived at a form of the Second Law of Thermodynamics. Thomson was a versatile physicist, with notable contributions to electromagnetic theory and hydrodynamics.

Rudolf Clausius (1822-1888), born in Poland, is generally regarded as the discoverer of the Second Law of Thermodynamics. Based on the work of Carnot and Thomson, Clausius arrived at the important notion of entropy that led him to a fundamental version of the Second Law of Thermodynamics that states that the entropy of an isolated system can never decrease. Clausius also worked on the kinetic theory of gases and obtained the first reliable estimates of molecular size, speed, mean free path, etc.

A heat pump is the same as a refrigerator. What term we use depends on the purpose of the device. If the purpose is to cool a portion of space, like the inside of a chamber, and higher temperature reservoir is surrounding, we call the device a refrigerator; if the idea is to pump heat into a portion of space (the room in a building when the outside environment is cold), the device is called a heat pump.

In a refrigerator the working substance (usually, in gaseous form) goes through the following steps : (a) sudden expansion of the gas from high to low pressure which cools it and converts it into a vapour-liquid mixture, (b) absorption by the cold fluid of heat from the region to be cooled converting it into vapour, (c) heating up of the vapour due to external work done on the system, and (d) release of heat by the vapour to the surroundings, bringing it to the initial state and completing the cycle.

The coefficient of performance (α) of a refrigerator is given by

$$\frac{Q_2}{W} \tag{12.21}$$

where Q_2 is the heat extracted from the cold reservoir and W is the work done on the system–the refrigerant. (α for heat pump is defined as Q_1/W) Note that while η by definition can never exceed 1, α can be greater than 1. By energy conservation, the heat released to the hot reservoir is

$$Q_1 = W + Q_2$$

i.e.,
$$\frac{Q_2}{Q_1 - Q_2} \tag{12.22}$$

In a heat engine, heat cannot be fully converted to work; likewise a refrigerator cannot work without some external work done on the system, i.e., the coefficient of performance in Eq. (12.21) cannot be infinite.

12.11 SECOND LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS

The First Law of Thermodynamics is the principle of conservation of energy. Common experience shows that there are many conceivable processes that are perfectly allowed by the First Law and yet are never observed. For example, nobody has ever seen a book lying on a table jumping to a height by itself. But such a thing would be possible if the principle of conservation of energy were the only restriction. The table could cool spontaneously, converting some of its internal energy into an equal amount of mechanical energy of the book, which would then hop to a height with potential energy equal to the mechanical energy it acquired. But this never happens. Clearly, some additional basic principle of nature forbids the above, even though it satisfies the energy conservation principle. This principle, which disallows many phenomena consistent with the First Law of Thermodynamics is known as the Second Law of Thermodynamics.

The Second Law of Thermodynamics gives a fundamental limitation to the efficiency of a heat engine and the co-efficient of performance of a refrigerator. In simple terms, it says that efficiency of a heat engine can never be unity. According to Eq. (12.20), this implies that heat released to the cold reservoir can never be made zero. For a refrigerator, the Second Law says that the co-efficient of performance can never be infinite. According to Eq. (12.21), this implies that external work (W) can never be zero. The following two statements, one due to Kelvin and Planck denying the possibility of a perfect heat engine, and another due to Clausius denying the possibility of a perfect refrigerator or heat pump, are a concise summary of these observations.

Second Law of Thermodynamics

Kelvin-Planck statement

No process is possible whose sole result is the absorption of heat from a reservoir and the complete conversion of the heat into work.

Clausius statement

No process is possible whose sole result is the transfer of heat from a colder object to a hotter object.

It can be proved that the two statements above are completely equivalent.

12.12 REVERSIBLE AND IRREVERSIBLE PROCESSES

Imagine some process in which a thermodynamic system goes from an initial state i to a final state f. During the process the system absorbs heat Q from the surroundings and performs work W on it. Can we reverse this process and bring both the system and surroundings to their initial states with no other effect anywhere? Experience suggests that for most processes in nature this is not possible. The spontaneous processes of nature are irreversible. Several examples can be cited. The base of a vessel on an oven is hotter than its other parts. When the vessel is removed, heat is transferred from the base to the other parts, bringing the vessel to a uniform temperature (which in due course cools to the temperature of the surroundings). The process cannot be reversed; a part of the vessel will not get cooler spontaneously and warm up the base. It will violate the Second Law of Thermodynamics, if it did. The free expansion of a gas is irreversible. The combustion reaction of a mixture of petrol and air ignited by a spark cannot be reversed. Cooking gas leaking from a gas cylinder in the kitchen diffuses to the entire room. The diffusion process will not spontaneously reverse and bring the gas back to the cylinder. The stirring of a liquid in thermal contact with a reservoir will convert the work done into heat, increasing the internal energy of the reservoir. The process cannot be reversed exactly; otherwise it would amount to conversion of heat entirely into work, violating the Second Law of Thermodynamics. Irreversibility is a rule rather an exception in nature.

Irreversibility arises mainly from two causes: one, many processes (like a free expansion, or an explosive chemical reaction) take the system to non-equilibrium states; two, most processes involve friction, viscosity and other dissipative effects (e.g., a moving body coming to a stop and losing its mechanical energy as heat to the floor and the body; a rotating blade in a liquid coming to a stop due to viscosity and losing its mechanical energy with corresponding gain in the internal energy of the liquid). Since dissipative effects are present everywhere and can be minimised but not fully eliminated, most processes that we deal with are irreversible.

A thermodynamic process (state $i \rightarrow$ state f) is reversible if the process can be turned back such that both the system and the surroundings return to their original states, with no other change anywhere else in the universe. From the preceding discussion, a reversible process is an idealised notion. A process is reversible only if it is quasi-static (system in equilibrium with the surroundings at every stage) and there are no dissipative effects. For example, a quasi-static isothermal expansion of an ideal gas in a cylinder fitted with a frictionless movable piston is a reversible process.

Why is reversibility such a basic concept in thermodynamics ? As we have seen, one of the concerns of thermodynamics is the efficiency with which heat can be converted into work. The Second Law of Thermodynamics rules out the possibility of a perfect heat engine with 100% efficiency. But what is the highest efficiency possible for a heat engine working between two reservoirs at temperatures T_1 and T_2? It turns out that a heat engine based on idealised reversible processes achieves the highest efficiency possible. All other engines involving irreversibility in any way (as would be the case for practical engines) have lower than this limiting efficiency.

12.13 CARNOT ENGINE

Suppose we have a hot reservoir at temperature T_1 and a cold reservoir at temperature T_2. What is the maximum efficiency possible for a heat engine operating between the two reservoirs and what cycle of processes should be adopted to achieve the maximum efficiency ? Sadi Carnot, a French engineer, first considered this question in 1824. Interestingly, Carnot arrived at the correct answer, even though the basic concepts of heat and thermodynamics had yet to be firmly established.

We expect the ideal engine operating between two temperatures to be a reversible engine. Irreversibility is associated with dissipative effects, as remarked in the preceding section, and lowers efficiency. A process is reversible if it is quasi-static and non-dissipative. We have seen that a process is not quasi-static if it involves finite temperature difference between the system and the reservoir. This implies that in a reversible heat engine operating between two temperatures, heat should be absorbed (from the hot reservoir) isothermally and released (to the cold reservoir) isothermally. We thus have identified two steps of the reversible heat engine : isothermal process at temperature T_1 absorbing heat Q_1 from the hot reservoir, and another isothermal process at temperature T_2 releasing heat Q_2 to the cold reservoir. To complete a cycle, we need to take the system from temperature T_1 to T_2 and then back from temperature T_2 to T_1. Which processes should we employ for this purpose that are reversible? A little reflection shows that we can only adopt reversible adiabatic processes for these purposes, which involve no heat flow from any reservoir. If we employ any other process that is not adiabatic, say an isochoric process, to take the system from one temperature to another, we shall need a series of reservoirs in the temperature range T_2 to T_1 to ensure that at each stage the process is quasi-static. (Remember again that for a process to be quasi-static and reversible, there should be no finite temperature difference between the system and the reservoir.) But we are considering a reversible engine that operates between only two temperatures. Thus adiabatic processes must bring about the temperature change in the system from T_1 to T_2 and T_2 to T_1 in this engine.

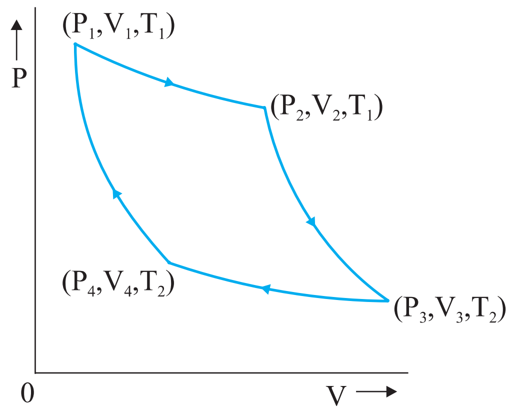


Fig. 12.11 *Carnot cycle for a heat engine with an ideal gas as the working substance.*

A reversible heat engine operating between two temperatures is called a Carnot engine. We have just argued that such an engine must have the following sequence of steps constituting one cycle, called the Carnot cycle, shown in Fig. 12.11. We have taken the working substance of the Carnot engine to be an ideal gas.

(a) *Step* 1 →2 Isothermal expansion of the gas taking its state from (P_1, V_1, T_1) to (P_2, V_2, T_1).

The heat absorbed by the gas (Q_1) from the reservoir at temperature T_1 is given by

Eq. (12.12). This is also the work done ($W_{1\rightarrow 2}$) by the gas on the environment.

$$W_{1\rightarrow 2} = Q_1 = \mu R\, T_1 \ \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right) \qquad (12.23)$$

(b) *Step* 2 $\rightarrow$3 Adiabatic expansion of the gas from (P_2, V_2, T_1) to (P_3, V_3, T_2) Work done by the gas, using Eq. (12.16), is

$$W_{2\quad 3} \quad \frac{R \ \ T_1 \quad T_2}{1} \qquad (12.24)$$

(c) *Step* 3 $\rightarrow$4 Isothermal compression of the gas from (P_3, V_3, T_2) to (P_4, V_4, T_2).

Heat released (Q_2) by the gas to the reservoir at temperature T_2 is given by Eq. (12.12). This is also the work done ($W_{3\rightarrow 4}$) on the gas by the environment.

$$W_{3\quad 4} \quad Q_2 \quad RT_2 \ln \frac{V_3}{V_4} \qquad (12.25)$$

(d) *Step* 4 $\rightarrow$1 Adiabatic compression of the gas from (P_4, V_4, T_2) to (P_1,V_1, T_1).

Work done on the gas, [using Eq.(12.16)], is

$$W_{4\quad 1} \quad R \ \frac{T_1 \quad T_2}{-1} \qquad (12.26)$$

From Eqs. (12.23) to (12.26) total work done by the gas in one complete cycle is

$$W = W_{1\rightarrow 2} + W_{2\rightarrow 3} - W_{3\rightarrow 4} - W_{4\rightarrow 1}$$

$$= \mu RT_1 \ \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right) - \mu RT_2 \ \ln\left(\frac{V_3}{V_4}\right) \qquad (12.27)$$

The efficiency η of the Carnot engine is

$$\frac{W}{Q_1} \quad 1 \quad \frac{Q_2}{Q_1}$$

$$1 \quad \frac{T_2}{T_1} \ \frac{\ln \frac{V_3}{V_4}}{\ln \frac{V_2}{V_1}} \qquad (12.28)$$

Now since step 2 $\rightarrow$3 is an adiabatic process,

$$T_1 V_2^{\ \ 1} \quad T_2 V_3^{\ \ 1}$$

i.e.
$$\frac{V_2}{V_3} = \frac{T_2}{T_1}^{1/(\quad 1)} \qquad (12.29)$$

Similarly, since step 4 $\rightarrow$1 is an adiabatic process

$$T_2 V_4^{\ \ 1} \quad T_1 V_1^{\ \ 1}$$

i.e.
$$\frac{V_1}{V_4} = \frac{T_2}{T_1}^{1/ \quad 1} \qquad (12.30)$$

From Eqs. (12.29) and (12.30),

$$\frac{V_3}{V_4} = \frac{V_2}{V_1} \qquad (12.31)$$

Using Eq. (12.31) in Eq. (12.28), we get

$$1 - \frac{T_2}{T_1} \quad \text{(Carnot engine)} \qquad (12.32)$$

We have already seen that a Carnot engine is a reversible engine. Indeed it is the only reversible engine possible that works between two reservoirs at different temperatures. Each step of the Carnot cycle given in Fig. 12.11 can be reversed. This will amount to taking heat Q_2 from the cold reservoir at T_2, doing work W on the system, and transferring heat Q_1 to the hot reservoir. This will be a reversible refrigerator.

We next establish the important result (sometimes called Carnot's theorem) that (a) working between two given temperatures T_1 and T_2 of the hot and cold reservoirs respectively, no engine can have efficiency more than that of the Carnot engine and (b) the efficiency of the Carnot engine is independent of the nature of the working substance.

To prove the result (a), imagine a reversible (Carnot) engine R and an irreversible engine I working between the same source (hot reservoir) and sink (cold reservoir). Let us couple the engines, I and R, in such a way so that I acts like a heat engine and R acts as a refrigerator. Let I absorb heat Q_1 from the source, deliver work W' and release the heat $Q_1 - W'$ to the sink. We arrange so that R returns the same heat Q_1 to the source, taking heat Q_2 from the sink and requiring work $W = Q_1 - Q_2$ to be done on it.

Now suppose $\eta_R < \eta_I$ i.e. if R were to act as an engine it would give less work output than that of I i.e. $W < W'$ for a given Q_1. With R acting like a refrigerator, this would mean $Q_2 = Q_1 - W > Q_1 - W'$. Thus on the whole, the coupled I-R system extracts heat $(Q_1 - W) - (Q_1 - W') = (W' - W)$ from the cold reservoir and delivers the same amount of work in one cycle, without any change in the source or anywhere else. This is clearly against the Kelvin-Planck statement of the Second Law of Thermodynamics. Hence the assertion $\eta_I > \eta_R$ is wrong. No engine can have efficiency greater than that of the Carnot engine. A similar argument can be constructed to show that a reversible engine with one particular substance cannot be more efficient than the one using another substance. The maximum efficiency of a Carnot engine given by Eq. (12.32) is independent of the nature of the system performing the Carnot cycle of operations. Thus we are justified in using an ideal gas as a system in the calculation of efficiency η of a Carnot engine. The ideal gas has a simple equation of state, which allows us to readily calculate η but the final result for η [Eq. (12.32)], is true for any Carnot engine.

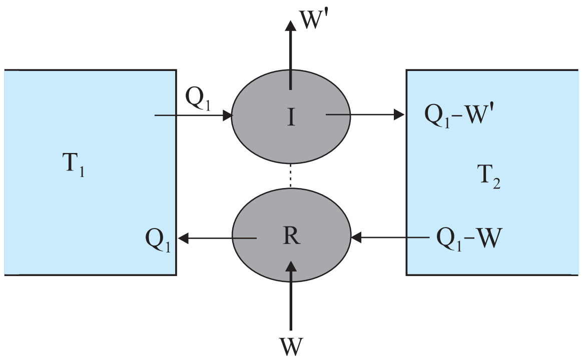


Fig. 12.12 *An irreversible engine (I) coupled to a reversible refrigerator (R). If W′ > W, this would amount to extraction of heat W′ – W from the sink and its full conversion to work, in contradiction with the Second Law of Thermodynamics.*

This final remark shows that in a Carnot cycle,

$$\frac{Q_1}{Q_2} = \frac{T_1}{T_2} \qquad (12.33)$$

is a universal relation independent of the nature of the system. Here Q_1 and Q_2 are respectively, the heat absorbed and released isothermally (from the hot and to the cold reservoirs) in a Carnot engine. Equation (12.33), can, therefore, be used as a relation to define a truly universal thermodynamic temperature scale that is independent of any particular properties of the system used in the Carnot cycle. Of course, for an ideal gas as a working substance, this universal temperature is the same as the ideal gas temperature introduced in section 12.11.

SUMMARY

1. The zeroth law of thermodynamics states that '*two systems in thermal equilibrium with a third system are in thermal equilibrium with each other*'. The Zeroth Law leads to the concept of temperature.
2. Internal energy of a system is the sum of kinetic energies and potential energies of the molecular constituents of the system. It does not include the over-all kinetic energy of the system. Heat and work are two modes of energy transfer to the system. Heat is the energy transfer arising due to temperature difference between the system and the surroundings. Work is energy transfer brought about by other means, such as moving the piston of a cylinder containing the gas, by raising or lowering some weight connected to it.
3. The first law of thermodynamics is the general law of conservation of energy applied to any system in which energy transfer from or to the surroundings (through heat and work) is taken into account. It states that

$$\Delta Q = \Delta U + \Delta W$$

where ΔQ is the heat supplied to the system, ΔW is the work done by the system and ΔU is the change in internal energy of the system.

4. The specific heat capacity of a substance is defined by

$$s = \frac{1}{m}\frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta T}$$

where m is the mass of the substance and ΔQ is the heat required to change its temperature by ΔT. The molar specific heat capacity of a substance is defined by

$$C \quad \frac{1}{\ } \frac{Q}{T}$$

where μ is the number of moles of the substance. For a solid, the law of equipartition of energy gives

$$C = 3\,R$$

which generally agrees with experiment at ordinary temperatures.

Calorie is the old unit of heat. 1 calorie is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 g of water from 14.5 °C to 15.5 °C. 1 cal = 4.186 J.

5. For an ideal gas, the molar specific heat capacities at constant pressure and volume satisfy the relation

$$C_p - C_v = R$$

where R is the universal gas constant.

6. Equilibrium states of a thermodynamic system are described by state variables. The value of a state variable depends only on the particular state, not on the path used to arrive at that state. Examples of state variables are pressure (P), volume (V), temperature (T), and mass (m). Heat and work are not state variables. An Equation of State (like the ideal gas equation $PV = \mu RT$) is a relation connecting different state variables.

7. A quasi-static process is an infinitely slow process such that the system remains in thermal and mechanical equilibrium with the surroundings throughout. In a quasi-static process, the pressure and temperature of the environment can differ from those of the system only infinitesimally.

8. In an isothermal expansion of an ideal gas from volume V_1 to V_2 at temperature T the heat absorbed (Q) equals the work done (W) by the gas, each given by

$$Q = W = \mu R T \ \ln\left(\frac{V_2}{V_1}\right)$$

9. In an adiabatic process of an ideal gas

$$PV^{\gamma} = \text{constant}$$

where
$$\frac{C_p}{C_v}$$

Work done by an ideal gas in an adiabatic change of state from (P_1, V_1, T_1) to (P_2, V_2, T_2) is

$$W \quad \frac{R\ \ T_1 \quad T_2}{-1}$$

10. Heat engine is a device in which a system undergoes a cyclic process resulting in conversion of heat into work. If Q_1 is the heat absorbed from the source, Q_2 is the heat released to the sink, and the work output in one cycle is W, the efficiency η of the engine is:

$$\frac{W}{Q_1} \quad 1 \quad \frac{Q_2}{Q_1}$$

11. In a refrigerator or a heat pump, the system extracts heat Q_2 from the cold reservoir and releases Q_1 amount of heat to the hot reservoir, with work W done on the system. The co-efficient of performance of a refrigerator is given by

$$\alpha = \frac{Q_2}{W} = \frac{Q_2}{Q_1 - Q_2}$$

12. The second law of thermodynamics disallows some processes consistent with the First Law of Thermodynamics. It states

Kelvin-Planck statement

No process is possible whose sole result is the absorption of heat from a reservoir and complete conversion of the heat into work.

Clausius statement

No process is possible whose sole result is the transfer of heat from a colder object to a hotter object.

Put simply, the Second Law implies that no heat engine can have efficiency η equal to 1 or no refrigerator can have co-efficient of performance α equal to infinity.

13. A process is reversible if it can be reversed such that both the system and the surroundings return to their original states, with no other change anywhere else in the universe. Spontaneous processes of nature are irreversible. The idealised reversible process is a quasi-static process with no dissipative factors such as friction, viscosity, etc.

14. Carnot engine is a reversible engine operating between two temperatures T_1 (source) and T_2 (sink). The Carnot cycle consists of two isothermal processes connected by two adiabatic processes. The efficiency of a Carnot engine is given by

$$\eta = 1 - \frac{T_2}{T_1} \qquad \text{(Carnot engine)}$$

No engine operating between two temperatures can have efficiency greater than that of the Carnot engine.

15. If $Q > 0$, heat is added to the system

If $Q < 0$, heat is removed to the system

If $W > 0$, Work is done by the system

If $W < 0$, Work is done on the system

Quantity	Symbol	Dimensions	Unit	Remark
Co-efficienty of volume expansion	α_v	$[K^{-1}]$	K^{-1}	$\alpha_v = 3\,\alpha_l$
Heat supplied to a system	ΔQ	$[ML^2T^{-2}]$	J	Q is not a state variable
Specific heat	s	$[L^2T^{-2}K^{-1}]$	$J\,kg^{-1}\,K^{-1}$	
Thermal Conductivity	K	$[MLT^{-3}K^{-1}]$	$J\,s^{-1}\,K^{-1}$	$H = -KA\dfrac{dt}{dx}$

POINTS TO PONDER

1. Temperature of a body is related to its average internal energy, not to the kinetic energy of motion of its centre of mass. A bullet fired from a gun is not at a higher temperature because of its high speed.
2. Equilibrium in thermodynamics refers to the situation when macroscopic variables describing the thermodynamic state of a system do not depend on time. Equilibrium of a system in mechanics means the net external force and torque on the system are zero.
3. In a state of thermodynamic equilibrium, the microscopic constituents of a system are not in equilibrium (in the sense of mechanics).
4. Heat capacity, in general, depends on the process the system goes through when heat is supplied.
5. In isothermal quasi-static processes, heat is absorbed or given out by the system even though at every stage the gas has the same temperature as that of the surrounding reservoir. This is possible because of the infinitesimal difference in temperature between the system and the reservoir.

EXERCISES

12.1 A geyser heats water flowing at the rate of 3.0 litres per minute from 27 °C to 77 °C. If the geyser operates on a gas burner, what is the rate of consumption of the fuel if its heat of combustion is 4.0×10^4 J/g ?

12.2 What amount of heat must be supplied to 2.0×10^{-2} kg of nitrogen (at room temperature) to raise its temperature by 45 °C at constant pressure ? (Molecular mass of N_2 = 28; R = 8.3 J mol^{-1} K^{-1}.)

12.3 Explain why

(a) Two bodies at different temperatures T_1 and T_2 if brought in thermal contact do not necessarily settle to the mean temperature $(T_1 + T_2)/2$.

(b) The coolant in a chemical or a nuclear plant (i.e., the liquid used to prevent the different parts of a plant from getting too hot) should have high specific heat.

(c) Air pressure in a car tyre increases during driving.

(d) The climate of a harbour town is more temperate than that of a town in a desert at the same latitude.

12.4 A cylinder with a movable piston contains 3 moles of hydrogen at standard temperature and pressure. The walls of the cylinder are made of a heat insulator, and the piston is insulated by having a pile of sand on it. By what factor does the pressure of the gas increase if the gas is compressed to half its original volume ?

12.5 In changing the state of a gas adiabatically from an equilibrium state A to another equilibrium state B, an amount of work equal to 22.3 J is done on the system. If the gas is taken from state A to B via a process in which the net heat absorbed by the system is 9.35 cal, how much is the net work done by the system in the latter case ? (Take 1 cal = 4.19 J)

12.6 Two cylinders A and B of equal capacity are connected to each other via a stopcock. A contains a gas at standard temperature and pressure. B is completely evacuated. The entire system is thermally insulated. The stopcock is suddenly opened. Answer the following :

(a) What is the final pressure of the gas in A and B ?

(b) What is the change in internal energy of the gas ?

(c) What is the change in the temperature of the gas ?

(d) Do the intermediate states of the system (before settling to the final equilibrium state) lie on its P-V-T surface ?

12.7 A steam engine delivers 5.4×10^8J of work per minute and services 3.6×10^9J of heat per minute from its boiler. What is the efficiency of the engine? How much heat is wasted per minute?

12.8 An electric heater supplies heat to a system at a rate of 100W. If system performs work at a rate of 75 joules per second. At what rate is the internal energy increasing?

12.9 A thermodynamic system is taken from an original state to an intermediate state by the linear process shown in Fig. (12.13)

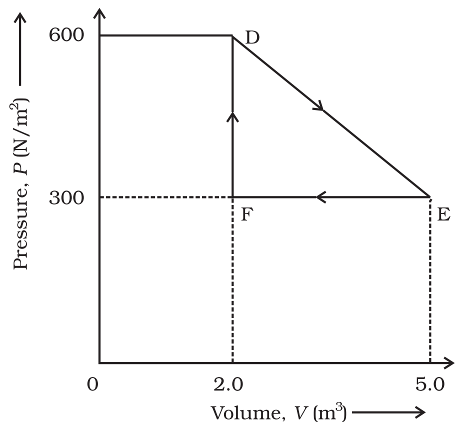


Fig. 12.13

Its volume is then reduced to the original value from E to F by an isobaric process. Calculate the total work done by the gas from D to E to F

12.10 A refrigerator is to maintain eatables kept inside at 9^0C. If room temperature is 36^0C, calculate the coefficient of performance.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

KINETIC THEORY

13.1 INTRODUCTION

Boyle discovered the law named after him in 1661. Boyle, Newton and several others tried to explain the behaviour of gases by considering that gases are made up of tiny atomic particles. The actual atomic theory got established more than 150 years later. Kinetic theory explains the behaviour of gases based on the idea that the gas consists of rapidly moving atoms or molecules. This is possible as the inter-atomic forces, which are short range forces that are important for solids and liquids, can be neglected for gases. The kinetic theory was developed in the nineteenth century by Maxwell, Boltzmann and others. It has been remarkably successful. It gives a molecular interpretation of pressure and temperature of a gas, and is consistent with gas laws and Avogadro's hypothesis. It correctly explains specific heat capacities of many gases. It also relates measurable properties of gases such as viscosity, conduction and diffusion with molecular parameters, yielding estimates of molecular sizes and masses. This chapter gives an introduction to kinetic theory.

13.2 MOLECULAR NATURE OF MATTER

Richard Feynman, one of the great physicists of 20th century considers the discovery that "Matter is made up of atoms" to be a very significant one. Humanity may suffer annihilation (due to nuclear catastrophe) or extinction (due to environmental disasters) if we do not act wisely. If that happens, and all of scientific knowledge were to be destroyed then Feynman would like the 'Atomic Hypothesis' to be communicated to the next generation of creatures in the universe. Atomic Hypothesis: All things are made of atoms - little particles that move around in perpetual motion, attracting each other when they are a little distance apart, but repelling upon being squeezed into one another.

Speculation that matter may not be continuous, existed in many places and cultures. Kanada in India and Democritus

Atomic Hypothesis in Ancient India and Greece

Though John Dalton is credited with the introduction of atomic viewpoint in modern science, scholars in ancient India and Greece conjectured long before the existence of atoms and molecules. In the Vaiseshika school of thought in India founded by Kanada (Sixth century B.C.) the atomic picture was developed in considerable detail. Atoms were thought to be eternal, indivisible, infinitesimal and ultimate parts of matter. It was argued that if matter could be subdivided without an end, there would be no difference between a mustard seed and the Meru mountain. The four kinds of atoms (**Paramanu** — Sanskrit word for the smallest particle) postulated were Bhoomi (Earth), Ap (water), Tejas (fire) and Vayu (air) that have characteristic mass and other attributes, were propounded. Akasa (space) was thought to have no atomic structure and was continuous and inert. Atoms combine to form different molecules (e.g. two atoms combine to form a diatomic molecule dvyanuka, three atoms form a tryanuka or a triatomic molecule), their properties depending upon the nature and ratio of the constituent atoms. The size of the atoms was also estimated, by conjecture or by methods that are not known to us. The estimates vary. In Lalitavistara, a famous biography of the Buddha written mainly in the second century B.C., the estimate is close to the modern estimate of atomic size, of the order of 10^{-10} m.

In ancient Greece, Democritus (Fourth century B.C.) is best known for his atomic hypothesis. The word 'atom' means 'indivisible' in Greek. According to him, atoms differ from each other physically, in shape, size and other properties and this resulted in the different properties of the substances formed by their combination. The atoms of water were smooth and round and unable to 'hook' on to each other, which is why liquid /water flows easily. The atoms of earth were rough and jagged, so they held together to form hard substances. The atoms of fire were thorny which is why it caused painful burns. These fascinating ideas, despite their ingenuity, could not evolve much further, perhaps because they were intuitive conjectures and speculations not tested and modified by quantitative experiments - the hallmark of modern science.

in Greece had suggested that matter may consist of indivisible constituents. The scientific 'Atomic Theory' is usually credited to John Dalton. He proposed the atomic theory to explain the laws of definite and multiple proportions obeyed by elements when they combine into compounds. The first law says that any given compound has, a fixed proportion by mass of its constituents. The second law says that when two elements form more than one compound, for a fixed mass of one element, the masses of the other elements are in ratio of small integers.

To explain the laws Dalton suggested, about 200 years ago, that the smallest constituents of an element are atoms. Atoms of one element are identical but differ from those of other elements. A small number of atoms of each element combine to form a molecule of the compound. Gay Lussac's law, also given in early 19^{th} century, states: When gases combine chemically to yield another gas, their volumes are in the ratios of small integers. Avogadro's law (or hypothesis) says: Equal volumes of all gases at equal temperature and pressure have the same number of molecules. Avogadro's law, when combined with Dalton's theory explains Gay Lussac's law. Since the elements are often in the form of molecules, Dalton's atomic theory can also be referred to as the molecular theory of matter. The theory is now well accepted by scientists. However even at the end of the nineteenth century there were famous scientists who did not believe in atomic theory !

From many observations, in recent times we now know that molecules (made up of one or more atoms) constitute matter. Electron microscopes and scanning tunnelling microscopes enable us to even see them. The size of an atom is about an angstrom (10^{-10} m). In solids, which are tightly packed, atoms are spaced about a few angstroms (2 Å) apart. In liquids the separation between atoms is also about the same. In liquids the atoms are not as rigidly fixed as in solids, and can move around. This enables a liquid to flow. In gases the interatomic distances are in tens of angstroms. The average distance a molecule can travel without colliding is called the **mean free path**. The mean free path, in gases, is of the order of thousands of angstroms. The atoms are much freer in gases and can travel long distances without colliding. If they are not enclosed, gases disperse away. In solids and liquids the closeness makes the interatomic force important. The force has a long range attraction and a short range repulsion. The atoms attract when they are at a few angstroms but repel when they come closer. The static appearance of a gas is misleading. The gas is full of activity and the equilibrium is a dynamic one. In dynamic equilibrium, molecules collide and change their speeds during the collision. Only the average properties are constant.

Atomic theory is not the end of our quest, but the beginning. We now know that atoms are not indivisible or elementary. They consist of a nucleus and electrons. The nucleus itself is made up of protons and neutrons. The protons and neutrons are again made up of quarks. Even quarks may not be the end of the story. There may be string like elementary entities. Nature always has surprises for us, but the search for truth is often enjoyable and the discoveries beautiful. In this chapter, we shall limit ourselves to understanding the behaviour of gases (and a little bit of solids), as a collection of moving molecules in incessant motion.

13.3 BEHAVIOUR OF GASES

Properties of gases are easier to understand than those of solids and liquids. This is mainly because in a gas, molecules are far from each other and their mutual interactions are negligible except when two molecules collide. Gases at low pressures and high temperatures much above that at which they liquefy (or solidify) approximately satisfy a simple relation between their pressure, temperature and volume given by (see Ch. 11)

$$PV = KT \tag{13.1}$$

for a given sample of the gas. Here T is the temperature in kelvin or (absolute) scale. K is a constant for the given sample but varies with the volume of the gas. If we now bring in the idea of atoms or molecules then K is proportional to the number of molecules, (say) N in the sample. We can write $K = N\,k$. Observation tells us that this k is same for all gases. It is called Boltzmann constant and is denoted by k_B.

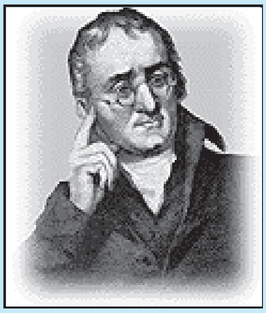
As $$\frac{P_1V_1}{N_1T_1} \quad \frac{P_2V_2}{N_2T_2} = \text{constant} = k_B \tag{13.2}$$

if P, V and T are same, then N is also same for all gases. This is Avogadro's hypothesis, that the number of molecules per unit volume is same for all gases at a fixed temperature and pressure. The number in 22.4 litres of any gas is 6.02 × 10^{23}. This is known as Avogadro number and is denoted by N_A. The mass of 22.4 litres of any gas is equal to its molecular weight in grams at S.T.P (standard temperature 273 K and pressure 1 atm). This amount of substance is called a mole (see Chapter 2 for a more precise definition). Avogadro had guessed the equality of numbers in equal volumes of gas at a fixed temperature and pressure from chemical reactions. Kinetic theory justifies this hypothesis.

The perfect gas equation can be written as

$$PV = \mu\,RT \tag{13.3}$$

where μ is the number of moles and $R = N_A k_B$ is a universal constant. The temperature T is absolute temperature. Choosing kelvin scale for



John Dalton (1766- 1844)

He was an English chemist. When different types of atoms combine, they obey certain simple laws. Dalton's atomic theory explains these laws in a simple way. He also gave a theory of colour blindness.

Amedeo Avogadro (1776 – 1856)

He made a brilliant guess that equal volumes of gases have equal number of molecules at the same temperature and pressure. This helped in understanding the combination of different gases in a very simple way. It is now called Avogadro's hypothesis (or law). He also suggested that the smallest constituent of gases like hydrogen, oxygen and nitrogen are not atoms but diatomic molecules.

absolute temperature, R = 8.314 J mol^{-1}K^{-1}. Here

$$\frac{M}{M_0} \quad \frac{N}{N_A} \tag{13.4}$$

where M is the mass of the gas containing N molecules, M_0 is the molar mass and N_A the Avogadro's number. Using Eqs. (13.4) and (13.3) can also be written as

$PV = k_B\, NT$ or $P = k_B\, nT$

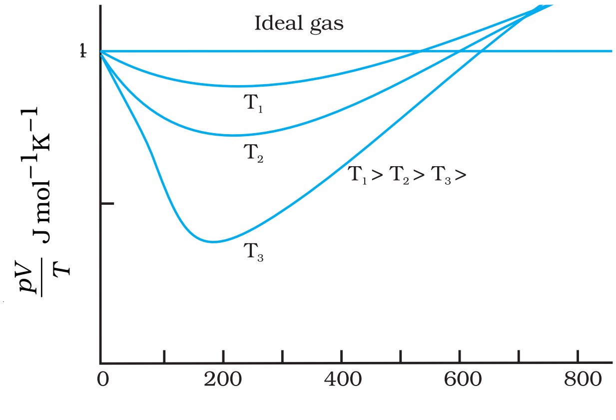


Fig.13.1 *Real gases approach ideal gas behaviour at low pressures and high temperatures.*

where n is the number density, i.e. number of molecules per unit volume. k_B is the Boltzmann constant introduced above. Its value in SI units is 1.38×10^{-23} J K^{-1}.

Another useful form of Eq. (13.3) is

$$P \quad \frac{RT}{M_0} \tag{13.5}$$

where ρ is the mass density of the gas.

A gas that satisfies Eq. (13.3) exactly at all pressures and temperatures is defined to be an **ideal gas**. An ideal gas is a simple theoretical model of a gas. No real gas is truly ideal. Fig. 13.1 shows departures from ideal gas behaviour for a real gas at three different temperatures. Notice that all curves approach the ideal gas behaviour for low pressures and high temperatures.

At low pressures or high temperatures the molecules are far apart and molecular interactions are negligible. Without interactions the gas behaves like an ideal one.

If we fix μ and T in Eq. (13.3), we get

$$PV = \text{constant} \tag{13.6}$$

i.e., keeping temperature constant, pressure of a given mass of gas varies inversely with volume. This is the famous **Boyle's law**. Fig. 13.2 shows comparison between experimental P-V curves and the theoretical curves predicted by Boyle's law. Once again you see that the agreement is good at high temperatures and low pressures. Next, if you fix P, Eq. (13.1) shows that $V \propto T$ i.e., for a fixed pressure, the volume of a gas is proportional to its absolute temperature T **(Charles' law)**. See Fig. 13.3.

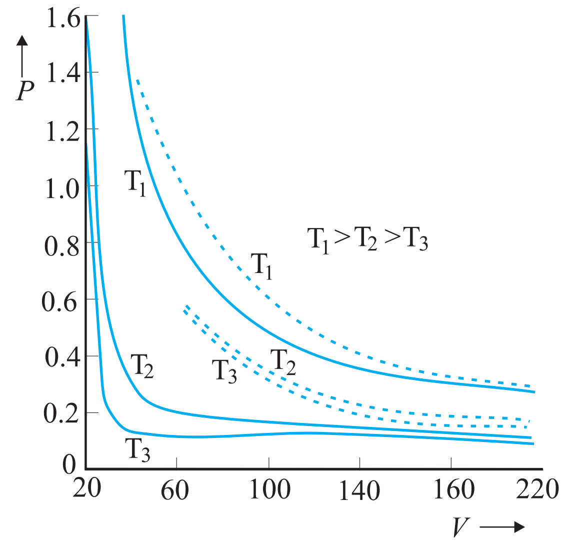


Fig.13.2 *Experimental P-V curves (solid lines) for steam at three temperatures compared with Boyle's law (dotted lines). P is in units of 22 atm and V in units of 0.09 litres.*

Finally, consider a mixture of non-interacting ideal gases: μ_1 moles of gas 1, μ_2 moles of gas 2, etc. in a vessel of volume V at temperature T and pressure P. It is then found that the equation of state of the mixture is :

$$PV = (\mu_1 + \mu_2 + \ldots)\, RT \tag{13.7}$$

$$\text{i.e. } P \quad {}_1\frac{RT}{V} \quad {}_2\frac{RT}{V} \quad \ldots \tag{13.8}$$

$$= P_1 + P_2 + \ldots \tag{13.9}$$

Clearly $P_1 = \mu_1 RT/V$ is the pressure gas 1 would exert at the same conditions of volume and temperature if no other gases were present. This is called the partial pressure of the gas. Thus, the total pressure of a mixture of ideal gases is the sum of partial pressures. This is Dalton's law of partial pressures.

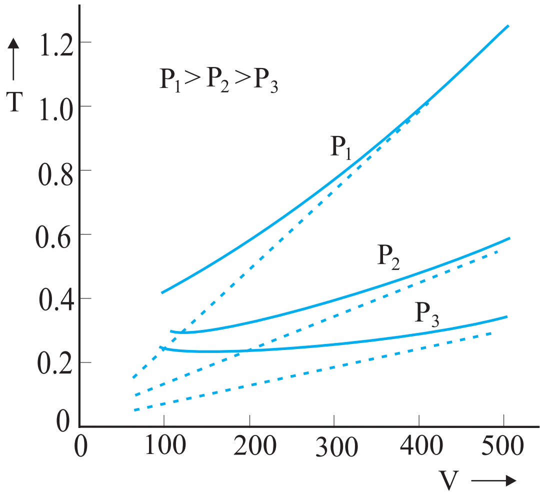


Fig. 13.3 *Experimental T-V curves (solid lines) for CO_2 at three pressures compared with Charles' law (dotted lines). T is in units of 300 K and V in units of 0.13 litres.*

We next consider some examples which give us information about the volume occupied by the molecules and the volume of a single molecule.

Example 13.1 The density of water is 1000 kg m^{-3}. The density of water vapour at 100 °C and 1 atm pressure is 0.6 kg m^{-3}. The volume of a molecule multiplied by the total number gives ,what is called, molecular volume. Estimate the ratio (or fraction) of the molecular volume to the total volume occupied by the water vapour under the above conditions of temperature and pressure.

Answer For a given mass of water molecules, the density is less if volume is large. So the volume of the vapour is 1000/0.6 = /(6×10^{-4}) times larger. If densities of bulk water and water molecules are same, then the fraction of molecular volume to the total volume in liquid state is 1. As volume in vapour state has increased, the fractional volume is less by the same amount, i.e. 6×10^{-4}. ◀

Example 13.2 Estimate the volume of a water molecule using the data in Example 13.1.

Answer In the liquid (or solid) phase, the molecules of water are quite closely packed. The density of water molecule may therefore, be regarded as roughly equal to the density of bulk water = 1000 kg m^{-3}. To estimate the volume of a water molecule, we need to know the mass of a single water molecule. We know that 1 mole of water has a mass approximately equal to

(2 + 16)g = 18 g = 0.018 kg.

Since 1 mole contains about 6×10^{23} molecules (Avogadro's number), the mass of a molecule of water is $(0.018)/(6 \times 10^{23})$ kg = 3×10^{-26} kg. Therefore, a rough estimate of the volume of a water molecule is as follows :

Volume of a water molecule

= (3×10^{-26} kg)/ (1000 kg m^{-3})

= 3×10^{-29} m^3

= $(4/3)\,\pi$ $(\text{Radius})^3$

Hence, Radius $\approx$ 2×10^{-10} m = 2 Å ◀

Example 13.3 What is the average distance between atoms (interatomic distance) in water? Use the data given in Examples 13.1 and 13.2.

Answer : A given mass of water in vapour state has 1.67×10^3 times the volume of the same mass of water in liquid state (Ex. 13.1). This is also the increase in the amount of volume available for each molecule of water. When volume increases by 10^3 times the radius increases by $V^{1/3}$ or 10 times, i.e., 10 × 2 Å = 20 Å. So the average distance is 2 × 20 = 40 Å. ◀

Example 13.4 A vessel contains two non-reactive gases : neon (monatomic) and oxygen (diatomic). The ratio of their partial pressures is 3:2. Estimate the ratio of (i) number of molecules and (ii) mass density of neon and oxygen in the vessel. Atomic mass of Ne = 20.2 u, molecular mass of O_2 = 32.0 u.

Answer Partial pressure of a gas in a mixture is the pressure it would have for the same volume and temperature if it alone occupied the vessel. (The total pressure of a mixture of non-reactive gases is the sum of partial pressures due to its constituent gases.) Each gas (assumed ideal) obeys the gas law. Since V and T are common to the two gases, we have $P_1 V = \mu_1 RT$ and $P_2 V = \mu_2 RT$, i.e. $(P_1/P_2) = (\mu_1 / \mu_2)$. Here 1 and 2 refer to neon and oxygen respectively. Since (P_1/P_2) = (3/2) (given), (μ_1/ μ_2) = 3/2.

(i) By definition $\mu_1 = (N_1/N_A)$ and $\mu_2 = (N_2/N_A)$ where N_1 and N_2 are the number of molecules of 1 and 2, and N_A is the Avogadro's number. Therefore, $(N_1/N_2) = (\mu_1 / \mu_2) = 3/2$.

(ii) We can also write $\mu_1 = (m_1/M_1)$ and $\mu_2 = (m_2/M_2)$ where m_1 and m_2 are the masses of 1 and 2; and M_1 and M_2 are their molecular masses. (Both m_1 and M_1; as well as m_2 and M_2 should be expressed in the same units). If ρ_1 and ρ_2 are the mass densities of 1 and 2 respectively, we have

$$\frac{1}{2} \quad \frac{m_1/V}{m_2/V} \quad \frac{m_1}{m_2} \quad \frac{1}{2} \quad \frac{M_1}{M_2}$$

$$\frac{3}{2} \quad \frac{20.2}{32.0} \quad 0.947$$

13.4 KINETIC THEORY OF AN IDEAL GAS

Kinetic theory of gases is based on the molecular picture of matter. A given amount of gas is a collection of a large number of molecules (typically of the order of Avogadro's number) that are in incessant random motion. At ordinary pressure and temperature, the average distance between molecules is a factor of 10 or more than the typical size of a molecule (2 Å). Thus the interaction between the molecules is negligible and we can assume that they move freely in straight lines according to Newton's first law. However, occasionally, they come close to each other, experience intermolecular forces and their velocities change. These interactions are called collisions. The molecules collide incessantly against each other or with the walls and change their velocities. The collisions are considered to be elastic. We can derive an expression for the pressure of a gas based on the kinetic theory.

We begin with the idea that molecules of a gas are in incessant random motion, colliding against one another and with the walls of the container. All collisions between molecules among themselves or between molecules and the walls are elastic. This implies that total kinetic energy is conserved. The total momentum is conserved as usual.

13.4.1 Pressure of an Ideal Gas

Consider a gas enclosed in a cube of side l. Take the axes to be parallel to the sides of the cube, as shown in Fig. 13.4. A molecule with velocity

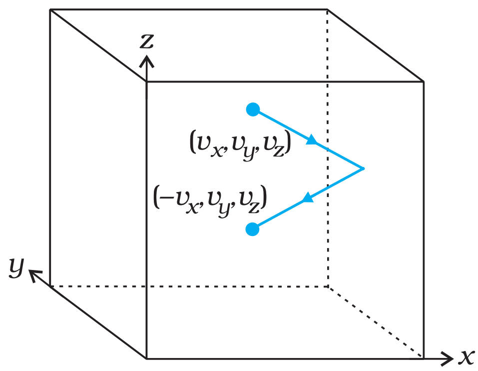


Fig. 13.4 *Elastic collision of a gas molecule with the wall of the container.*

(v_x, v_y, v_z) hits the planar wall parallel to *yz*-plane of area A (= l^2). Since the collision is elastic, the molecule rebounds with the same velocity; its *y* and *z* components of velocity do not change in the collision but the *x*-component reverses sign. That is, the velocity after collision is $(-v_x, v_y, v_z)$. The change in momentum of the molecule is : $-mv_x - (mv_x) = -2mv_x$. By the principle of conservation of momentum, the momentum imparted to the wall in the collision $= 2mv_x$.

To calculate the force (and pressure) on the wall, we need to calculate momentum imparted to the wall per unit time. In a small time interval Δt, a molecule with *x*-component of velocity v_x will hit the wall if it is within the distance $v_x \Delta t$ from the wall. That is, all molecules within the volume $A v_x \Delta t$ only can hit the wall in time Δt. But, on the average, half of these are moving towards the wall and the other half away from the wall. Thus the number of molecules with velocity (v_x, v_y, v_z) hitting the wall in time Δt is $\frac{1}{2} A v_x \Delta t\, n$ where n is the number of molecules per unit volume. The total momentum transferred to the wall by these molecules in time Δt is :

$$Q = (2mv_x)\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\, n\, A\, v_x\, \Delta t\right) \qquad (13.10)$$

The force on the wall is the rate of momentum transfer $Q/\Delta t$ and pressure is force per unit area :

$$P = Q/(A\,\Delta t) = n\, m\, v_x^2 \qquad (3.11)$$

Actually, all molecules in a gas do not have the same velocity; there is a distribution in velocities. The above equation therefore, stands for pressure due to the group of molecules with speed v_x in the *x*-direction and n stands for the number density of that group of molecules. The total pressure is obtained by summing over the contribution due to all groups:

$$P = n\, m\, \overline{v_x^2} \tag{13.12}$$

where $\overline{v_x^2}$ is the average of $v_x^{\,2}$. Now the gas is isotropic, i.e. there is no preferred direction of velocity of the molecules in the vessel. Therefore, by symmetry,

$$\overline{v_x^2} = \overline{v_y^2} = \overline{v_z^2}$$

$$= (1/3)\,[\,\overline{v_x^2} + \overline{v_y^2} + \overline{v_z^2}\,] = (1/3)\,\overline{v^2} \tag{13.13}$$

where v is the speed and $\overline{v^2}$ denotes the mean of the squared speed. Thus

$$P = (1/3)\, n\, m\, \overline{v^2} \tag{13.14}$$

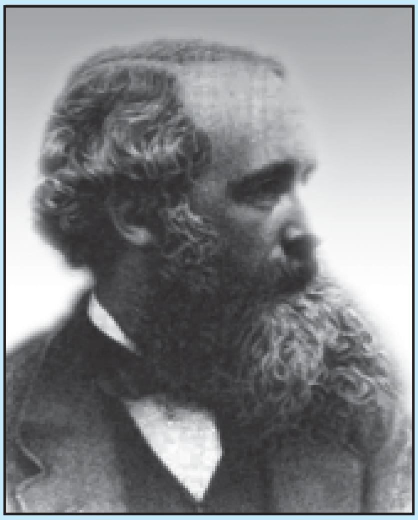
Some remarks on this derivation. First, though we choose the container to be a cube, the shape of the vessel really is immaterial. For a vessel of arbitrary shape, we can always choose a small infinitesimal (planar) area and carry through the steps above. Notice that both A and Δt do not appear in the final result. By Pascal's law, given in Ch. 10, pressure in one portion of the gas in equilibrium is the same as anywhere else. Second, we have ignored any collisions in the derivation. Though this assumption is difficult to justify rigorously, we can qualitatively see that it will not lead to erroneous results. The number of molecules hitting the wall in time Δt was found to be ½ $n A v_x \Delta t$. Now the collisions are random and the gas is in a steady state. Thus, if a molecule with velocity (v_x, v_y, v_z) acquires a different velocity due to collision with some molecule, there will always be some other molecule with a different initial velocity which after a collision acquires the velocity (v_x, v_y, v_z). If this were not so, the distribution of velocities would not remain steady. In any case we are finding $\overline{v_x^2}$. Thus, on the whole, molecular collisions (if they are not too frequent and the time spent in a collision is negligible compared to time between collisions) will not affect the calculation above.

13.4.2 Kinetic Interpretation of Temperature

Equation (13.14) can be written as

$$PV = (1/3)\, nV\, m\, \overline{v^2} \tag{13.15a}$$

Founders of Kinetic Theory of Gases



James Clerk Maxwell (1831 – 1879), born in Edinburgh, Scotland, was among the greatest physicists of the nineteenth century. He derived the thermal velocity distribution of molecules in a gas and was among the first to obtain reliable estimates of molecular parameters from measurable quantities like viscosity, etc. Maxwell's greatest achievement was the unification of the laws of electricity and magnetism (discovered by Coulomb, Oersted, Ampere and Faraday) into a consistent set of equations now called Maxwell's equations. From these he arrived at the most important conclusion that light is an electromagnetic wave. Interestingly, Maxwell did not agree with the idea (strongly suggested by the Faraday's laws of electrolysis) that electricity was particulate in nature.

Ludwig Boltzmann (1844 – 1906) born in Vienna, Austria, worked on the kinetic theory of gases independently of Maxwell. A firm advocate of atomism, that is basic to kinetic theory, Boltzmann provided a statistical interpretation of the Second Law of thermodynamics and the concept of entropy. He is regarded as one of the founders of classical statistical mechanics. The proportionality constant connecting energy and temperature in kinetic theory is known as Boltzmann's constant in his honour.

$$PV = (2/3)\, N \, x \, ½ \, m \, \overline{v^2} \qquad (13.15b)$$

where N (= nV) is the number of molecules in the sample.

The quantity in the bracket is the average translational kinetic energy of the molecules in the gas. Since the internal energy E of an ideal gas is purely kinetic*,

$$E = N \times (1/2)\, m \, \overline{v^2} \qquad (13.16)$$

Equation (13.15) then gives :

$$PV = (2/3)\, E \qquad (13.17)$$

We are now ready for a kinetic interpretation of temperature. Combining Eq. (13.17) with the ideal gas Eq. (13.3), we get

$$E = (3/2)\ k_B NT \qquad (13.18)$$

or $E/N = ½ \ m \ \overline{v^2} \ = \ (3/2)\ k_B T$ (13.19)

i.e., the average kinetic energy of a molecule is proportional to the absolute temperature of the gas; it is independent of pressure, volume or the nature of the ideal gas. This is a fundamental result relating temperature, a macroscopic measurable parameter of a gas (a thermodynamic variable as it is called) to a molecular quantity, namely the average kinetic energy of a molecule. The two domains are connected by the Boltzmann constant. We note in passing that Eq. (13.18) tells us that internal energy of an ideal gas depends only on temperature, not on pressure or volume. With this interpretation of temperature, kinetic theory of an ideal gas is completely consistent with the ideal gas equation and the various gas laws based on it.

For a mixture of non-reactive ideal gases, the total pressure gets contribution from each gas in the mixture. Equation (13.14) becomes

$$P = (1/3)\,[n_1 m_1 \overline{v_1^2} + n_2 m_2 \overline{v_2^2} + \ldots\ ] \qquad (13.20)$$

In equilibrium, the average kinetic energy of the molecules of different gases will be equal. That is,

$$½ \ m_1 \ \overline{v_1^2} = ½ \ m_2 \ \overline{v_2^2} = (3/2)\ k_B \ T$$

so that

$$P = (n_1 + n_2 + \ldots\ )\ k_B \ T \qquad (13.21)$$

which is Dalton's law of partial pressures.

From Eq. (13.19), we can get an idea of the typical speed of molecules in a gas. At a temperature T = 300 K, the mean square speed of a molecule in nitrogen gas is :

$$m \quad \frac{M_{N_2}}{N_A} \quad \frac{28}{6.02 \quad 10^{26}} \quad 4.65 \quad 10^{-26} \text{ kg.}$$

$$\overline{v^2} \ = \ 3\ k_B\ T\ /\ m \ = \ (516)^2 \text{ m}^2\text{s}^{-2}$$

The square root of $\overline{v^2}$ is known as root mean square (rms) speed and is denoted by v_{rms},

(We can also write $\overline{v^2}$ as $< v^2 >$.)

$$v_{rms} \ = \ 516 \text{ m s}^{-1}$$

The speed is of the order of the speed of sound in air. It follows from Eq. (13.19) that at the same temperature, lighter molecules have greater rms speed.

Example 13.5 A flask contains argon and chlorine in the ratio of 2:1 by mass. The temperature of the mixture is 27 °C. Obtain the ratio of (i) average kinetic energy per molecule, and (ii) root mean square speed v_{rms} of the molecules of the two gases. Atomic mass of argon = 39.9 u; Molecular mass of chlorine = 70.9 u.

Answer The important point to remember is that the average kinetic energy (per molecule) of any (ideal) gas (be it monatomic like argon, diatomic like chlorine or polyatomic) is always equal to (3/2) $k_B T$. It depends only on temperature, and is independent of the nature of the gas.

(i) Since argon and chlorine both have the same temperature in the flask, the ratio of average kinetic energy (per molecule) of the two gases is 1:1.

(ii) Now ½ $m\, v_{rms}{}^2$ = average kinetic energy per molecule = (3/2)) $k_B T$ where m is the mass of a molecule of the gas. Therefore,

$$\frac{\mathbf{v}^2_{rms\ \ Ar}}{\mathbf{v}^2_{rms\ \ Cl}} \quad \frac{m_{\ Cl}}{m_{\ Ar}} \quad \frac{M_{\ Cl}}{M_{\ Ar}} = \frac{70.9}{39.9} = 1.77$$

where M denotes the molecular mass of the gas. (For argon, a molecule is just an atom of argon.) Taking square root of both sides,

$$\frac{\mathbf{v}_{rms\ \ Ar}}{\mathbf{v}_{rms\ \ Cl}} = 1.33$$

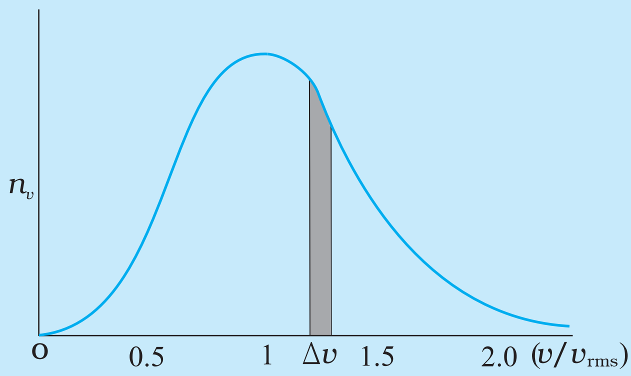
You should note that the composition of the mixture by mass is quite irrelevant to the above

* *E denotes the translational part of the internal energy U that may include energies due to other degrees of freedom also. See section 13.5.*

Maxwell Distribution Function

In a given mass of gas, the velocities of all molecules are not the same, even when bulk parameters like pressure, volume and temperature are fixed. Collisions change the direction and the speed of molecules. However in a state of equilibrium, the distribution of speeds is constant or fixed.

Distributions are very important and useful when dealing with systems containing large number of objects. As an example consider the ages of different persons in a city. It is not feasible to deal with the age of each individual. We can divide the people into groups: children up to age 20 years, adults between ages of 20 and 60, old people above 60. If we want more detailed information we can choose smaller intervals, 0-1, 1-2,..., 99-100 of age groups. When the size of the interval becomes smaller, say half year, the number of persons in the interval will also reduce, roughly half the original number in the one year interval. The number of persons d$N(x)$ in the age interval x and x+dx is proportional to dx or d$N(x)$ = n_x dx. We have used n_x to denote the number of persons at the value of x.



Maxwell distribution of molecular speeds

In a similar way the molecular speed distribution gives the number of molecules between the speeds v and v+ dv. d$N(v)$ = $4p\, N\, a^3 e^{-bv^2} v^2$ dv = n_vdv. This is called Maxwell distribution. The plot of n_v against v is shown in the figure. The fraction of the molecules with speeds v and v+dv is equal to the area of the strip shown. The average of any quantity like v^2 is defined by the integral $<v^2> = (1/N) \int v^2 \, dN(v)$ = Å$(3k_B\, T/m)$ which agrees with the result derived from more elementary considerations.

calculation. Any other proportion by mass of argon and chlorine would give the same answers to (i) and (ii), provided the temperature remains unaltered. ◀

▶ ***Example 13.6*** Uranium has two isotopes of masses 235 and 238 units. If both are present in Uranium hexafluoride gas which would have the larger average speed ? If atomic mass of fluorine is 19 units, estimate the percentage difference in speeds at any temperature.

Answer At a fixed temperature the average energy = ½ $m<v^2>$ is constant. So smaller the mass of the molecule, faster will be the speed. The ratio of speeds is inversely proportional to the square root of the ratio of the masses. The masses are 349 and 352 units. So

$$v_{349} / v_{352} = (352/349)^{1/2} = 1.0044 .$$

$$\text{Hence difference } \frac{V}{V} = 0.44\ \%.$$

[^{235}U is the isotope needed for nuclear fission. To separate it from the more abundant isotope ^{238}U, the mixture is surrounded by a porous cylinder. The porous cylinder must be thick and narrow, so that the molecule wanders through individually, colliding with the walls of the long pore. The faster molecule will leak out more than the slower one and so there is more of the lighter molecule (enrichment) outside the porous cylinder (Fig. 13.5). The method is not very efficient and has to be repeated several times for sufficient enrichment.]. ◀

When gases diffuse, their rate of diffusion is inversely proportional to square root of the masses (see Exercise 13.12). Can you guess the explanation from the above answer?

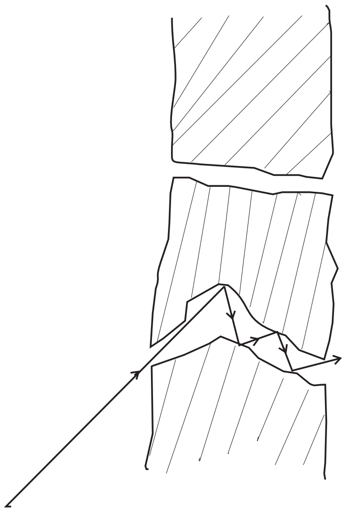


Fig. 13.5 *Molecules going through a porous wall.*

▶ ***Example 13.7*** (a) When a molecule (or an elastic ball) hits a (massive) wall, it rebounds with the same speed. When a ball hits a massive bat held firmly, the same thing happens. However, when the bat is moving towards the ball, the ball rebounds with a different speed. Does the ball move faster or slower? (Ch.6 will refresh your memory on elastic collisions.)

(b) When gas in a cylinder is compressed by pushing in a piston, its temperature rises. Guess at an explanation of this in terms of kinetic theory using (a) above.

(c) What happens when a compressed gas pushes a piston out and expands. What would you observe ?

(d) Sachin Tendulkar uses a heavy cricket bat while playing. Does it help him in anyway ?

Answer (a) Let the speed of the ball be u relative to the wicket behind the bat. If the bat is moving towards the ball with a speed V relative to the wicket, then the relative speed of the ball to bat is $V + u$ towards the bat. When the ball rebounds (after hitting the massive bat) its speed, relative to bat, is $V + u$ moving away from the bat. So relative to the wicket the speed of the rebounding ball is $V + (V + u) = 2V + u$, moving away from the wicket. So the ball speeds up after the collision with the bat. The rebound speed will be less than u if the bat is not massive. For a molecule this would imply an increase in temperature.

You should be able to answer (b) (c) and (d) based on the answer to (a).

(Hint: Note the correspondence, piston → bat, cylinder → wicket, molecule → ball.) ◀

13.5 LAW OF EQUIPARTITION OF ENERGY

The kinetic energy of a single molecule is

$$_t \quad \frac{1}{2}mv_x^2 \quad \frac{1}{2}mv_y^2 \quad \frac{1}{2}mv_z^2 \qquad (13.22)$$

For a gas in thermal equilibrium at temperature T the average value of energy denoted by $< \ _t >$ is

$$\langle \ _t \rangle \quad \left\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_x^2 \right\rangle \quad \left\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_y^2 \right\rangle \quad \left\langle \frac{1}{2}mv_z^2 \right\rangle \quad \frac{3}{2}k_BT \qquad (13.23)$$

Since there is no preferred direction, Eq. (13.23) implies

$$\left\langle \frac{1}{2}\ mv_x^2 \right\rangle \quad \frac{1}{2}\ k_BT\ , \left\langle \frac{1}{2}\ mv_y^2 \right\rangle \quad \frac{1}{2}\ k_BT\ ,$$

$$\left\langle \frac{1}{2}\ mv_z^2 \right\rangle \quad \frac{1}{2}\ k_BT \qquad (13.24)$$

A molecule free to move in space needs three coordinates to specify its location. If it is constrained to move in a plane it needs two;and if constrained to move along a line, it needs just one coordinate to locate it. This can also be expressed in another way. We say that it has one degree of freedom for motion in a line, two for motion in a plane and three for motion in space. Motion of a body as a whole from one point to another is called translation. Thus, a molecule free to move in space has three translational degrees of freedom. Each translational degree of freedom contributes a term that contains square of some variable of motion, e.g., ½ mv_x^2 and similar terms in v_y and v_z. In, Eq. (13.24) we see that in thermal equilibrium, the average of each such term is ½ k_BT .

Molecules of a monatomic gas like argon have only translational degrees of freedom. But what about a diatomic gas such as O_2 or N_2? A molecule of O_2 has three translational degrees of freedom. But in addition it can also rotate about its centre of mass. Figure 13.6 shows the two independent axes of rotation 1 and 2, normal to the axis joining the two oxygen atoms about which the molecule can rotate*. The molecule thus has two rotational degrees of freedom, each of which contributes a term to the total energy consisting of translational energy ε_t and rotational energy ε_r.

$$\varepsilon_t + \varepsilon_r = \frac{1}{2}mv_x^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv_y^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv_z^2 + \frac{1}{2}I_1\omega_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}I_2\omega_2^2 \quad (13.25)$$

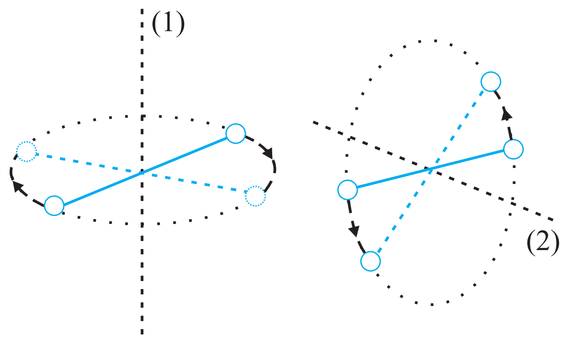


Fig. 13.6 *The two independent axes of rotation of a diatomic molecule*

where ω_1 and ω_2 are the angular speeds about the axes 1 and 2 and I_1, I_2 are the corresponding moments of inertia. Note that each rotational degree of freedom contributes a term to the energy that contains square of a rotational variable of motion.

We have assumed above that the O_2 molecule is a 'rigid rotator', i.e. the molecule does not vibrate. This assumption, though found to be true (at moderate temperatures) for O_2, is not always valid. Molecules like CO even at moderate temperatures have a mode of vibration, i.e. its atoms oscillate along the interatomic axis like a one-dimensional oscillator, and contribute a vibrational energy term ε_v to the total energy:

$$\varepsilon_v = \frac{1}{2}m\left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2}ky^2$$

$$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_t + \varepsilon_r + \varepsilon_v \quad (13.26)$$

where k is the force constant of the oscillator and y the vibrational co-ordinate.

Once again the vibrational energy terms in Eq. (13.26) contain squared terms of vibrational variables of motion y and dy/dt.

At this point, notice an important feature in Eq.(13.26). While each translational and rotational degree of freedom has contributed only one 'squared term' in Eq.(13.26), one vibrational mode contributes two 'squared terms' : kinetic and potential energies.

Each quadratic term occurring in the expression for energy is a mode of absorption of energy by the molecule. We have seen that in thermal equilibrium at absolute temperature T, for each translational mode of motion, the average energy is ½ k_BT. A most elegant principle of classical statistical mechanics (first proved by Maxwell) states that this is so for each mode of energy: translational, rotational and vibrational. That is, in equilibrium, the total energy is equally distributed in all possible energy modes, with each mode having an average energy equal to ½ k_BT. This is known as the **law of equipartition of energy**. Accordingly, each translational and rotational degree of freedom of a molecule contributes ½ k_BT to the energy while each vibrational frequency contributes $2 \times ½\, k_BT = k_BT$, since a vibrational mode has both kinetic and potential energy modes.

The proof of the law of equipartition of energy is beyond the scope of this book. Here we shall apply the law to predict the specific heats of gases theoretically. Later we shall also discuss briefly, the application to specific heat of solids.

13.6 SPECIFIC HEAT CAPACITY

13.6.1 Monatomic Gases

The molecule of a monatomic gas has only three translational degrees of freedom. Thus, the average energy of a molecule at temperature T is $(3/2)k_BT$. The total internal energy of a mole of such a gas is

* *Rotation along the line joining the atoms has very small moment of inertia and does not come into play for quantum mechanical reasons. See end of section 13.6.*

$$U \quad \frac{3}{2}k_BT \quad N_A \quad \frac{3}{2}RT \tag{13.27}$$

The molar specific heat at constant volume, C_v, is

$$C_v \text{ (monatomic gas)} = \frac{dU}{dT} = \frac{3}{2}RT \tag{13.28}$$

For an ideal gas,

$$C_p - C_v = R \tag{13.29}$$

where C_p is the molar specific heat at constant pressure. Thus,

$$C_p = \frac{5}{2}R \tag{13.30}$$

The ratio of specific heats $\quad \frac{C_p}{C_v} \quad \frac{5}{3}$ (13.31)

13.6.2 Diatomic Gases

As explained earlier, a diatomic molecule treated as a rigid rotator like a dumbbell has 5 degrees of freedom : 3 translational and 2 rotational. Using the law of equipartition of energy, the total internal energy of a mole of such a gas is

$$U \quad \frac{5}{2}k_BT \quad N_A \quad \frac{5}{2}RT \tag{13.32}$$

The molar specific heats are then given by

$$C_v \text{ (rigid diatomic)} = \frac{5}{2}R,\ C_p = \frac{7}{2}R \tag{13.33}$$

$$\gamma \text{ (rigid diatomic)} = \frac{7}{5} \tag{13.34}$$

If the diatomic molecule is not rigid but has in addition a vibrational mode

$$U = \left(\frac{5}{2}k_BT + k_BT\right)N_A = \frac{7}{2}RT$$

$$C_v \quad \frac{7}{2}R,\ C_p \quad \frac{9}{2}R, \quad \frac{9}{7}R \tag{13.35}$$

13.6.3 Polyatomic Gases

In general a polyatomic molecule has 3 translational, 3 rotational degrees of freedom and a certain number (f) of vibrational modes. According to the law of equipartition of energy, it is easily seen that one mole of such a gas has

$$U = \left(\frac{3}{2}\ k_BT + \frac{3}{2}\ k_BT + f\,k_BT\right) N_A$$

i.e. $C_v = (3+f)\,R$, $C_p = (4+f)\,R$,

$$\frac{f}{f} \tag{13.36}$$

Note that $C_p - C_v = R$ is true for any ideal gas, whether mono, di or polyatomic.

Table 13.1 summarises the theoretical predictions for specific heats of gases ignoring any vibrational modes of motion. The values are in good agreement with experimental values of specific heats of several gases given in Table 13.2. Of course, there are discrepancies between predicted and actual values of specific heats of several other gases (not shown in the table), such as Cl_2, C_2H_6 and many other polyatomic gases. Usually, the experimental values for specific heats of these gases are greater than the predicted values given in Table13.1 suggesting that the agreement can be improved by including vibrational modes of motion in the calculation. The law of equipartition of energy is thus well

Table 13.1 **Predicted values of specific heat capacities of gases (ignoring vibrational modes),**

Nature of Gas	C_v (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})	C_p (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})	$C_p - C_v$ (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})	γ
Monatomic	12.5	20.8	8.31	1.67
Diatomic	20.8	29.1	8.31	1.40
Triatomic	24.93	33.24	8.31	1.33

Table13.2 **Measured values of specific heat capacities of some gases**

Nature of gas	Gas	C_v (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})	C_p (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})	$C_p - C_v$ (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})	γ
Monatomic	He	12.5	20.8	8.30	1.66
Monatomic	Ne	12.7	20.8	8.12	1.64
Monatomic	Ar	12.5	20.8	8.30	1.67
Diatomic	H_2	20.4	28.8	8.45	1.41
Diatomic	O_2	21.0	29.3	8.32	1.40
Diatomic	N_2	20.8	29.1	8.32	1.40
Triatomic	H_2O	27.0	35.4	8.35	1.31
Polyatomic	CH_4	27.1	35.4	8.36	1.31

verified experimentally at ordinary temperatures.

▶ ***Example 13.8*** A cylinder of fixed capacity 44.8 litres contains helium gas at standard temperature and pressure. What is the amount of heat needed to raise the temperature of the gas in the cylinder by 15.0 °C ? (R = 8.31 J mo1^{-1} K^{-1}).

Answer Using the gas law $PV = \mu RT$, you can easily show that 1 mol of any (ideal) gas at standard temperature (273 K) and pressure (1 atm = 1.01 × 10^5 Pa) occupies a volume of 22.4 litres. This universal volume is called molar volume. Thus the cylinder in this example contains 2 mol of helium. Further, since helium is monatomic, its predicted (and observed) molar specific heat at constant volume, C_v = (3/2) R, and molar specific heat at constant pressure, $C_p = (3/2)\ R + R = (5/2)\ R$. Since the volume of the cylinder is fixed, the heat required is determined by C_v. Therefore,
Heat required = no. of moles × molar specific heat × rise in temperature

= 2 × 1.5 R × 15.0 = 45 R

= 45 × 8.31 = 374 J. ◀

13.6.4 Specific Heat Capacity of Solids

We can use the law of equipartition of energy to determine specific heats of solids. Consider a solid of N atoms, each vibrating about its mean position. An oscillation in one dimension has average energy of 2 × ½ $k_BT = k_BT$. In three dimensions, the average energy is 3 k_BT. For a mole of solid, $N = N_A$, and the total energy is

$$U = 3\ k_BT \times N_A = 3\ RT$$

Now at constant pressure $\Delta Q = \Delta U + P\Delta V = \Delta U$, since for a solid ΔV is negligible. Hence,

$$C \quad \frac{Q}{T} \quad \frac{U}{T} \quad 3R \qquad (13.37)$$

Table 13.3 Specific Heat Capacity of some solids at room temperature and atmospheric pressure

Substance	Specific heat (J kg^{-1} K^{-1})	Molar specific Heat(J mol^{-1} K^{-1})
Aluminium	900.0	24.4
Carbon	506.5	6.1
Copper	386.4	24.5
Lead	127.7	26.5
Silver	236.1	25.5
Tungsten	134.4	24.9

As Table 13.3 shows the prediction generally agrees with experimental values at ordinary temperature (Carbon is an exception).

13.6.5 Specific Heat Capacity of Water

We treat water like a solid. For each atom average energy is $3k_BT$. Water molecule has three atoms, two hydrogen and one oxygen. So it has

$$U = 3 \times 3\ k_BT \times N_A = 9\ RT$$

and $C = \Delta Q/\ \Delta T = \Delta\ U\ /\ \Delta T\ = 9R$.

This is the value observed and the agreement is very good. In the calorie, gram, degree units, water is defined to have unit specific heat. As 1 calorie = 4.179 joules and one mole of water is 18 grams, the heat capacity per mole is ~ 75 J mol^{-1} K^{-1} ~ 9R. However with more complex molecules like alcohol or acetone the arguments, based on degrees of freedom, become more complicated.

Lastly, we should note an important aspect of the predictions of specific heats, based on the classical law of equipartition of energy. The predicted specific heats are independent of temperature. As we go to low temperatures, however, there is a marked departure from this prediction. Specific heats of all substances approach zero as $T \to 0$. This is related to the fact that degrees of freedom get frozen and ineffective at low temperatures. According to classical physics degrees of freedom must remain unchanged at all times. The behaviour of specific heats at low temperatures shows the inadequacy of classical physics and can be explained only by invoking quantum considerations, as was first shown by Einstein. Quantum mechanics requires a minimum, nonzero amount of energy before a degree of freedom comes into play. This is also the reason why vibrational degrees of freedom come into play only in some cases.

13.7 MEAN FREE PATH

Molecules in a gas have rather large speeds of the order of the speed of sound. Yet a gas leaking from a cylinder in a kitchen takes considerable time to diffuse to the other corners of the room. The top of a cloud of smoke holds together for hours. This happens because molecules in a gas have a finite though small size, so they are bound to undergo collisions. As a result, they cannot

Seeing is Believing

Can one see atoms rushing about. Almost but not quite. One can see pollen grains of a flower being pushed around by molecules of water. The size of the grain is ~ 10^{-5} m. In 1827, a Scottish botanist Robert Brown, while examining, under a microscope, pollen grains of a flower suspended in water noticed that they continuously moved about in a zigzag, random fashion.

Kinetic theory provides a simple explanation of the phenomenon. Any object suspended in water is continuously bombarded from all sides by the water molecules. Since the motion of molecules is random, the number of molecules hitting the object in any direction is about the same as the number hitting in the opposite direction. The small difference between these molecular hits is negligible compared to the total number of hits for an object of ordinary size, and we do not notice any movement of the object.

When the object is sufficiently small but still visible under a microscope, the difference in molecular hits from different directions is not altogether negligible, i.e. the impulses and the torques given to the suspended object through continuous bombardment by the molecules of the medium (water or some other fluid) do not exactly sum to zero. There is a net impulse and torque in this or that direction. The suspended object thus, moves about in a zigzag manner and tumbles about randomly. This motion called now 'Brownian motion' is a visible proof of molecular activity. In the last 50 years or so molecules have been seen by scanning tunneling and other special microscopes.

In 1987 Ahmed Zewail, an Egyptian scientist working in USA was able to observe not only the molecules but also their detailed interactions. He did this by illuminating them with flashes of laser light for very short durations, of the order of tens of femtoseconds and photographing them. (1 femto-second = 10^{-15} s). One could study even the formation and breaking of chemical bonds. That is really seeing !

move straight unhindered; their paths keep getting incessantly deflected.

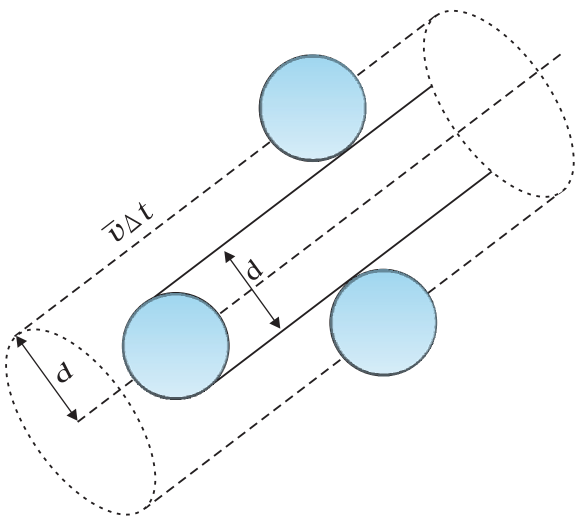


Fig. 13.7 *The volume swept by a molecule in time Δt in which any molecule will collide with it.*

Suppose the molecules of a gas are spheres of diameter d. Focus on a single molecule with the average speed $\langle v \rangle$. It will suffer collision with any molecule that comes within a distance d between the centres. In time Δt, it sweeps a volume $\pi d^2 \langle v \rangle \Delta t$ wherein any other molecule will collide with it (see Fig. 13.7). If n is the number of molecules per unit volume, the molecule suffers $n\pi d^2 \langle v \rangle \Delta t$ collisions in time Δt. Thus the rate of collisions is $n\pi d^2 \langle v \rangle$ or the time between two successive collisions is on the average,

$$\tau = 1/(n\pi \langle v \rangle d^2) \qquad (13.38)$$

The average distance between two successive collisions, called the mean free path l, is :

$$l = \langle v \rangle \tau = 1/(n\pi d^2) \qquad (13.39)$$

In this derivation, we imagined the other molecules to be at rest. But actually all molecules are moving and the collision rate is determined by the average relative velocity of the molecules. Thus we need to replace $\langle v \rangle$ by $\langle v_r \rangle$ in Eq. (13.38). A more exact treatment gives

$$l \quad 1/\ \sqrt{2}\ n\ d^2 \qquad (13.40)$$

Let us estimate l and τ for air molecules with average speeds $\langle v \rangle$ = (485m/s). At STP

$$n = \frac{0.02 \quad 10^{23}}{22.4 \quad 10^{-3}}$$

$= 2.7 \times 10^{25}\ \text{m}^{-3.}$

Taking, $d = 2 \times 10^{-10}$ m,

$\tau = 6.1 \times 10^{-10}$ s

and $l = 2.9 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} \approx 1500d$ (13.41)

As expected, the mean free path given by Eq. (13.40) depends inversely on the number density and the size of the molecules. In a highly evacuated tube n is rather small and the mean free path can be as large as the length of the tube.

Example 13.9 Estimate the mean free path for a water molecule in water vapour at 373 K. Use information from Exercises 13.1 and Eq. (13.41) above.

Answer The d for water vapour is same as that of air. The number density is inversely proportional to absolute temperature.

So $n \quad 2.7 \quad 10^{25} \dfrac{273}{373} \quad 2 \quad 10^{25}\,\text{m}^{-3}$

Hence, mean free path $l \quad 4 \quad 10^{-7}$ m

Note that the mean free path is 100 times the interatomic distance ~ 40 Å = 4×10^{-9} m calculated earlier. It is this large value of mean free path that leads to the typical gaseous behaviour. Gases can not be confined without a container.

Using, the kinetic theory of gases, the bulk measurable properties like viscosity, heat conductivity and diffusion can be related to the microscopic parameters like molecular size. It is through such relations that the molecular sizes were first estimated.

SUMMARY

1. The ideal gas equation connecting pressure (P), volume (V) and absolute temperature (T) is

$$PV = \mu RT \quad = k_B NT$$

where μ is the number of moles and N is the number of molecules. R and k_B are universal constants.

$$R = 8.314 \text{ J mol}^{-1}\text{ K}^{-1}, \quad k_B = \frac{R}{N_A} \quad = 1.38 \times 10^{-23}\text{ J K}^{-1}$$

Real gases satisfy the ideal gas equation only approximately, more so at low pressures and high temperatures.

2. Kinetic theory of an ideal gas gives the relation

$$P \quad \frac{1}{3} n\, m\, \overline{v^2}$$

where n is number density of molecules, m the mass of the molecule and $\overline{v^2}$ is the mean of squared speed. Combined with the ideal gas equation it yields a kinetic interpretation of temperature.

$$\frac{1}{2} m\, \overline{v^2} \quad \frac{3}{2} k_B\, T\,, \quad v_{rms} \quad \overline{v^2}^{\;1/2} \quad \sqrt{\frac{3k_B T}{m}}$$

This tells us that the temperature of a gas is a measure of the average kinetic energy of a molecule, *independent of the nature of the gas or molecule.* In a mixture of gases at a fixed temperature the heavier molecule has the lower average speed.

3. The translational kinetic energy

$$E = \frac{3}{2}\, k_B NT.$$

This leads to a relation

$$PV = \frac{2}{3}\, E$$

4. The law of equipartition of energy states that if a system is in equilibrium at absolute temperature T, the total energy is distributed equally in different energy modes of

absorption, the energy in each mode being equal to ½ k_B T. Each translational and rotational degree of freedom corresponds to one energy mode of absorption and has energy ½ $k_B T$. Each vibrational frequency has two modes of energy (kinetic and potential) with corresponding energy equal to
$2 \times ½\ k_B\ T = k_B\ T$.

5. Using the law of equipartition of energy, the molar specific heats of gases can be determined and the values are in agreement with the experimental values of specific heats of several gases. The agreement can be improved by including vibrational modes of motion.

6. The mean free path l is the average distance covered by a molecule between two successive collisions :

$$\bar{l} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}\, n \pi d^2}$$

where n is the number density and d the diameter of the molecule.

POINTS TO PONDER

1. Pressure of a fluid is not only exerted on the wall. Pressure exists everywhere in a fluid. Any layer of gas inside the volume of a container is in equilibrium because the pressure is the same on both sides of the layer.

2. We should not have an exaggerated idea of the intermolecular distance in a gas. At ordinary pressures and temperatures, this is only 10 times or so the interatomic distance in solids and liquids. What is different is the mean free path which in a gas is 100 times the interatomic distance and 1000 times the size of the molecule.

3. The law of equipartition of energy is stated thus: the energy for each degree of freedom in thermal equilibrium is ½ k_B T. Each quadratic term in the total energy expression of a molecule is to be counted as a degree of freedom. Thus, each vibrational mode gives 2 (not 1) degrees of freedom (kinetic and potential energy modes), corresponding to the energy $2 \times ½\ k_B\ T = k_B\ T$.

4. Molecules of air in a room do not all fall and settle on the ground (due to gravity) because of their high speeds and incessant collisions. In equilibrium, there is a very slight increase in density at lower heights (like in the atmosphere). The effect is small since the potential energy (mgh) for ordinary heights is much less than the average kinetic energy ½ mv^2 of the molecules.

5. $< v^2 >$ is not always equal to $(< v >)^2$. The average of a squared quantity is not necessarily the square of the average. Can you find examples for this statement.

EXERCISES

13.1 Estimate the fraction of molecular volume to the actual volume occupied by oxygen gas at STP. Take the diameter of an oxygen molecule to be 3 Å.

13.2 Molar volume is the volume occupied by 1 mol of any (ideal) gas at standard temperature and pressure (STP : 1 atmospheric pressure, 0 °C). Show that it is 22.4 litres.

13.3 Figure 13.8 shows plot of PV/T versus P for 1.00×10^{-3} kg of oxygen gas at two different temperatures.

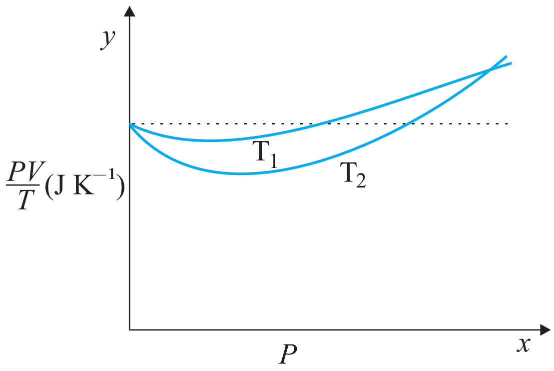


Fig. 13.8

(a) What does the dotted plot signify?
(b) Which is true: $T_1 > T_2$ or $T_1 < T_2$?
(c) What is the value of PV/T where the curves meet on the y-axis?
(d) If we obtained similar plots for 1.00×10^{-3} kg of hydrogen, would we get the same value of PV/T at the point where the curves meet on the y-axis? If not, what mass of hydrogen yields the same value of PV/T (for low pressurehigh temperature region of the plot) ? (Molecular mass of H_2 = 2.02 u, of O_2 = 32.0 u, R = 8.31 J mo1^{-1} K^{-1}.)

13.4 An oxygen cylinder of volume 30 litres has an initial gauge pressure of 15 atm and a temperature of 27 °C. After some oxygen is withdrawn from the cylinder, the gauge pressure drops to 11 atm and its temperature drops to 17 °C. Estimate the mass of oxygen taken out of the cylinder (R = 8.31 J mol^{-1} K^{-1}, molecular mass of O_2 = 32 u).

13.5 An air bubble of volume 1.0 cm^3 rises from the bottom of a lake 40 m deep at a temperature of 12 °C. To what volume does it grow when it reaches the surface, which is at a temperature of 35 °C ?

13.6 Estimate the total number of air molecules (inclusive of oxygen, nitrogen, water vapour and other constituents) in a room of capacity 25.0 m^3 at a temperature of 27 °C and 1 atm pressure.

13.7 Estimate the average thermal energy of a helium atom at (i) room temperature (27 °C), (ii) the temperature on the surface of the Sun (6000 K), (iii) the temperature of 10 million kelvin (the typical core temperature in the case of a star).

13.8 Three vessels of equal capacity have gases at the same temperature and pressure. The first vessel contains neon (monatomic), the second contains chlorine (diatomic), and the third contains uranium hexafluoride (polyatomic). Do the vessels contain equal number of respective molecules ? Is the root mean square speed of molecules the same in the three cases? If not, in which case is v_{rms} the largest ?

13.9 At what temperature is the root mean square speed of an atom in an argon gas cylinder equal to the rms speed of a helium gas atom at – 20 °C ? (atomic mass of Ar = 39.9 u, of He = 4.0 u).

13.10 Estimate the mean free path and collision frequency of a nitrogen molecule in a cylinder containing nitrogen at 2.0 atm and temperature 17 ^{0}C. Take the radius of a nitrogen molecule to be roughly 1.0 Å. Compare the collision time with the time the molecule moves freely between two successive collisions (Molecular mass of N_2 = 28.0 u).

Additional Exercises

13.11 A metre long narrow bore held horizontally (and closed at one end) contains a 76 cm long mercury thread, which traps a 15 cm column of air. What happens if the tube is held vertically with the open end at the bottom ?

13.12 From a certain apparatus, the diffusion rate of hydrogen has an average value of 28.7 $cm^3\ s^{-1}$. The diffusion of another gas under the same conditions is measured to have an average rate of 7.2 $cm^3\ s^{-1}$. Identify the gas.
[**Hint** : Use Graham's law of diffusion: $R_1/R_2 = (M_2/M_1)^{1/2}$, where R_1, R_2 are diffusion rates of gases 1 and 2, and M_1 and M_2 their respective molecular masses. The law is a simple consequence of kinetic theory.]

13.13 A gas in equilibrium has uniform density and pressure throughout its volume. This is strictly true only if there are no external influences. A gas column under gravity, for example, does not have uniform density (and pressure). As you might expect, its density decreases with height. The precise dependence is given by the so-called law of atmospheres

$$n_2 = n_1 \exp\left[-mg\,(h_2 - h_1)/\ k_B T\right]$$

where n_2, n_1 refer to number density at heights h_2 and h_1 respectively. Use this relation to derive the equation for sedimentation equilibrium of a suspension in a liquid column:

$$n_2 = n_1 \exp\left[-mg\, N_A\, (\rho - P')\,(h_2 - h_1)/\ (\rho\, RT)\right]$$

where ρ is the density of the suspended particle, and ρ' that of surrounding medium. [N_A is Avogadro's number, and R the universal gas constant.] [**Hint** : Use Archimedes principle to find the apparent weight of the suspended particle.]

13.14 Given below are densities of some solids and liquids. Give rough estimates of the size of their atoms :

Substance	Atomic Mass (u)	Density (10^3 Kg m^{-3})
Carbon (diamond)	12.01	2.22
Gold	197.00	19.32
Nitrogen (liquid)	14.01	1.00
Lithium	6.94	0.53
Fluorine (liquid)	19.00	1.14

[**Hint** : Assume the atoms to be 'tightly packed' in a solid or liquid phase, and use the known value of Avogadro's number. You should, however, not take the actual numbers you obtain for various atomic sizes too literally. Because of the crudeness of the tight packing approximation, the results only indicate that atomic sizes are in the range of a few Å].

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

OSCILLATIONS

14.1 INTRODUCTION

In our daily life we come across various kinds of motions. You have already learnt about some of them, e.g. rectilinear motion and motion of a projectile. Both these motions are non-repetitive. We have also learnt about uniform circular motion and orbital motion of planets in the solar system. In these cases, the motion is repeated after a certain interval of time, that is, it is periodic. In your childhood you must have enjoyed rocking in a cradle or swinging on a swing. Both these motions are repetitive in nature but different from the periodic motion of a planet. Here, the object moves to and fro about a mean position. The pendulum of a wall clock executes a similar motion. There are leaves and branches of a tree oscillating in breeze, boats bobbing at anchor and the surging pistons in the engines of cars. All these objects execute a periodic to and fro motion. Such a motion is termed as oscillatory motion. In this chapter we study this motion.

The study of oscillatory motion is basic to physics; its concepts are required for the understanding of many physical phenomena. In musical instruments like the sitar, the guitar or the violin, we come across vibrating strings that produce pleasing sounds. The membranes in drums and diaphragms in telephone and speaker systems vibrate to and fro about their mean positions. The vibrations of air molecules make the propagation of sound possible. Similarly, the atoms in a solid oscillate about their mean positions and convey the sensation of temperature. The oscillations of electrons in the antennas of radio, TV and satellite transmitters convey information.

The description of a periodic motion in general, and oscillatory motion in particular, requires some fundamental concepts like period, frequency, displacement, amplitude and phase. These concepts are developed in the next section.

14.2 PERIODIC AND OSCILLATORY MOTIONS

Fig 14.1 shows some periodic motions. Suppose an insect climbs up a ramp and falls down it comes back to the initial point and repeats the process identically. If you draw a graph of its height above the ground versus time, it would look something like Fig. 14.1 (a). If a child climbs up a step, comes down, and repeats the process, its height above the ground would look like that in Fig 14.1 (b). When you play the game of bouncing a ball off the ground, between your palm and the ground, its height versus time graph would look like the one in Fig 14.1 (c). Note that both the curved parts in Fig 14.1 (c) are sections of a parabola given by the Newton's equation of motion (see section 3.6),

$$h = ut + \frac{1}{2}gt^2 \quad \text{for downward motion, and}$$

$$h = ut - \frac{1}{2}gt^2 \quad \text{for upward motion,}$$

with different values of u in each case. These are examples of periodic motion. Thus, a motion that repeats itself at regular intervals of time is called **periodic motion.**

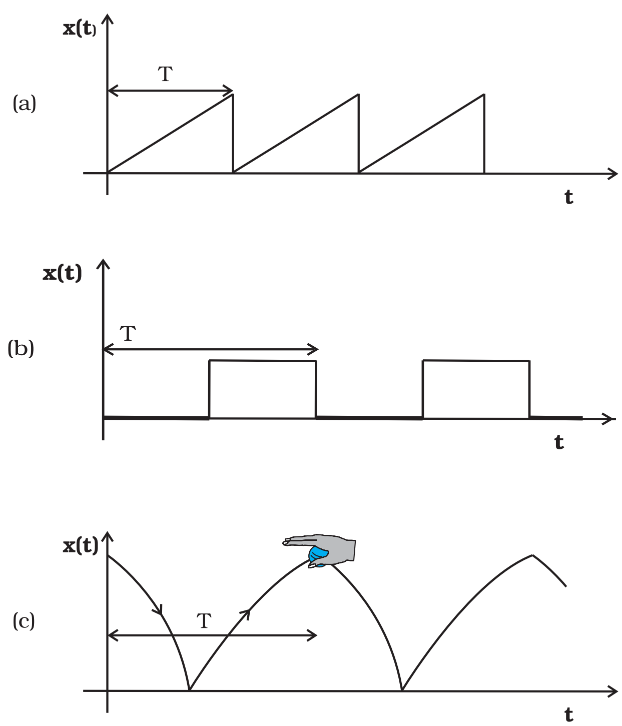


Fig 14.1 Examples of periodic motion. The period T is shown in each case.

Very often the body undergoing periodic motion has an equilibrium position somewhere inside its path. When the body is at this position no net external force acts on it. Therefore, if it is left there at rest, it remains there forever. If the body is given a small displacement from the position, a force comes into play which tries to bring the body back to the equilibrium point, giving rise to **oscillations** or **vibrations**. For example, a ball placed in a bowl will be in equilibrium at the bottom. If displaced a little from the point, it will perform oscillations in the bowl. Every oscillatory motion is periodic, but every periodic motion need not be oscillatory. Circular motion is a periodic motion, but it is not oscillatory.

There is no significant difference between oscillations and vibrations. It seems that when the frequency is small, we call it oscillation (like the oscillation of a branch of a tree), while when the frequency is high, we call it vibration (like the vibration of a string of a musical instrument).

Simple harmonic motion is the simplest form of oscillatory motion. This motion arises when the force on the oscillating body is directly proportional to its displacement from the mean position, which is also the equilibrium position. Further, at any point in its oscillation, this force is directed towards the mean position.

In practice, oscillating bodies eventually come to rest at their equilibrium positions, because of the damping due to friction and other dissipative causes. However, they can be forced to remain oscillating by means of some external periodic agency. We discuss the phenomena of damped and forced oscillations later in the chapter.

Any material medium can be pictured as a collection of a large number of coupled oscillators. The collective oscillations of the constituents of a medium manifest themselves as waves. Examples of waves include water waves, seismic waves, electromagnetic waves. We shall study the wave phenomenon in the next chapter.

14.2.1 Period and frequency

We have seen that any motion that repeats itself at regular intervals of time is called **periodic motion**. **The smallest interval of time after which the motion is repeated is called its period**. Let us denote the period by the symbol T. Its SI unit is second. For periodic motions, which are either too fast or too slow on the scale of seconds, other convenient units of time are used. The period of vibrations of a quartz crystal is expressed in units of microseconds (10^{-6} s) abbreviated as μs. On the other hand, the orbital period of the planet Mercury is 88 earth days. The Halley's comet appears after every 76 years.

The reciprocal of T gives the number of repetitions that occur per unit time. This quantity is called the **frequency of the periodic motion**. It is represented by the symbol ν. The relation between ν and T is

$$\nu = 1/T \qquad (14.1)$$

The unit of ν is thus s^{-1}. After the discoverer of radio waves, Heinrich Rudolph Hertz (1857-1894), a special name has been given to the unit of frequency. It is called hertz (abbreviated as Hz). Thus,

$$1 \text{ hertz} = 1 \text{ Hz} = 1 \text{ oscillation per second} = 1 s^{-1} \qquad (14.2)$$

Note, that the frequency, ν, is not necessarily an integer.

Example 14.1 On an average a human heart is found to beat 75 times in a minute. Calculate its frequency and period.

Answer The beat frequency of heart = 75/(1 min)
= 75/(60 s)
= 1.25 s^{-1}
= 1.25 Hz

The time period T = 1/(1.25 s^{-1})
= 0.8 s

14.2.2 Displacement

In section 4.2, we defined displacement of a particle as the change in its position vector. In this chapter, we use the term displacement in a more general sense. It refers to change with time of any physical property under consideration. For example, in case of rectilinear motion of a steel ball on a surface, the distance from the starting point as a function of time is its position displacement. The choice of origin is a matter of convenience. Consider a block attached to a spring, the other end of which is fixed to a rigid wall [see Fig.14.2(a)]. Generally it is convenient to measure displacement of the body from its equilibrium position. For an oscillating simple pendulum, the angle from the vertical as a function of time may be regarded as a displacement variable [see Fig.14.2(b)]. The term displacement is not always to be referred

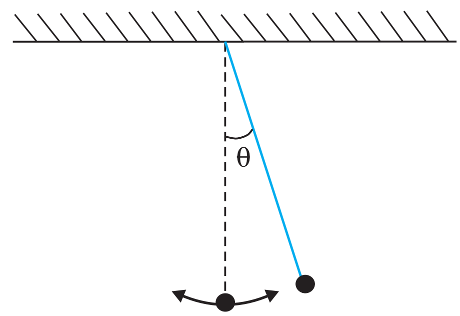


Fig.14.2(b) An oscillating simple pendulum; its motion can be described in terms of angular displacement θ from the vertical.

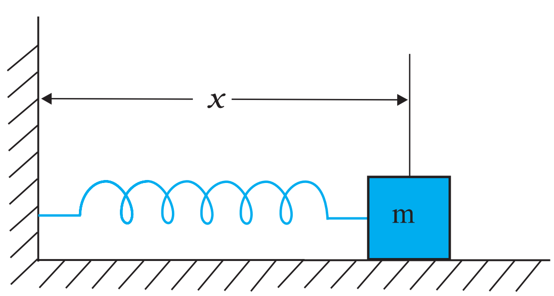


Fig. 14.2(a) A block attached to a spring, the other end of which is fixed to a rigid wall. The block moves on a frictionless surface. The motion of the block can be described in terms of its distance or displacement x from the wall.

in the context of position only. There can be many other kinds of displacement variables. The voltage across a capacitor, changing with time in an a.c. circuit, is also a displacement variable. In the same way, pressure variations in time in the propagation of sound wave, the changing electric and magnetic fields in a light wave are examples of displacement in different contexts. The displacement variable may take both positive and negative values. In experiments on oscillations, the displacement is measured for different times.

The displacement can be represented by a mathematical function of time. In case of periodic motion, this function is periodic in time. One of the simplest periodic functions is given by

$$f(t) = A \cos \omega t \qquad (14.3a)$$

If the argument of this function, ωt, is increased by an integral multiple of 2π radians, the value of the function remains the same. The function $f(t)$ is then periodic and its period, T, is given by

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \qquad (14.3b)$$

Thus, the function $f(t)$ is periodic with period T,

$$f(t) = f(t+T)$$

The same result is obviously correct if we consider a sine function, $f(t) = A \sin \omega t$. Further, a linear combination of sine and cosine functions like,

$$f(t) = A \sin \omega t + B \cos \omega t \qquad (14.3c)$$

is also a periodic function with the same period T. Taking,

$$A = D \cos \phi \ \ and \ \ B = D \sin \phi$$

Eq. (14.3c) can be written as,

$$f(t) = D \sin (\omega t + \phi) \ , \qquad (14.3d)$$

Here D and ϕ are constant given by

$$D = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2} \ \text{and} \qquad \tan^{-1} \frac{B}{A}$$

The great importance of periodic sine and cosine functions is due to a remarkable result proved by the French mathematician, Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768-1830): **Any periodic function can be expressed as a superposition of sine and cosine functions of different time periods with suitable coefficients**.

Example 14.2 Which of the following functions of time represent (a) periodic and (b) non-periodic motion? Give the period for each case of periodic motion [ω is any positive constant].

(i) $\sin \omega t + \cos \omega t$
(ii) $\sin \omega t + \cos 2 \omega t + \sin 4 \omega t$
(iii) $e^{-\omega t}$
(iv) $\log (\omega t)$

Answer

(i) $\sin \omega t + \cos \omega t$ is a periodic function, it can also be written as $\sqrt{2} \sin (\omega t + \pi/4)$.

Now $\sqrt{2} \sin (\omega t + \pi/4) = \sqrt{2} \sin (\omega t + \pi/4 + 2\pi)$

$= \sqrt{2} \sin [\omega(t + 2\pi/\omega) + \pi/4]$

The periodic time of the function is $2\pi/\omega$

(ii) This is an example of a periodic motion. It can be noted that each term represents a periodic function with a different angular frequency. Since period is the least interval of time after which a function repeats its value, $\sin \omega t$ has a period $T_0 = 2\pi/\omega$; $\cos 2 \omega t$ has a period $\pi/\omega = T_0/2$; and $\sin 4 \omega t$ has a period $2\pi/4\omega = T_0/4$. The period of the first term is a multiple of the periods of the last two terms. Therefore, the smallest interval of time after which the sum of the three terms repeats is T_0, and thus the sum is a periodic function with a period $2\pi/\omega$

(iii) The function $e^{-\omega t}$ is not periodic, it decreases monotonically with increasing time and tends to zero as $t \rightarrow \infty$ and thus, never repeats its value.

(iv) The function $\log(\omega t)$ increases monotonically with time t. It, therefore, never repeats its value and is a non-periodic function. It may be noted that as $t \rightarrow \infty$, $\log(\omega t)$ diverges to ∞. It, therefore, cannot represent any kind of physical displacement.

14.3 SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

Let us consider a particle vibrating back and forth about the origin of an x-axis between the limits $+A$ and $-A$ as shown in Fig. 14.3. In between these extreme positions the particle

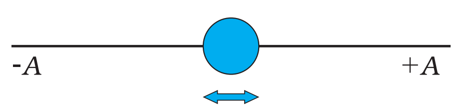


Fig. 14.3 *A particle vibrating back and forth about the origin of x-axis, between the limits +A and –A.*

moves in such a manner that its speed is maximum when it is at the origin and zero when it is at $\pm A$. The time t is chosen to be zero when the particle is at $+A$ and it returns to $+A$ at $t = T$. In this section we will describe this motion. Later, we shall discuss how to achieve it. To study the motion of this particle, we record its positions as a function of time by taking 'snapshots' at regular intervals of time. A set of such snapshots is shown in Fig. 14.4. The position of the particle with reference to the origin gives its displacement at any instant of time. For such a motion the displacement $x(t)$ of the particle from a certain chosen origin is found to vary with time as,

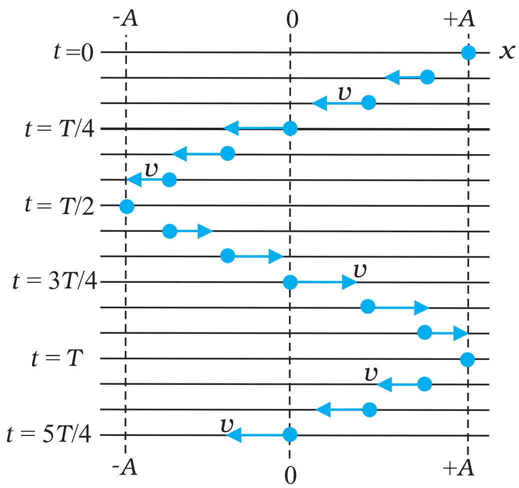


Fig. 14.4 *A sequence of 'snapshots' (taken at equal intervals of time) showing the position of a particle as it oscillates back and forth about the origin along an x-axis, between the limits +A and –A. The length of the vector arrows is scaled to indicate the speed of the particle. The speed is maximum when the particle is at the origin and zero when it is at ± A. If the time t is chosen to be zero when the particle is at +A, then the particle returns to +A at t = T, where T is the period of the motion. The motion is then repeated. It is represented by Eq. (14.4) for ϕ = 0.*

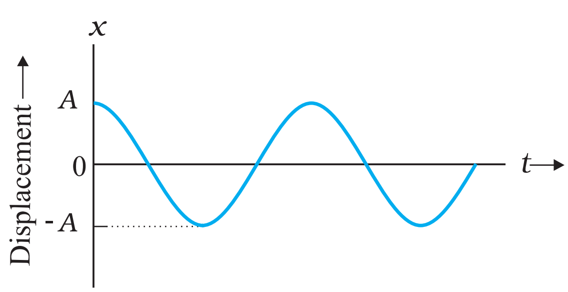


Fig. 14.5 *A graph of x as a function of time for the motion represented by Eq. (14.4).*

$$x\,(t) \;= A \cos\,(\omega t + \phi) \qquad (14.4)$$

in which A, ω and ϕ are constants.

$$\underset{\text{Displacement}}{x(t)} = \underset{\text{Amplitude}}{A} \cos\,(\overbrace{\underset{\text{Angular frequency}}{\omega t} + \underset{\text{Phase constant}}{\phi}}^{\text{Phase}})$$

Fig. 14.6 *A reference of the quantities in Eq. (14.4).*

The motion represented by Eq. (14.4) is called **simple harmonic motion** (SHM); a term that means the periodic motion is a sinusoidal function of time. Equation (14.4), in which the sinusoidal function is a cosine function, is plotted in Fig. 14.5. The quantities that determine

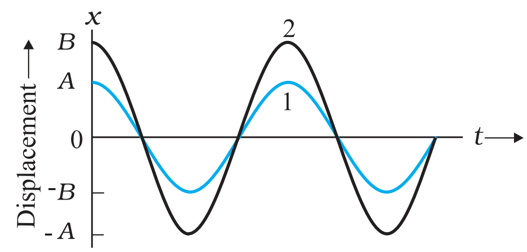


Fig. 14.7 (a) *A plot of displacement as a function of time as obtained from Eq. (14.4) with ϕ = 0. The curves 1 and 2 are for two different amplitudes A and B.*

the shape of the graph are displayed in Fig. 14.6 along with their names.

We shall now define these quantities.

The quantity A is called the **amplitude** of the motion. It is a positive constant which represents the magnitude of the maximum displacement of the particle in either direction. The cosine function in Eq. (14.4) varies between the limits ±1, so the displacement $x(t)$ varies between the limits ± A. In Fig. 14.7 (a), the curves 1 and 2 are plots of Eq. (14.4) for two different amplitudes A and B. The difference between these curves illustrates the significance of amplitude.

The time varying quantity, $(\omega t + \phi)$, in Eq. (14.4) is called the **phase** of the motion. It describes the state of motion at a given time. The constant ϕ is called the **phase constant** (or **phase angle**). The value of ϕ depends on the displacement and velocity of the particle at t = 0. This can be understood better by considering Fig. 14.7(b). In this figure, the curves 3 and 4 represent plots of Eq. (14.4) for two values of the phase constant ϕ.

It can be seen that the phase constant signifies the initial conditions.

The constant ω, called the angular frequency of the motion, is related to the period T. To get

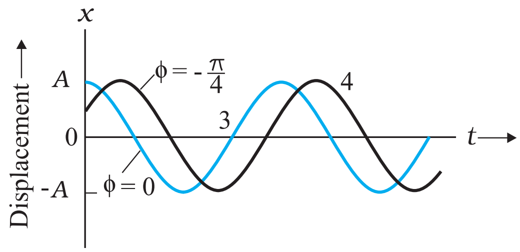


Fig. 14.7 (b) *A plot obtained from Eq. 14.4. The curves 3 and 4 are for ϕ = 0 and -π/4 respectively. The amplitude A is same for both the plots.*

their relationship, let us consider Eq. (14.4) with ϕ = 0; it then reduces to,

$$x(t) = A \cos \omega t \qquad (14.5)$$

Now since the motion is periodic with a period T, the displacement $x(t)$ must return to its initial value after one period of the motion; that is, **$x(t)$ must be equal to $x(t + T)$** for all t. Applying this condition to Eq. (14.5) leads to,

$$A \cos \omega t = A \cos \omega(t + T) \qquad (14.6)$$

As the cosine function first repeats itself when its argument (the phase) has increased by 2π, Eq. (14.6) gives,

$$\omega(t + T) = \omega t + 2\pi$$

or $$\omega T = 2\pi$$

Thus, the angular frequency is,

$$\omega = 2\pi/ T \qquad (14.7)$$

The SI unit of angular frequency is radians per second. To illustrate the significance of period T, sinusoidal functions with two different periods are plotted in Fig. 14.8.

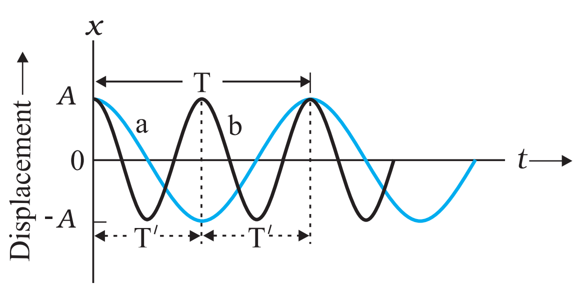


Fig. 14.8 *Plots of Eq. (14.4) for ϕ = 0 for two different periods.*

In this plot the SHM represented by curve a, has a period T and that represented by curve b, has a period T'=T/2.

We have had an introduction to simple harmonic motion. In the next section we will discuss the simplest example of simple harmonic motion. It will be shown that the projection of uniform circular motion on a diameter of the circle executes simple harmonic motion.

Example 14.3 Which of the following functions of time represent (a) simple harmonic motion and (b) periodic but not simple harmonic? Give the period for each case.
(1) $\sin \omega t - \cos \omega t$
(2) $\sin^2 \omega t$

Answer
(a) $\sin \omega t - \cos \omega t$

$$= \sin \omega t - \sin (\pi/2 - \omega t)$$
$$= 2 \cos (\pi/4) \sin (\omega t - \pi/4)$$
$$= \sqrt{2} \sin (\omega t - \pi/4)$$

This function represents a simple harmonic motion having a period $T = 2\pi/\omega$ and a phase angle $(-\pi/4)$ or $(7\pi/4)$

(b) $\sin^2 \omega t$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2} \cos 2\omega t$$

The function is periodic having a period $T = \pi/\omega$ It also represents a harmonic motion with the point of equilibrium occurring at ½ instead of zero.

14.4 SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION AND UNIFORM CIRCULAR MOTION

In 1610, Galileo discovered four principal moons of the planet Jupiter. To him, each moon seemed to move back and forth relative to the planet in a simple harmonic motion; the disc of the planet forming the mid point of the motion. The record of his observations, written in his own hand, is still available. Based on his data, the position of the moon Callisto relative to Jupiter is plotted in Fig. 14.9. In this figure, the circles represent Galileo's data points and the curve drawn is a best fit to the data. The curve obeys Eq. (14.4), which is the displacement function for SHM. It gives a period of about 16.8 days.

It is now well known that Callisto moves with essentially a constant speed in an almost circular orbit around Jupiter. Its true motion is uniform circular motion. What Galileo saw and what we can also see, with a good pair of binoculars, is the projection of this uniform circular motion on a line in the plane of motion. This can easily be visualised by performing a

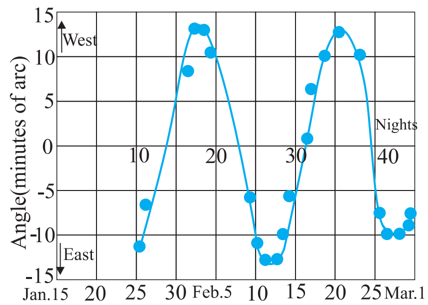


Fig. 14.9 *The angle between Jupiter and its moon Callisto as seen from earth. The circles are based on Galileo's measurements of 1610. The curve is a best fit suggesting a simple harmonic motion. At Jupiter's mean distance, 10 minutes of arc corresponds to about 2×10^6 km.*

simple experiment. Tie a ball to the end of a string and make it move in a horizontal plane about a fixed point with a constant angular speed. The ball would then perform a uniform circular motion in the horizontal plane. Observe the ball sideways or from the front, fixing your attention in the plane of motion. The ball will appear to execute to and fro motion along a horizontal line with the point of rotation as the midpoint. You could alternatively observe the shadow of the ball on a wall which is perpendicular to the plane of the circle. In this process what we are observing is the motion of the ball on a diameter of the circle normal to the direction of viewing. This experiment provides an analogy to Galileo's observation.

In Fig. 14.10, we show the motion of a **reference particle** P executing a uniform circular motion with (constant) angular speed ω in a **reference circle**. The radius A of the circle is the magnitude of the particle's position vector. At any time t, the angular position of the particle

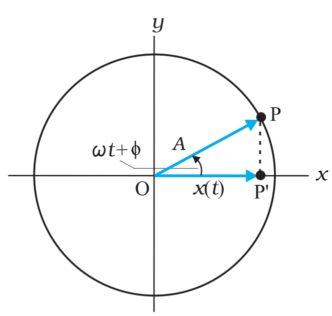


Fig. 14.10 *The motion of a reference particle P executing a uniform circular motion with (constant) angular speed ω in a reference circle of radius A.*

is $\omega t + \phi$, where ϕ is its angular position at $t = 0$. The projection of particle P on the x-axis is a point P′, which we can take as a second particle. The projection of the position vector of particle P on the x-axis gives the location $x(t)$ of P′. Thus we have,

$$x(t) = A \cos (\omega t + \phi)$$

which is the same as Eq. (14.4). This shows that if the reference particle P moves in a uniform circular motion, its projection particle P′ executes a simple harmonic motion along a diameter of the circle.

From Galileo's observation and the above considerations, we are led to the conclusion that circular motion viewed edge-on is simple harmonic motion. In a more formal language we can say that : **Simple harmonic motion is the projection of uniform circular motion on a diameter of the circle in which the latter motion takes place**.

Example 14.4 Fig. 14.11 depicts two circular motions. The radius of the circle, the period of revolution, the initial position and the sense of revolution are indicated on the figures. Obtain the simple harmonic motions of the x-projection of the radius vector of the rotating particle P in each case.

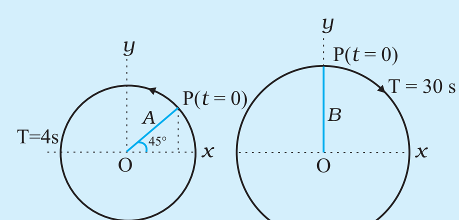


Fig. 14.11

Answer

(a) At $t = 0$, OP makes an angle of $45^\circ = \pi/4$ rad with the (positive direction of) x-axis. After time t, it covers an angle $\frac{2\pi}{T}t$ in the anticlockwise sense, and makes an angle of $\frac{2\pi}{T}t + \frac{\pi}{4}$ with the x-axis.

The projection of OP on the x-axis at time t is given by,

$$x(t) = A\cos\left(\frac{2}{T}t + \frac{}{4}\right)$$

For $T = 4$ s,

$$x(t) = A\cos\ \frac{2}{4}t + \frac{}{4}$$

which is a SHM of amplitude A, period 4 s, and an initial phase* $= \frac{}{4}$.

(b) In this case at $t = 0$, OP makes an angle of $90^o = \frac{}{2}$ with the x-axis. After a time t, it covers an angle of $\frac{2}{T}t$ in the clockwise sense and makes an angle of $\frac{}{2} - \frac{2}{T}t$ with the x-axis. The projection of OP on the x-axis at time t is given by

$$x(t) = B\cos\ \frac{}{2} - \frac{2}{T}t$$

$$= B\sin\left(\frac{2}{T}t\right)$$

For $T = 30$ s,

$$x(t) = B\sin\ \frac{}{15}t$$

Writing this as $x(t) = B\cos\ \frac{}{15}t - \frac{}{2}$, and comparing with Eq. (14.4). We find that this represents a SHM of amplitude B, period 30 s, and an initial phase of $\frac{}{2}$. ◀

14.5 VELOCITY AND ACCELERATION IN SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

It can be seen easily that the magnitude of velocity, **v**, with which the reference particle P (Fig. 14.10) is moving in a circle is related to its angular speed, ω, as

$$v = \omega A \qquad (14.8)$$

where A is the radius of the circle described by the particle P. The magnitude of the velocity vector **v** of the projection particle is ωA; its projection on the x-axis at any time t, as shown in Fig. 14.12, is

$$v(t) = -\omega A\sin(\omega t + \phi) \qquad (14.9)$$

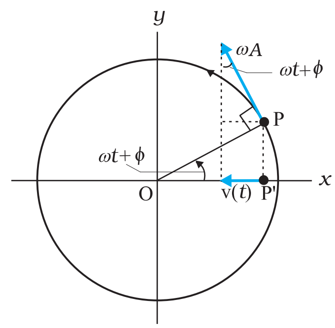


Fig. 14.12 *The velocity, v (t), of the particle P′ is the projection of the velocity v of the reference particle, P.*

The negative sign appears because the velocity component of P is directed towards the left, in the negative direction of x. Equation (14.9) expresses the instantaneous velocity of the particle P′ (projection of P). Therefore, **it expresses the instantaneous velocity of a particle executing SHM.** Equation (14.9) can also be obtained by differentiating Eq. (14.4) with respect to time as,

$$v(t) = \frac{d}{dt}x(t) \qquad (14.10)$$

* *The natural unit of angle is radian, defined through the ratio of arc to radius. Angle is a dimensionless quantity. Therefore it is not always necessary to mention the unit 'radian' when we use π, its multiples or submultiples. The conversion between radian and degree is not similar to that between metre and centimetre or mile. If the argument of a trigonometric function is stated without units, it is understood that the unit is radian. On the other hand, if degree is to be used as the unit of angle, then it must be shown explicitly. For example, sin(15°) means sine of 15 degree, but sin(15) means sine of 15 radians. Hereafter, we will often drop 'rad' as the unit, and it should be understood that whenever angle is mentioned as a numerical value, without units, it is to be taken as radians.*

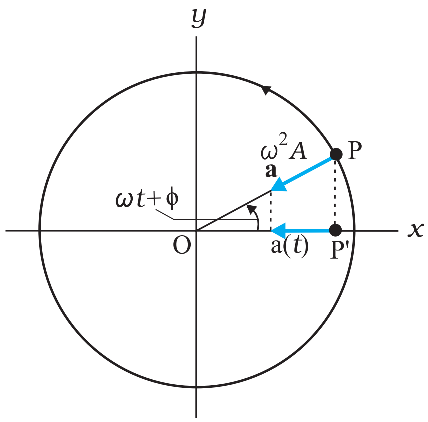


Fig. 14.13 *The acceleration, a(t), of the particle P′ is the projection of the acceleration* **a** *of the reference particle P.*

We have seen that a particle executing a uniform circular motion is subjected to a radial acceleration **a** directed towards the centre. Figure 14.13 shows such a radial acceleration, **a**, of the reference particle P executing uniform circular motion. The magnitude of the radial acceleration of P is $\omega^2 A$. Its projection on the x-axis at any time t is,

$$a\,(t) = -\omega^2 A \cos\,(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$= -\omega^2 x\,(t) \qquad (14.11)$$

which is the acceleration of the particle P′ (the projection of particle P). Equation (14.11), therefore, represents the instantaneous acceleration of the particle P′, which is executing **SHM**. Thus Eq. (14.11) **expresses the acceleration of a particle executing SHM**. It is an important result for *SHM*. It shows that in **SHM**, **the acceleration is proportional to the displacement and is always directed towards the mean position**. Eq. (14.11) can also be obtained by differentiating Eq. (14.9) with respect to time as,

$$a(t) = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\,\upsilon(t) \qquad (14.12)$$

The inter-relationship between the displacement of a particle executing simple harmonic motion, its velocity and acceleration can be seen in Fig. 14.14. In this figure (a) is a plot of Eq. (14.4) with $\phi = 0$ and (b) depicts Eq. (14.9) also with $\phi = 0$. Similar to the amplitude A in Eq. (14.4), the positive quantity ωA in Eq. (14.9) is called the **velocity amplitude** υ_m. In Fig. 14.14(b), it can be seen that the velocity of the oscillating particle varies between the limits $\pm\,\upsilon_m = \pm\,\omega A$. Note that the curve of $\upsilon(t)$ is shifted (to the left) from the curve of $x(t)$ by one quarter period and thus the particle velocity lags behind the displacement by a phase angle of $\pi/2$; when the magnitude of displacement is the greatest, the magnitude of the velocity is the least. When the magnitude of displacement is the least, the velocity is the greatest. Figure14.14(c) depicts the variation of the particle acceleration $a(t)$. It is seen that when the displacement has its greatest positive value, the acceleration has its greatest negative value and vice versa. When the displacement is zero, the acceleration is also zero.

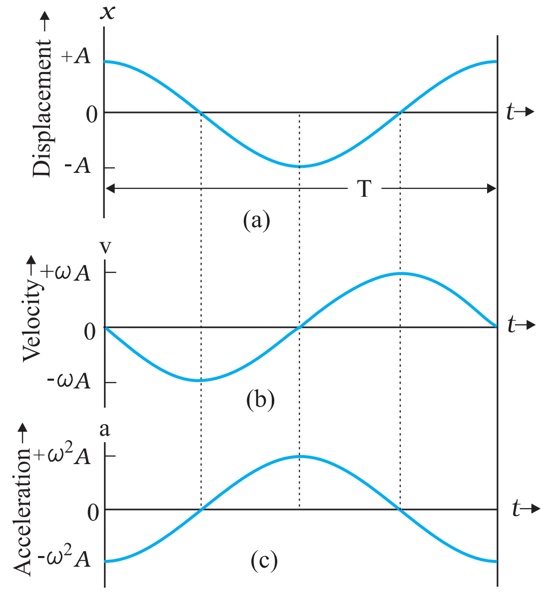


Fig. 14.14 *The particle displacement, velocity and acceleration in a simple harmonic motion. (a) The displacement x (t) of a particle executing SHM with phase angle ϕ equal to zero. (b) The velocity υ (t) of the particle. (c) The acceleration a (t) of the particle.*

▶ ***Example 14.5*** A body oscillates with SHM according to the equation (in SI units),

$$x = 5\cos\,[2\pi\, t + \pi/4].$$

At $t = 1.5$ s, calculate the (a) displacement, (b) speed and (c) acceleration of the body.

Answer The angular frequency ω of the body $= 2\pi\ \mathrm{s}^{-1}$ and its time period $T = 1$ s.

At $t = 1.5$ s

(a) displacement $= (5.0\ \mathrm{m})\cos\,[(2\pi\ \mathrm{s}^{-1}) \times 1.5\ \mathrm{s} + \pi/4]$

$= (5.0 \text{ m}) \cos [(3\pi + \pi/4)]$
$= -5.0 \times 0.707 \text{ m}$
$= -3.535 \text{ m}$

(b) Using Eq. (14.9), the speed of the body
$= -\ (5.0 \text{ m})(2\pi \text{ s}^{-1}) \sin [(2\pi \text{ s}^{-1}) \times 1.5 \text{ s} + \pi/4]$
$= -\ (5.0 \text{ m})(2\pi \text{ s}^{-1}) \sin [(3\pi + \pi/4)]$
$= 10\pi \times 0.707 \text{ m s}^{-1}$
$= 22 \text{ m s}^{-1}$

(c) Using Eq.(14.10), the acceleration of the body
$= -(2\pi \text{ s}^{-1})^2 \times \text{displacement}$
$= -\ (2\pi \text{ s}^{-1})^2 \times (-3.535 \text{ m})$
$= 140 \text{ m s}^{-2}$ ◀

14.6 FORCE LAW FOR SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

In Section14.3, we described the simple harmonic motion. Now we discuss how it can be generated. Newton's second law of motion relates the force acting on a system and the corresponding acceleration produced. Therefore, if we know how the acceleration of a particle varies with time, this law can be used to learn about the force, which must act on the particle to give it that acceleration. If we combine Newton's second law and Eq. (14.11), we find that for simple harmonic motion,

$$F(t) = ma$$
$$= -m\omega^2 x(t)$$

or $$F(t) = -k\,x(t) \qquad (14.13)$$

where $$k = m\omega^2 \qquad (14.14a)$$

or

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \qquad (14.14b)$$

Equation (14.13) gives the force acting on the particle. It is proportional to the displacement and directed in an opposite direction. Therefore, it is a restoring force. Note that unlike the centripetal force for uniform circular motion that is constant in magnitude, the restoring force for SHM is time dependent. The force law expressed by Eq. (14.13) can be taken as an alternative definition of simple harmonic motion. It states : **Simple harmonic motion is the motion executed by a particle subject to a force, which is proportional to the displacement of the particle and is directed towards the mean position.**

Since the force F is proportional to x rather than to some other power of x, such a system is also referred to as a **linear harmonic oscillator**. Systems in which the restoring force is a non-linear function of x are termed as non-linear harmonic or anharmonic oscillators.

▶ ***Example 14.6*** Two identical springs of spring constant k are attached to a block of mass m and to fixed supports as shown in Fig. 14.15. Show that when the mass is displaced from its equilibrium position on either side, it executes a simple harmonic motion. Find the period of oscillations.

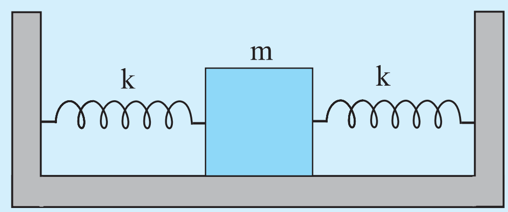


Fig. 14.15

Answer Let the mass be displaced by a small distance x to the right side of the equilibrium position, as shown in Fig. 14.16. Under this situation the spring on the left side gets

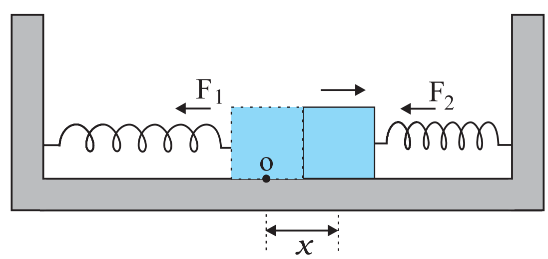


Fig. 14.16

elongated by a length equal to x and that on the right side gets compressed by the same length. The forces acting on the mass are then,

$F_1 = -k\,x$ (force exerted by the spring on the left side, trying to pull the mass towards the mean position)

$F_2 = -k\,x$ (force exerted by the spring on the right side, trying to push the mass towards the mean position)

The net force, F, acting on the mass is then given by,

$$F = -2kx$$

Hence the force acting on the mass is proportional to the displacement and is directed towards the mean position; therefore, the motion executed by the mass is simple harmonic. The time period of oscillations is,

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{2k}}$$ ◀

14.7 ENERGY IN SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

A particle executing simple harmonic motion has kinetic and potential energies, both varying between the limits, zero and maximum.

In section 14.5 we have seen that the velocity of a particle executing SHM, is a periodic function of time. It is zero at the extreme positions of displacement. Therefore, the kinetic energy (K) of such a particle, which is defined as

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}m\,\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2 \sin^2(\omega t + \phi) \qquad (14.15)$$

is also a periodic function of time, being zero when the displacement is maximum and maximum when the particle is at the mean position. Note, since the sign of v is immaterial in K, the period of K is $T/2$.

What is the potential energy (PE) of a particle executing simple harmonic motion ? In Chapter 6, we have seen that the concept of potential energy is possible only for conservative forces. The spring force $F = -kx$ is a conservative force, with associated potential energy

$$U = \frac{1}{2}k\,x^2 \qquad 14.16)$$

Hence the potential energy of a particle executing simple harmonic motion is,

$$U(x) = \frac{1}{2}k\,x^2$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2 \cos^2(\omega t + \phi) \qquad (14.17)$$

Thus the potential energy of a particle executing simple harmonic motion is also periodic, with period $T/2$, being zero at the mean position and maximum at the extreme displacements.

It follows from Eqs. (14.15) and (14.17) that the total energy, E, of the system is,

$$E = U + K$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2 \cos^2(\omega t + \phi) + \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2 \sin^2(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2 \left[\cos^2(\omega t + \phi) + \sin^2(\omega t + \phi)\right]$$

The quantity within the square brackets above is unity and we have,

$$E = \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2 \qquad (14.18)$$

The total mechanical energy of a harmonic oscillator is thus independent of time as expected for motion under any conservative force. The time and displacement dependence of the potential and kinetic energies of a linear simple harmonic oscillator are shown in Fig. 14.17.

It is observed that in a linear harmonic oscillator, all energies are positive and peak twice during every period. For $x = 0$, the energy is all kinetic and for $x = \pm A$ it is all potential.

In between these extreme positions, the potential energy increases at the expense of kinetic energy. This behaviour of a linear harmonic oscillator suggests that it possesses an element of springiness and an element of inertia. The former stores its potential energy and the latter stores its kinetic energy.

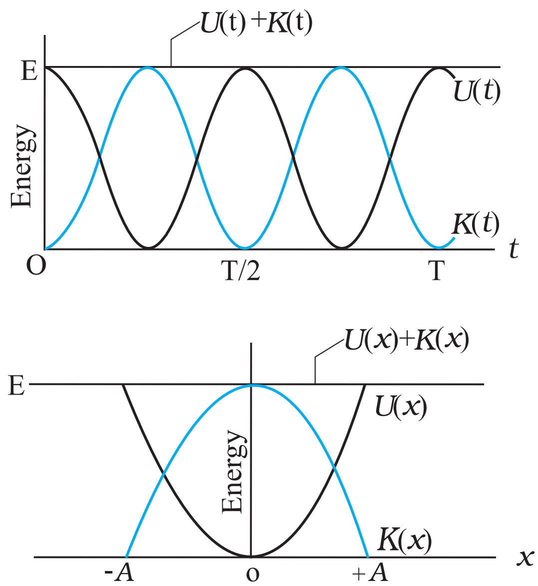


Fig. 14.17 *(a) Potential energy U(t), kinetic energy K(t) and the total energy E as functions of time t for a linear harmonic oscillator. All energies are positive and the potential and kinetic energies peak twice in every period of the oscillator. (b) Potential energy U(x), kinetic energy K(x) and the total energy E as functions of position x for a linear harmonic oscillator with amplitude A. For x = 0, the energy is all kinetic and for x = ± A it is all potential.*

▶ **Example 14.7** A block whose mass is 1 kg is fastened to a spring. The spring has a spring constant of 50 N m^{-1}. The block is pulled to a distance x = 10 cm from its equilibrium position at x = 0 on a frictionless surface from rest at t = 0. Calculate the kinetic, potential and total energies of the block when it is 5 cm away from the mean position.

Answer The block executes SHM, its angular frequency, as given by Eq. (14.14b), is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{50 \text{ N m}^{-1}}{1\text{kg}}}$$

= 7.07 rad s^{-1}

Its displacement at any time t is then given by,

$x(t)$ = 0.1 cos (7.07t)

Therefore, when the particle is 5 cm away from the mean position, we have

0.05 = 0.1 cos (7.07t)

Or cos (7.07t) = 0.5 and hence

$$\sin(7.07t) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} = 0.866,$$

Then the velocity of the block at x = 5 cm is

= 0.1 × 7.07 × 0.866 m s^{-1}

= 0.61 m s^{-1}

Hence the K.E. of the block,

$$= \frac{1}{2} m v^2$$

= ½[1kg × (0.6123 m s^{-1})^2]

= 0.19 J

The P.E. of the block,

$$= \frac{1}{2} k x^2$$

= ½(50 N m^{-1} × 0.05 m × 0.05 m)

= 0.0625 J

The total energy of the block at x = 5 cm,

= K.E. + P.E.

= 0.25 J

we also know that at maximum displacement, K.E. is zero and hence the total energy of the system is equal to the P.E. Therefore, the total energy of the system,

= ½(50 N m^{-1} × 0.1 m × 0.1 m)

= 0.25 J

which is same as the sum of the two energies at a displacement of 5 cm. This is in conformity with the principle of conservation of energy. ◀

14.8 SOME SYSTEMS EXECUTING SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

There are no physical examples of absolutely pure **simple harmonic motion**. In practice we come across systems that execute simple harmonic motion approximately under certain conditions. In the subsequent part of this section, we discuss the motion executed by some such systems.

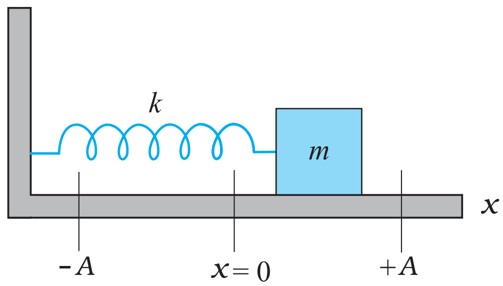


Fig. 14.18 *A linear simple harmonic oscillator consisting of a block of mass m attached to a spring. The block moves over a frictionless surface. Once pulled to the side and released, it executes simple harmonic motion.*

14.8.1 Oscillations due to a Spring

The simplest observable example of simple harmonic motion is the small oscillations of a block of mass m fixed to a spring, which in turn is fixed to a rigid wall as shown in Fig. 14.18. The block is placed on a frictionless horizontal surface. If the block is pulled on one side and is released, it then executes a to and fro motion about a mean position. Let $x = 0$, indicate the position of the centre of the block when the spring is in equilibrium. The positions marked as $-A$ and $+A$ indicate the maximum displacements to the left and the right of the mean position. We have already learnt that springs have special properties, which were first discovered by the English physicist Robert Hooke. He had shown that such a system when deformed, is subject to a restoring force, the magnitude of which is proportional to the deformation or the displacement and acts in opposite direction. This is known as Hooke's law (Chapter 9). It holds good for displacements small in comparison to the length of the spring. At any time t, if the displacement of the block from its mean position is x, the restoring force F acting on the block is,

$$F(x) = -k\,x \qquad (14.19)$$

The constant of proportionality, k, is called the spring constant, its value is governed by the elastic properties of the spring. A stiff spring has large k and a soft spring has small k. Equation (14.19) is same as the force law for SHM and therefore the system executes a simple harmonic motion. From Eq. (14.14) we have,

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \qquad (14.20)$$

and the period, T, of the oscillator is given by,

$$T = 2\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \qquad (14.21)$$

Equations (14.20) and (14.21) tell us that a large angular frequency and hence a small period is associated with a stiff spring (high k) and a light block (small m).

Example 14.8 A 5 kg collar is attached to a spring of spring constant 500 N m^{-1}. It slides without friction over a horizontal rod. The collar is displaced from its equilibrium position by 10.0 cm and released. Calculate
(a) the period of oscillation,
(b) the maximum speed and
(c) maximum acceleration of the collar.

Answer (a) The period of oscillation as given by Eq. (14.21) is,

$$T = 2\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

$$= 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{5.0\text{ kg}}{500\text{ N m}^{-1}}}$$

$$= (2\pi/10)\text{ s}$$

$$= 0.63\text{ s}$$

(b) The velocity of the collar executing SHM is given by,

$$v(t) = -A\omega \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

The maximum speed is given by,

$$v_m = A\omega$$

$$= 0.1 \times \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$$

$$= 0.1 \times \sqrt{\frac{500\text{ N m}^{-1}}{5\text{ kg}}}$$

$$= 1\text{ m s}^{-1}$$

and it occurs at $x = 0$

(c) The acceleration of the collar at the displacement $x(t)$ from the equilibrium is given by,

$$a(t) = -\omega^2 x(t)$$

$$= -\frac{k}{m}\,x(t)$$

Therefore the maximum acceleration is,

$$a_{max} = \omega^2 A$$

$$= \frac{500 \text{ N m}^{-1}}{5 \text{ kg}} \times 0.1 \text{ m}$$

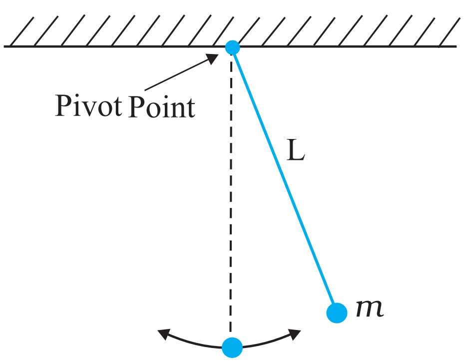
$$= 10 \text{ m s}^{-2}$$

and it occurs at the extremities. ◀

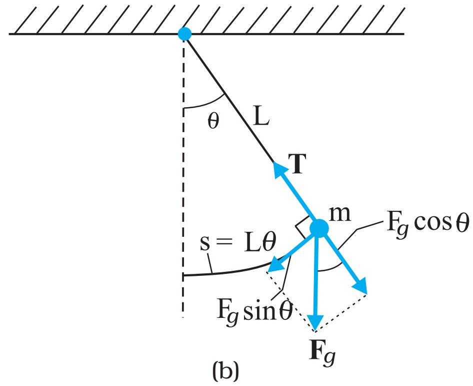
14.8.2 The Simple Pendulum

It is said that Galileo measured the periods of a swinging chandelier in a church by his pulse beats. He observed that the motion of the chandelier was periodic. The system is a kind of pendulum. You can also make your own pendulum by tying a piece of stone to a long unstretchable thread, approximately 100 cm long. Suspend your pendulum from a suitable support so that it is free to oscillate. Displace the stone to one side by a small distance and let it go. The stone executes a to and fro motion, it is periodic with a period of about two seconds. Is this motion simple harmonic ? To answer this question, we consider a **simple pendulum**, which consists of a particle of mass m (called the bob of the pendulum) suspended from one end of an unstretchable, massless string of length L fixed at the other end as shown in Fig. 14.19(a). The bob is free to swing to and fro in the plane of the page, to the left and right of a vertical line through the pivot point.

The forces acting on the bob are the force **T**, tension in the string and the gravitational force $\mathbf{F_g}$ (= $m\,\mathbf{g}$), as shown in Fig. 14.19(b). The string makes an angle θ with the vertical. We resolve the force $\mathbf{F_g}$ into a radial component $F_g \cos\theta$ and a tangential component $F_g \sin\theta$. The radial component is cancelled by the tension, since there is no motion along the length of the string. The tangential component produces a restoring torque about the pendulum's pivot point. This



(a)



(b)

Fig. 14.19 *(a) A simple pendulum. (b) The forces acting on the bob are the force due to gravity, F_g (= m g), and the tension T in the string. (b) The tangential component F_g of the gravitational force is a restoring force that tends to bring the pendulum back to the central position.*

torque always acts opposite to the displacement of the bob so as to bring it back towards its central location. The central location is called the **equilibrium position** (θ = 0), because at this position the pendulum would be at rest if it were not swinging.

The restoring torque τ is given by,

$$\tau = -L(F_g \sin\theta) \tag{14.22}$$

where the negative sign indicates that the torque acts to reduce θ, and L is the length of the moment arm of the force $F_g \sin\theta$ about the pivot point. For rotational motion we have,

$$\tau = I\alpha \tag{14.23}$$

where I is the pendulum's rotational inertia about the pivot point and α is its angular acceleration about that point. From Eqs. (14.22) and (14.23) we have,

$$-L(F_g \sin\theta) = I\alpha \tag{14.24}$$

Substituting the magnitude of F_g, i.e. mg, we have,

$$-L\,m\,g \sin\theta = I\alpha$$

Or,

$$\alpha = \frac{m\,g\,L}{I} \sin \tag{14.25}$$

We can simplify Eq. (14.25) if we assume that the displacement θ is small. We know that $\sin\theta$ can be expressed as,

$$\sin \qquad \frac{}{3!} \quad \frac{}{5!} \pm \ldots \tag{14.26}$$

where θ is in radians.

Now if θ is small, $\sin\theta$ can be approximated by θ and Eq. (14.25) can then be written as,

$$\alpha = -\frac{mgL}{I}\,\theta \qquad (14.27)$$

In Table 14.1, we have listed the angle θ in degrees, its equivalent in radians, and the value of the function $\sin\theta$. From this table it can be seen that for θ as large as 20 degrees, $\sin\theta$ is nearly the same as θ **expressed in radians**.

Table 14.1 **sin θ as a function of angle θ**

θ (degrees)	θ (radians)	sin θ
0	0	0
5	0.087	0.087
10	0.174	0.174
15	0.262	0.256
20	0.349	0.342

Equation (14.27) is the angular analogue of Eq. (14.11) and tells us that the angular acceleration of the pendulum is proportional to the angular displacement θ but opposite in sign. Thus as the pendulum moves to the right, its pull to the left increases until it stops and begins to return to the left. Similarly, when it moves towards left, its acceleration to the right tends to return it to the right and so on, as it swings to and fro in SHM. Thus the motion of a **simple pendulum swinging through small angles is approximately SHM**.

Comparing Eq. (14.27) with Eq. (14.11), we see that the angular frequency of the pendulum is,

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgL}{I}}$$

and the period of the pendulum, T, is given by,

$$T \qquad \sqrt{\frac{I}{mgL}} \qquad (14.28)$$

All the mass of a simple pendulum is centred in the mass m of the bob, which is at a radius of L from the pivot point. Therefore, for this system, we can write $I = m\,L^2$ and substituting this in Eq. (14.28) we get,

SHM - how small should the amplitude be?

When you perform the experiment to determine the time period of a simple pendulum, your teacher tells you to keep the amplitude small. But have you ever asked how small is small? Should the amplitude to 5^0, $2^{0.}$ 1^0, or 0.5^0? Or could it be 10^0, 20^0, or 30^0?

To appreciate this, it would be better to measure the time period for different amplitudes, up to large amplitudes. Of course, for large oscillations, you will have to take care that the pendulum oscillates in a vertical plane. Let us denote the time period for small-amplitude oscillations as $T(0)$ and write the time period for amplitude θ_0 as $T(\theta_0) = cT(0)$, where c is the multiplying factor. If you plot a graph of c versus θ_0, you will get values somewhat like this:

θ_0	:	20^0	45^0	50^0	70^0	90^0
c	:	1.02	1.04	1.05	1.10	1.18

This means that the error in the time period is about 2% at an amplitude of 20^0, 5% at an amplitude of 50^0, and 10% at an amplitude of 70^0 and 18% at an amplitude of 90^0.

In the experiment, you will never be able to measure $T(0)$ because this means there are no oscillations. Even theoretically, $\sin\theta$ is exactly equal to θ only for $\theta = 0$. There will be some inaccuracy for all other values of θ. The difference increases with increasing θ. Therefore we have to decide how much error we can tolerate. No measurement is ever perfectly accurate. You must also consider questions like these: What is the accuracy of the stopwatch? What is your own accuracy in starting and stopping the stopwatch? You will realise that the accuracy in your measurements at this level is never better than 5% or 10%. Since the above table shows that the time period of the pendulum increases hardly by 5% at an amplitude of 50^0 over its low amplitude value, you could very well keep the amplitude to be 50° in your experiments.

$$T \qquad \sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \tag{14.29}$$

Equation (14.29) represents a simple expression for the time period of a simple pendulum.

> ***Example 14.9*** What is the length of a simple pendulum, which ticks seconds ?

Answer From Eq. (14.29), the time period of a simple pendulum is given by,

$$T \qquad \sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$$

From this relation one gets,

$$L \qquad \frac{gT^2}{4 \quad ^2}$$

The time period of a simple pendulum, which ticks seconds, is 2 s. Therefore, for g = 9.8 m s^{-2} and T = 2 s, L is

$$\frac{9.8(\text{m s}^{-2}) \quad 4(\text{s}^2)}{4 \quad ^2}$$

= 1 m

14.9 DAMPED SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

We know that the motion of a simple pendulum, swinging in air, dies out eventually. Why does it happen ? This is because the air drag and the friction at the support oppose the motion of the pendulum and dissipate its energy gradually. The pendulum is said to execute **damped oscillations**. In damped oscillations, although the energy of the system is continuously dissipated, the oscillations remain apparently periodic. The dissipating forces are generally the frictional forces. To understand the effect of such external forces on the motion of an oscillator, let us consider a system as shown in Fig. 14.20. Here a block of mass m oscillates vertically on a spring with spring constant k. The block is connected to a vane through a rod (the vane and the rod are considered to be massless). The vane is submerged in a liquid. As the block oscillates up and down, the vane also moves along with it in the liquid. The up and down motion of the vane displaces the liquid, which in turn, exerts an inhibiting drag force (viscous drag) on it and thus on the entire oscillating system. With time, the mechanical energy of the block-spring system decreases, as energy is transferred to the thermal energy of the liquid and vane.

Let the damping force exerted by the liquid on the system be* $\mathbf{F}_d$. Its magnitude is proportional to the velocity $\mathbf{v}$ of the vane or the

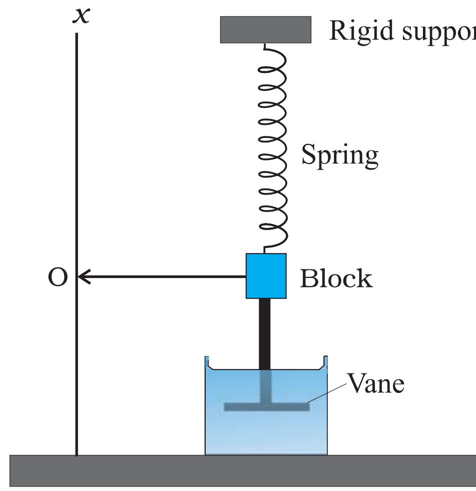


Fig. 14.20 *A damped simple harmonic oscillator. The vane immersed in a liquid exerts a damping force on the block as it oscillates up and down.*

block. The force acts in a direction opposite to the direction of $\mathbf{v}$. This assumption is valid only when the vane moves slowly. Then for the motion along the x-axis (vertical direction as shown in Fig. 14.20), we have

$$\mathbf{F}_d = -b\,\mathbf{v} \tag{14.30}$$

where b is a **damping constant** that depends on the characteristics of the liquid and the vane. The negative sign makes it clear that the force is opposite to the velocity at every moment.

When the mass m is attached to the spring and released, the spring will elongate a little and the mass will settle at some height. This position, shown by O in Fig 14.20, is the equilibrium position of the mass. If the mass is pulled down or pushed up a little, the restoring force on the block due to the spring is $\mathbf{F}_S = -k\mathbf{x}$, where $\mathbf{x}$ is the displacement of the mass from its equilibrium position. Thus the total force acting

* *Under gravity, the block will be at a certain equilibrium position O on the spring; x here represents the displacement from that position.*

on the mass at any time t is $\mathbf{F} = -k\,\mathbf{x} - b\,\mathbf{v}$. If $\mathbf{a}(t)$ is the acceleration of the mass at time t, then by Newton's second law of motion for force components along the x-axis, we have

$m\,a(t) = -k\,x(t) - b\,v(t)$ (14.31)

Here we have dropped the vector notation because we are discussing one-dimensional motion. Substituting dx/dt for $v(t)$ and d^2x/dt^2 for the acceleration $a(t)$ and rearranging gives us the differential equation,

$$m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \quad b\frac{dx}{dt} \quad k\,x \quad 0 \qquad (14.32)$$

The solution of Eq. (14.32) describes the motion of the block under the influence of a damping force which is proportional to velocity. The solution is found to be of the form

$$x(t) = A\,e^{-b\,t/2m}\cos(\omega' t + \phi) \qquad (14.33)$$

where a is the amplitude and ω' is the angular frequency of the damped oscillator given by,

$$\omega' = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \frac{b^2}{4m^2}} \qquad (14.34)$$

In this function, the cosine function has a period $2\pi/\omega'$ but the function $x(t)$ is not strictly periodic because of the factor $e^{-b\,t/2m}$ which decreases continuously with time. However, if the decrease is small in one time period T, the motion represented by Eq. (14.33) is approximately periodic.

The solution, Eq. (14.33), can be graphically represented as shown in Fig. 14.21. We can

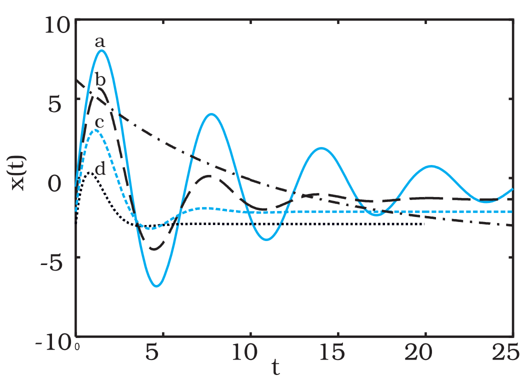


Fig. 14.21 *Displacement as a function of time in damped harmonic oscillations. Damping goes on increasing successively from curve* **a** *to* **d**.

regard it as a cosine function whose amplitude, which is $Ae^{-b\,t/2m}$, gradually decreases with time.

If $b = 0$ (there is no damping), then Eqs. (14.33) and (14.34) reduce to Eqs. (14.4) and (14.14b), expressions for the displacement and angular frequency of an undamped oscillator. We have seen that the mechanical energy of an undamped oscillator is constant and is given by Eq. (14.18) ($E = 1/2\ k A^2$). If the oscillator is damped, the mechanical energy is not constant but decreases with time. If the damping is small, we can find $E(t)$ by replacing A in Eq. (14.18) by $Ae^{-bt/2m}$, the amplitude of the damped oscillations. Thus we find,

$$E(t) = \frac{1}{2}k\,A^2\,e^{-b\,t/m} \qquad (14.35)$$

Equation (14.35) shows that the total energy of the system decreases exponentially with time. Note that small damping means that the dimensionless ratio $\left(\frac{b}{\sqrt{km}}\right)$ is much less than 1.

> **Example 14.10** For the damped oscillator shown in Fig. 14.20, the mass m of the block is 200 g, k = 90 N m^{-1} and the damping constant b is 40 g s^{-1}. Calculate (a) the period of oscillation, (b) time taken for its amplitude of vibrations to drop to half of its initial value and (c) the taken for its mechanical energy to drop to half its initial value.

Answer (a) We see that $km = 90 \times 0.2 = 18$ kg N m^{-1} = kg^2 s^{-2}; therefore $\sqrt{km} = 4.243$ kg s^{-1}, and $b = 0.04$ kg s^{-1}. Therefore b is much less than $\sqrt{km}$. Hence the time period T from Eq. (14.34) is given by

$$T \quad 2\ \sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

$$2\ \sqrt{\frac{0.2\ kg}{90\ \text{N m}^{\pm 1}}}$$

$$= 0.3\ \text{s}$$

(b) Now, from Eq. (14.33), the time, $T_{1/2}$, for the amplitude to drop to half of its initial value is given by,

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln(1/2)}{\boldsymbol{b}/2\boldsymbol{m}}$$

$$\frac{0.693}{40} \quad 2 \quad 200 \text{ s}$$

$$= 6.93 \text{ s}$$

(c) For calculating the time, $t_{1/2}$, for its mechanical energy to drop to half its initial value we make use of Eq. (14.35). From this equation we have,

$$E\,(t_{1/2})/E\,(0) = \exp\,(-bt_{1/2}/m)$$

Or $$½ = \exp\,(-bt_{1/2}/m)$$

$$\ln\,(1/2) = -(bt_{1/2}/m)$$

Or $$t_{1/2} \quad \frac{0.693}{40 \text{ g s}^{-1}} \quad 200 \text{ g}$$

$$= 3.46 \text{ s}$$

This is just half of the decay period for amplitude. This is not suprising, because, according to Eqs. (14.33) and (14.35), energy depends on the square of the amplitude. Notice that there is a factor of 2 in the exponents of the two exponentials. ◀

14.10 FORCED OSCILLATIONS AND RESONANCE

A person swinging in a swing without anyone pushing it or a simple pendulum, displaced and released, are examples of free oscillations. In both the cases, the amplitude of swing will gradually decrease and the system would, ultimately, come to a halt. Because of the ever-present dissipative forces, the free oscillations cannot be sustained in practice. They get damped as seen in section 14.9. However, while swinging in a swing if you apply a push periodically by pressing your feet against the ground, you find that not only the oscillations can now be maintained but the amplitude can also be increased. Under this condition the swing has **forced, or driven, oscillations**. In case of a system executing driven oscillations under the action of a harmonic force, two angular frequencies are important : (1) **the natural** angular frequency ω of the system, which is the angular frequency at which it will oscillate if it were displaced from equilibrium position and then left to oscillate freely, and (2) the angular frequency ω_d of the external force causing the driven oscillations.

Suppose an external force $F(t)$ of amplitude F_0 that varies periodically with time is applied to a damped oscillator. Such a force can be represented as,

$$F(t) = F_o \cos \omega_d t \qquad (14.36)$$

The motion of a particle under the combined action of a linear restoring force, damping force and a time dependent driving force represented by Eq. (14.36) is given by,

$$m\,a(t) = -k\,x(t) - bv(t) + F_o \cos \omega_d t \qquad (14.37a)$$

Substituting d^2x/dt^2 for acceleration in Eq. (14.37a) and rearranging it, we get

$$m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \quad b\frac{dx}{dt} \quad kx \quad F_o \cos \omega_d t \qquad (14.37b)$$

This is the equation of an oscillator of mass m on which a periodic force of (angular) frequency ω_d is applied. The oscillator initially oscillates with its natural frequency ω When we apply the external periodic force, the oscillations with the natural frequency die out, and then the body oscillates with the (angular) frequency of the external periodic force. Its displacement, after the natural oscillations die out, is given by

$$x(t) = A \cos\,(\omega_d t + \phi) \qquad (14.38)$$

where t is the time measured from the moment when we apply the periodic force.

The amplitude A is a function of the forced frequency ω_d and the natural frequency ω Analysis shows that it is given by

$$A \quad \frac{F}{m \qquad {}_d^{\;2} \qquad {}_d b}^{\,1/2} \qquad (14.39a)$$

and $$\tan \phi = \frac{-v_o}{\omega_d x_o} \qquad (14.39b)$$

where m is the mass of the particle and v_0 and x_0 are the velocity and the displacement of the particle at time $t = 0$, which is the moment when we apply the periodic force. Equation (14.39) shows that the amplitude of the forced oscillator depends on the (angular) frequency of the driving force. We can see a different behaviour of the oscillator when ω_d is far from ω and when it is close to ω We consider these two cases.

(a) **Small Damping, Driving Frequency far from Natural Frequency :** In this case, $\omega_d b$ will be much smaller than $m(\omega^2 - \omega_d^2)$, and we can neglect that term. Then Eq. (14.39) reduces to

$$A \quad \frac{F}{m \qquad {}^{2}_{d}} \qquad (14.40)$$

Figure 14.22 shows the dependence of the displacement amplitude of an oscillator on the angular frequency of the driving force for different amounts of damping present in the system. It may be noted that in all the cases the amplitude is greatest when $\omega_d / \omega = 1$. The curves in this figure show that smaller the damping, the taller and narrower is the resonance peak.

If we go on changing the driving frequency, the amplitude tends to infinity when it equals the natural frequency. But this is the ideal case of zero damping, a case which never arises in a real system as the damping is never perfectly zero. You must have experienced in a swing that when the timing of your push exactly matches with the time period of the swing, your swing gets the maximum amplitude. This amplitude is large, but not infinity, because there is always some damping in your swing. This will become clear in the (b).

(b) **Driving Frequency Close to Natural Frequency :** If ω_d is very close to ω, $m\,(\omega^2 - {}^{2}_{d})$

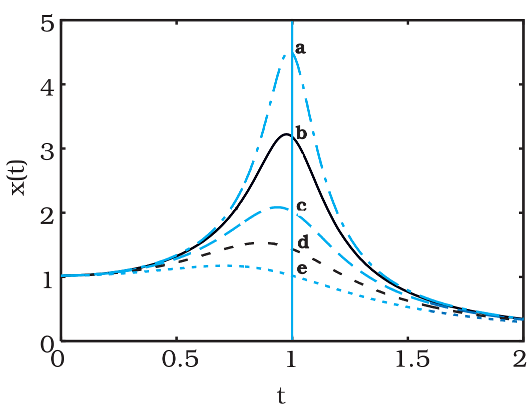


Fig. 14.22 *The amplitude of a forced oscillator as a function of the angular frequency of the driving force. The amplitude is greatest near $\omega_d / \omega = 1$. The five curves correspond to different extents of damping present in the system. Curve **a** corresponds to the least damping, and damping goes on increasing successively in curves **b, c, d, e**. Notice that the peak shifts to the left with increasing **b**.*

would be much less than $\omega_d b$, for any reasonable value of b, then Eq. (14.39) reduces to

$$A = \frac{F_o}{\omega_d b} \qquad (14.41)$$

This makes it clear that the maximum possible amplitude for a given driving frequency is governed by the driving frequency and the damping, and is never infinity. The phenomenon of increase in amplitude when the driving force is close to the natural frequency of the oscillator is called **resonance**.

In our daily life we encounter phenomena which involve resonance. Your experience with swings is a good example of resonance. You might have realised that the skill in swinging to greater heights lies in the synchronisation of the rhythm of pushing against the ground with the natural frequency of the swing.

To illustrate this point further, let us consider a set of five simple pendulums of assorted lengths suspended from a common rope as shown in Fig. 14.23. The pendulums 1 and 4 have the same lengths and the others have different lengths. Now let us set pendulum 1 into motion. The energy from this pendulum gets transferred to other pendulums through the connecting rope and they start oscillating. The driving force is provided through the connecting rope. The frequency of this force is the frequency with which pendulum 1 oscillates. If we observe the response of pendulums 2, 3 and 5, they first start oscillating with their natural frequencies

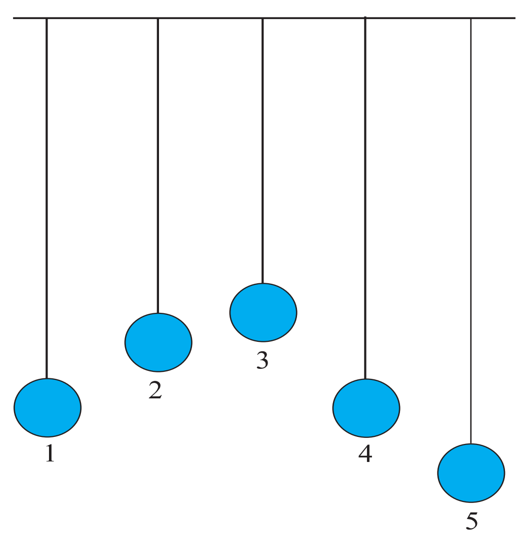


Fig. 14.23 *A system of five simple pendulums suspended from a common rope.*

of oscillations and different amplitudes, but this motion is gradually damped and not sustained. Their frequencies of oscillation gradually change and ultimately they oscillate with the frequency of pendulum 1, i.e. the frequency of the driving force but with different amplitudes. They oscillate with small amplitudes. The response of pendulum 4 is in contrast to this set of pendulums. It oscillates with the same frequency as that of pendulum 1 and its amplitude gradually picks up and becomes very large. A resonance-like response is seen. This happens because in this the condition for resonance is satisfied, i.e. the natural frequency of the system coincides with that of the driving force.

All mechanical structures have one or more natural frequencies, and if a structure is subjected to a strong external periodic driving force that matches one of these frequencies, the resulting oscillations of the structure may rupture it. The Tacoma Narrows Bridge at Puget Sound, Washington, USA was opened on July 1, 1940. Four months later winds produced a pulsating resultant force in resonance with the natural frequency of the structure. This caused a steady increase in the amplitude of oscillations until the bridge collapsed. It is for the same reason the marching soldiers break steps while crossing a bridge. Aircraft designers make sure that none of the natural frequencies at which a wing can oscillate match the frequency of the engines in flight. Earthquakes cause vast devastation. It is interesting to note that sometimes, in an earthquake, short and tall structures remain unaffected while the medium height structures fall down. This happens because the natural frequencies of the short structures happen to be higher and those of taller structures lower than the frequency of the seismic waves.

SUMMARY

1. The motions which repeat themselves are called *periodic motions.*
2. The *period T* is the time required for one complete oscillation, or cycle. It is related to the frequency ν by,

$$T = \frac{1}{\nu}$$

The *frequency ν* of periodic or oscillatory motion is the number of oscillations per unit time. In the SI, it is measured in hertz :

$$1 \text{ hertz} = 1 \text{ Hz} = 1 \text{ oscillation per second} = 1\text{s}^{-1}$$

3. In *simple harmonic motion* (SHM), the displacement $x(t)$ of a particle from its equilibrium position is given by,

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \text{(displacement)},$$

in which A is the *amplitude* of the displacement, the quantity $(\omega t + \phi)$ is the phase of the motion, and ϕ is the *phase constant*. The *angular frequency* ω is related to the period and frequency of the motion by,

$$\frac{2}{T} \quad 2 \qquad \text{(angular frequency)}.$$

4. Simple harmonic motion is the projection of uniform circular motion on the diameter of the circle in which the latter motion occurs.
5. The particle velocity and acceleration during SHM as functions of time are given by,

$$v(t) = -\omega A\sin(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \text{(velocity)},$$

$$a(t) = -\omega^2 A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$= \quad -\omega^2 x\,(t) \qquad\qquad \text{(acceleration),}$$

Thus we see that both velocity and acceleration of a body executing simple harmonic motion are periodic functions, having the velocity *amplitude* $v_m = \omega A$ and *acceleration amplitude* $a_m = \omega^2 A$, respectively.

6. The force acting simple harmonic motion is proportional to the displacement and is always directed towards the centre of motion.

7. A particle executing simple harmonic motion has, at any time, kinetic energy $K = ½\, mv^2$ and potential energy $U = ½\, kx^2$. If no friction is present the mechanical energy of the system, $E = K + U$ always remains constant even though K and U change with time

8. A particle of mass m oscillating under the influence of a Hooke's law restoring force given by $F = -k\,x$ exhibits simple harmonic motion with

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \qquad \text{(angular frequency)}$$

$$T \quad 2\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \qquad \text{(period)}$$

Such a system is also called a linear oscillator.

9. The motion of a simple pendulum swinging through small angles is approximately simple harmonic. The period of oscillation is given by,

$$T \quad 2\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$$

10. The mechanical energy in a real oscillating system decreases during oscillations because external forces, such as drag, inhibit the oscillations and transfer mechanical energy to thermal energy. The real oscillator and its motion are then said to be *damped*. If the *damping force* is given by $F_d = -bv$, where v is the velocity of the oscillator and b is a *damping constant*, then the displacement of the oscillator is given by,

$$x\,(t) = A\,e^{-bt/2m}\cos(\omega' t + \phi)$$

where ω', the angular frequency of the damped oscillator, is given by

$$\sqrt{\frac{k}{m} \quad \frac{b^2}{4m^2}}$$

If the damping constant is small then $\omega' \approx \omega$, where ω is the angular frequency of the undamped oscillator. The mechanical energy E of the damped oscillator is given by

$$E(t) \quad \frac{1}{2}kA^2 e^{\;bt/m}$$

11. If an external force with angular frequency ω_d acts on an oscillating system with natural angular frequency ω, the system oscillates with angular frequency ω_d. The amplitude of oscillations is the greatest when

$$\omega_d = \omega$$

a condition called *resonance*.

Physical quantity	Symbol	Dimensions	Unit	Remarks
Period	T	[T]	s	The least time for motion to repeat itself
Frequency	ν (or f)	$[T^{-1}]$	s^{-1}	$\nu = \frac{1}{T}$
Angular frequency	ω	$[T^{-1}]$	s^{-1}	$\omega = 2\pi\nu$
Phase constant	ϕ	Dimensionless	rad	Initial value of phase of displacement in SHM
Force constant	k	$[MT^{-2}]$	$N\ m^{-1}$	Simple harmonic motion $F = -k\,x$

POINTS TO PONDER

1. The period T is the *least time* after which motion repeats itself. Thus, motion repeats itself after nT where n is an integer.
2. Every periodic motion is not simple harmonic motion. Only that periodic motion governed by the force law $F = -k\,x$ is simple harmonic.
3. Circular motion can arise due to an inverse-square law force (as in planetary motion) as well as due to simple harmonic force in two dimensions equal to: $-m\omega^2 r$. In the latter case, the phases of motion, in two perpendicular directions (x and y) must differ by $\omega/2$. Thus, a particle subject to a force $-m\omega^2 r$ with initial position (o, A) and velocity (ωA, o) will move uniformly in a circle of radius A.
4. For linear simple harmonic motion with a given ω two arbitrary initial conditions are necessary and sufficient to determine the motion completely. The initial condition may be (i) initial position and initial velocity or (ii) amplitude and phase or (iii) energy and phase.
5. From point 4 above, given amplitude or energy, phase of motion is determined by the initial position or initial velocity.
6. A combination of two simple harmonic motions with arbitrary amplitudes and phases is not necessarily periodic. It is periodic only if frequency of one motion is an integral multiple of the other's frequency. However, a periodic motion can always be expressed as a sum of infinite number of harmonic motions with appropriate amplitudes.
7. The period of SHM does not depend on amplitude or energy or the phase constant. Contrast this with the periods of planetary orbits under gravitation (Kepler's third law).
8. The motion of a simple pendulum is simple harmonic for small angular displacement.
9. For motion of a particle to be simple harmonic, its displacement x must be expressible in either of the following forms :

   $$x = A\cos\omega t + B\sin\omega t$$

   $$x = A\cos(\omega t + \alpha),\ x = B\sin(\omega t + \beta)$$

   The three forms are completely equivalent (any one can be expressed in terms of any other two forms).

   Thus, damped simple harmonic motion [Eq. (14.31)] is not strictly simple harmonic. It is approximately so only for time intervals much less than $2m/b$ where b is the damping constant.
10. In forced oscillations, the steady state motion of the particle (after the force oscillations die out) is simple harmonic motion whose frequency is the frequency of the driving frequency ω_d, not the natural frequency ω of the particle.

11. In the ideal case of zero damping, the amplitude of simple harmonic motion at resonance is infinite. This is no problem since all real systems have some damping, however, small.
12. Under forced oscillation, the phase of harmonic motion of the particle differs from the phase of the driving force.

Exercises

14.1 Which of the following examples represent periodic motion?

(a) A swimmer completing one (return) trip from one bank of a river to the other and back.

(b) A freely suspended bar magnet displaced from its N-S direction and released.

(c) A hydrogen molecule rotating about its center of mass.

(d) An arrow released from a bow.

14.2 Which of the following examples represent (nearly) simple harmonic motion and which represent periodic but not simple harmonic motion?

(a) the rotation of earth about its axis.

(b) motion of an oscillating mercury column in a U-tube.

(c) motion of a ball bearing inside a smooth curved bowl, when released from a point slightly above the lower most point.

(d) general vibrations of a polyatomic molecule about its equilibrium position.

14.3 Figure 14.27 depicts four *x-t* plots for linear motion of a particle. Which of the plots represent periodic motion? What is the period of motion (in case of periodic motion) ?

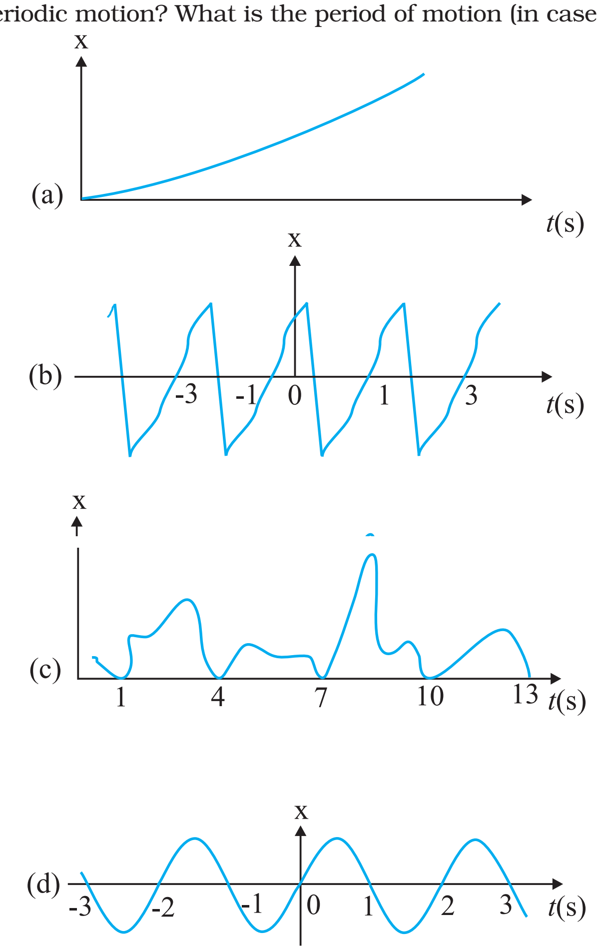


Fig. 14.27

14.4 Which of the following functions of time represent (a) simple harmonic, (b) periodic but not simple harmonic, and (c) non-periodic motion? Give period for each case of periodic motion (ω is any positive constant):

(a) $\sin \omega t - \cos \omega t$
(b) $\sin^3 \omega t$
(c) $3 \cos (\pi/4 - 2\omega t)$
(d) $\cos \omega t + \cos 3\omega t + \cos 5\omega t$
(e) $\exp (-\omega^2 t^2)$
(f) $1 + \omega t + \omega^2 t^2$

14.5 A particle is in linear simple harmonic motion between two points, A and B, 10 cm apart. Take the direction from A to B as the positive direction and give the signs of velocity, acceleration and force on the particle when it is

(a) at the end A,
(b) at the end B,
(c) at the mid-point of AB going towards A,
(d) at 2 cm away from B going towards A,
(e) at 3 cm away from A going towards B, and
(f) at 4 cm away from B going towards A.

14.6 Which of the following relationships between the acceleration a and the displacement x of a particle involve simple harmonic motion?

(a) $a = 0.7x$
(b) $a = -200x^2$
(c) $a = -10x$
(d) $a = 100x^3$

14.7 The motion of a particle executing simple harmonic motion is described by the displacement function,

$$x(t) = A \cos (\omega t + \phi).$$

If the initial ($t = 0$) position of the particle is 1 cm and its initial velocity is ω cm/s, what are its amplitude and initial phase angle ? The angular frequency of the particle is π s^{-1}. If instead of the cosine function, we choose the sine function to describe the SHM : $x = B \sin (\omega t + \alpha)$, what are the amplitude and initial phase of the particle with the above initial conditions.

14.8 A spring balance has a scale that reads from 0 to 50 kg. The length of the scale is 20 cm. A body suspended from this balance, when displaced and released, oscillates with a period of 0.6 s. What is the weight of the body ?

14.9 A spring having with a spring constant 1200 N m^{-1} is mounted on a horizontal table as shown in Fig. 14.28. A mass of 3 kg is attached to the free end of the spring. The mass is then pulled sideways to a distance of 2.0 cm and released.

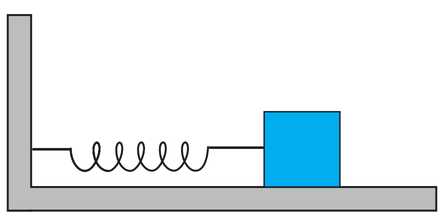


Fig. 14.28

Determine (i) the frequency of oscillations, (ii) maximum acceleration of the mass, and (iii) the maximum speed of the mass.

14.10 In Exercise 14.9, let us take the position of mass when the spring is unstreched as $x = 0$, and the direction from left to right as the positive direction of x-axis. Give x as a function of time t for the oscillating mass if at the moment we start the stopwatch ($t = 0$), the mass is

(a) at the mean position,
(b) at the maximum stretched position, and
(c) at the maximum compressed position.

In what way do these functions for SHM differ from each other, in frequency, in amplitude or the initial phase?

14.11 Figures 14.29 correspond to two circular motions. The radius of the circle, the period of revolution, the initial position, and the sense of revolution (i.e. clockwise or anti-clockwise) are indicated on each figure.

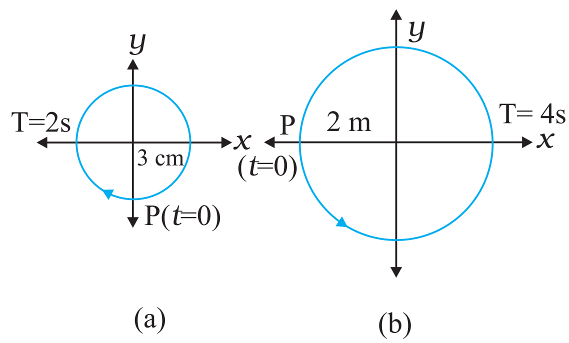


Fig. 14.29

Obtain the corresponding simple harmonic motions of the x-projection of the radius vector of the revolving particle P, in each case.

14.12 Plot the corresponding reference circle for each of the following simple harmonic motions. Indicate the initial (t =0) position of the particle, the radius of the circle, and the angular speed of the rotating particle. For simplicity, the sense of rotation may be fixed to be anticlockwise in every case: (x is in cm and t is in s).

(a) $x = -2 \sin (3t + \pi/3)$

(b) $x = \cos (\pi/6 - t)$

(c) $x = 3 \sin (2\pi t + \pi/4)$

(d) $x = 2 \cos \pi t$

14.13 Figure 14.30 (a) shows a spring of force constant k clamped rigidly at one end and a mass m attached to its free end. A force **F** applied at the free end stretches the spring. Figure 14.30 (b) shows the same spring with both ends free and attached to a mass m at either end. Each end of the spring in Fig. 14.30(b) is stretched by the same force **F**.

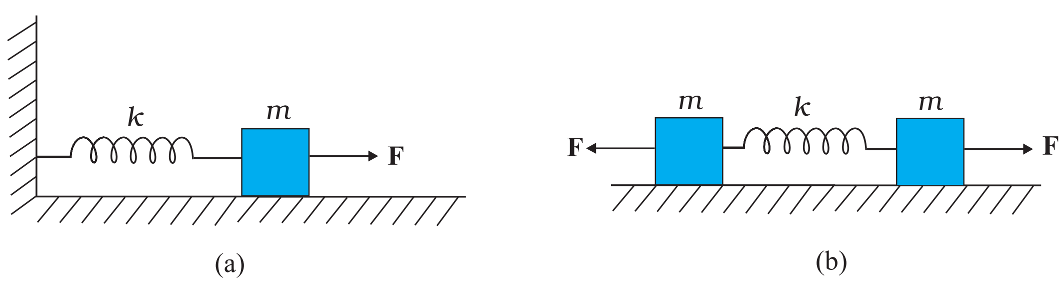


Fig. 14.30

(a) What is the maximum extension of the spring in the two cases ?
(b) If the mass in Fig. (a) and the two masses in Fig. (b) are released, what is the period of oscillation in each case ?

14.14 The piston in the cylinder head of a locomotive has a stroke (twice the amplitude) of 1.0 m. If the piston moves with simple harmonic motion with an angular frequency of 200 rad/min, what is its maximum speed ?

14.15 The acceleration due to gravity on the surface of moon is 1.7 m s^{-2}. What is the time period of a simple pendulum on the surface of moon if its time period on the surface of earth is 3.5 s ? (g on the surface of earth is 9.8 m s^{-2})

14.16 Answer the following questions :

(a) Time period of a particle in SHM depends on the force constant k and mass m of the particle:

$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\dfrac{m}{k}}$. A simple pendulum executes SHM approximately. Why then is the time period of a pendulum independent of the mass of the pendulum?

(b) The motion of a simple pendulum is approximately simple harmonic for small angle oscillations. For larger angles of oscillation, a more involved analysis shows that T is greater than $2\pi\sqrt{\dfrac{l}{g}}$. Think of a qualitative argument to appreciate this result.

(c) A man with a wristwatch on his hand falls from the top of a tower. Does the watch give correct time during the free fall ?

(d) What is the frequency of oscillation of a simple pendulum mounted in a cabin that is freely falling under gravity ?

14.17 A simple pendulum of length l and having a bob of mass M is suspended in a car. The car is moving on a circular track of radius R with a uniform speed v. If the pendulum makes small oscillations in a radial direction about its equilibrium position, what will be its time period ?

14.18 A cylindrical piece of cork of density of base area A and height h floats in a liquid of density ρ_l. The cork is depressed slightly and then released. Show that the cork oscillates up and down simple harmonically with a period

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{h\rho}{\rho_l g}}$$

where ρ is the density of cork. (Ignore damping due to viscosity of the liquid).

14.19 One end of a U-tube containing mercury is connected to a suction pump and the other end to atmosphere. A small pressure difference is maintained between the two columns. Show that, when the suction pump is removed, the column of mercury in the U-tube executes simple harmonic motion.

Additional Exercises

14.20 An air chamber of volume V has a neck area of cross section a into which a ball of mass m just fits and can move up and down without any friction (Fig.14.33). Show that when the ball is pressed down a little and released , it executes SHM. Obtain an expression for the time period of oscillations assuming pressure-volume variations of air to be isothermal [see Fig. 14.33].

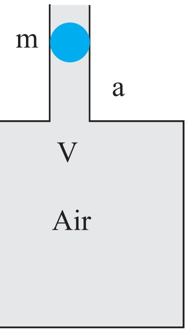


Fig.14.33

14.21 You are riding in an automobile of mass 3000 kg. Assuming that you are examining the oscillation characteristics of its suspension system. The suspension sags 15 cm when the entire automobile is placed on it. Also, the amplitude of oscillation decreases by 50% during one complete oscillation. Estimate the values of (a) the spring constant k and (b) the damping constant b for the spring and shock absorber system of one wheel, assuming that each wheel supports 750 kg.

14.22 Show that for a particle in linear SHM the average kinetic energy over a period of oscillation equals the average potential energy over the same period.

14.23 A circular disc of mass 10 kg is suspended by a wire attached to its centre. The wire is twisted by rotating the disc and released. The period of torsional oscillations is found to be 1.5 s. The radius of the disc is 15 cm. Determine the torsional spring constant of the wire. (Torsional spring constant α is defined by the relation $J = -\alpha\,\theta$, where J is the restoring couple and θ the angle of twist).

14.24 A body describes simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 5 cm and a period of 0.2 s. Find the acceleration and velocity of the body when the displacement is (a) 5 cm, (b) 3 cm, (c) 0 cm.

14.25 A mass attached to a spring is free to oscillate, with angular velocity ω, in a horizontal plane without friction or damping. It is pulled to a distance x_0 and pushed towards the centre with a velocity v_0 at time $t = 0$. Determine the amplitude of the resulting oscillations in terms of the parameters ω, x_0 and v_0. [Hint : Start with the equation $x = a \cos (\omega t+\theta)$ and note that the initial velocity is negative.]

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

WAVES

15.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous Chapter, we studied the motion of objects oscillating in isolation. What happens in a system, which is a collection of such objects ? A material medium provides such an example. Here, elastic forces bind the constituents to each other and, therefore, the motion of one affects that of the other. If you drop a little pebble in a pond of still water, the water surface gets disturbed. The disturbance does not remain confined to one place, but propagates outward along a circle. If you continue dropping pebbles in the pond, you see circles rapidly moving outward from the point where the water surface is disturbed. It gives a feeling as if the water is moving outward from the point of disturbance. If you put some cork pieces on the disturbed surface, it is seen that the cork pieces move up and down but do not move away from the centre of disturbance. This shows that the water mass does not flow outward with the circles, but rather a moving disturbance is created. Similarly, when we speak, the sound moves outward from us, without any flow of air from one part of the medium to another. The disturbances produced in air are much less obvious and only our ears or a microphone can detect them. These patterns, which move without the actual physical transfer or flow of matter as a whole, are called **waves**. In this Chapter, we will study such waves.

In a wave, information and energy, in the form of signals, propagate from one point to another but no material object makes the journey. All our communications depend on the transmission of signals through waves. When we make a telephone call to a friend at a distant place, a sound wave carries the message from our vocal cords to the telephone. There, an electrical signal is generated which propagates along the copper wire. If the distance is too large, the electrical signal generated may be transformed into a light signal or electromagnetic waves and transmitted through optical cables or the atmosphere, possibly by way of a communication satellite. At the receiving end, the electrical or light signal or the electromagnetic waves are transformed back into sound waves travelling from the telephone to the ear.

Not all waves require a medium for their propagation. We know that light waves can travel through vacuum. The light emitted by stars, which are hundreds of light years away, reaches us through inter-stellar space, which is practically a vacuum.

The waves we come across are mainly of three types: (a) mechanical waves, (b) electromagnetic waves and (c) matter waves. Mechanical waves are most familiar because we encounter them constantly; common examples include water waves, sound waves, seismic waves, etc. All these waves have certain central features : They are governed by Newton's laws, and can exist only within a material medium, such as water, air, and rock. The common examples of electromagnetic waves are visible and ultra-violet light, radio waves, microwaves, x-rays etc. All electromagnetic waves travel through vacuum at the same speed *c*, given by

$$c = 299,792,458 \text{ m s}^{-1} \quad \text{(speed of light)} \quad (15.1)$$

Unlike the mechanical waves, the electro-magnetic waves do not require any medium for their propagation. You would learn more about these waves later.

Matter waves are associated with moving electrons, protons, neutrons and other fundamental particles, and even atoms and molecules. Because we commonly think of these as constituting matter, such waves are called **matter waves**. They arise in quantum mechanical description of nature that you will learn in your later studies. Though conceptually more abstract than mechanical or electro-magnetic waves, they have already found applications in several devices basic to modern technology; matter waves associated with electrons are employed in electron microscopes.

In this chapter we will study mechanical waves, which require a material medium for their propagation.

The aesthetic influence of waves on art and literature is seen from very early times; yet the first scientific analysis of wave motion dates back to the seventeenth century. Some of the famous scientists associated with the physics of wave motion are Christiaan Huygens (1629-1695), Robert Hooke and Isaac Newton. The understanding of physics of waves followed the physics of oscillations of masses tied to springs and physics of the simple pendulum. Waves in elastic media are intimately connected with harmonic oscillations. (Stretched strings, coiled springs, air, etc., are examples of elastic media.) We shall illustrate this connection through simple examples.

Consider a collection of springs connected to one another as shown in Fig. 15.1. If the spring at one end is pulled suddenly and released, the disturbance travels to the other end. What has happened ? The first spring is disturbed from its equilibrium length. Since the second spring is connected to the first, it is also stretched or compressed, and so on. The disturbance moves

Fig. 15.1 *A collection of springs connected to each other. The end A is pulled suddenly generating a disturbance, which then propagates to the other end.*

from one end to the other; but each spring only executes small oscillations about its equilibrium position. As a practical example of this situation, consider a stationary train at a railway station. Different bogies of the train are coupled to each other through a spring coupling. When an engine is attached at one end, it gives a push to the bogie next to it; this push is transmitted from one bogie to another without the entire train being bodily displaced.

Now let us consider the propagation of sound waves in air. As the wave passes through air, it compresses or expands a small region of air. This causes a change in the density of that region, say $\delta\rho$, this change induces a change in pressure, δp, in that region. Pressure is force per unit area, so there is a **restoring force proportional** to the disturbance, just like in a spring. In this case, the quantity similar to extension or compression of the spring is the change in density. If a region is compressed, the molecules in that region are packed together, and they tend to move out to the adjoining region, thereby increasing the density or creating compression in the adjoining region. Consequently, the air in the first region undergoes rarefaction. If a region is comparatively rarefied the surrounding air will rush in making the rarefaction move to the adjoining region. Thus, the compression or rarefaction moves from one region to another, making the propagation of a disturbance possible in air.

In solids, similar arguments can be made. In a crystalline solid, atoms or group of atoms are arranged in a periodic lattice. In these, each atom or group of atoms is in equilibrium, due to forces from the surrounding atoms. Displacing one atom, keeping the others fixed, leads to restoring forces, exactly as in a spring. So we can think of atoms in a lattice as end points, with springs between pairs of them.

In the subsequent sections of this chapter we are going to discuss various characteristic properties of waves.

15.2 TRANSVERSE AND LONGITUDINAL WAVES

Mechanical waves can be transverse or longitudinal depending on the relationship between the directions of disturbance or displacement in the medium and that of the propagation of wave. To differentiate between them let us consider the response of a stretched string fixed at one end. If you give a single up-and-down jerk to the free end of this string, as shown in Fig. 15.2, a wave in the form of a single **pulse** travels along the string. We assume that the string is very long as compared to the size of the pulse, so that the pulse dissipates out by the time it reaches the other end and, therefore, its reflection from the other end may be ignored. The formation and propagation of this pulse is possible because the string is under tension. When you pull your end of the string upwards it begins to pull upwards on the adjacent section of the string, because of the tension between the two sections. As the adjacent section begins to move upwards, it begins to pull the next section upwards, and so on. In the meanwhile you have pulled down your end of the string. As each section moves upwards in turn, it begins to be pulled back downwards by neighbouring sections that are already on the way down. The net result is that a distortion in the shape of the string (the pulse) moves along the string with a certain velocity **v**.

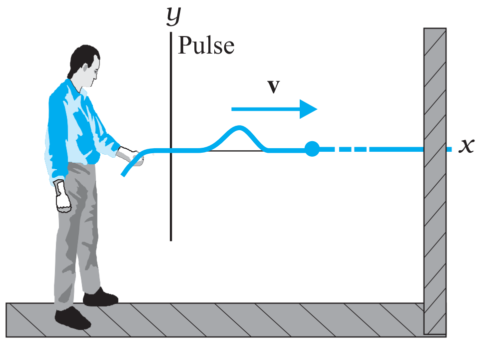


Fig. 15.2 *A single pulse is sent along a stretched string. A typical element of the string (such as that marked with a dot) moves up and then down as the pulse passes through. The element's motion is perpendicular to the direction in which the wave travels.*

If you move your end up and down in a continuous manner, a continuous wave travels along the string with a velocity **v**. However, if the motion of your hand is a sinusoidal function of time, at any given instant of time the wave will have a sinusoidal shape as shown in Fig. 15.3. The wave has the shape of a sine or cosine curve.

The waves shown in Fig. 15.3 can be studied in two ways. Oneway is to monitor the waveforms as they move to the right, i.e. take a 'snapshot' of the string at a given instant of time. Alternatively, we fix our attention to a particular position on the string and monitor the motion of an element at that point as it oscillates up and down while a wave passes through it. We would find that the displacement of every such oscillating string element is transverse (i.e. perpendicular) to the direction of travel of the wave as indicated in Fig. 15.3. Such a wave is said to be a **transverse wave**.

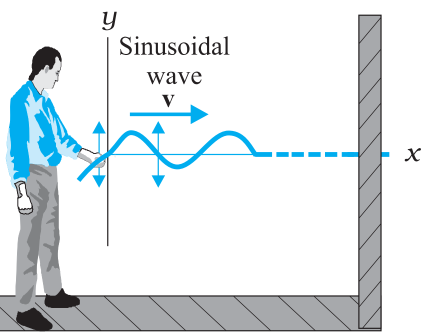


Fig. 15.3 *A sinusoidal wave is sent along the string. A typical element of the string moves up and down continuously as the wave passes. It is a transverse wave.*

Now, let us consider the production of waves in a long air-filled pipe by the movement of a piston as shown in Fig. 15.4. If you suddenly move the piston to the right and then to the left, you are sending a pulse of pressure along the pipe. The motion of the piston to the right pushes

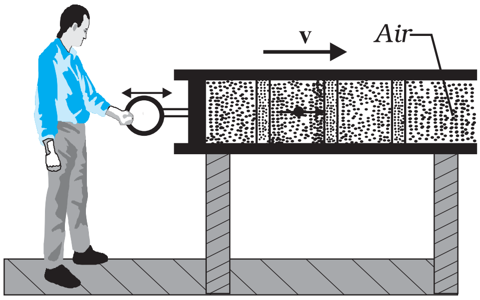


Fig. 15.4 *A sound wave is set up in an air filled pipe by moving a piston back and forth. As the oscillations of an element of air are parallel to the direction in which the wave travels, the wave is a longitudinal wave.*

the elements of air next towards the right, changing the air pressure there. The increased pressure in this region then pushes on the elements of air somewhat farther along the pipe. Moving the piston to the left reduces the air pressure next to it. This causes the elements of air next to it move back to the left and then the farther elements follow. Thus, the motion of the air and the change in air pressure travel towards the right along the pipe as a pulse.

If you push and pull on the piston in a simple harmonic manner, a sinusoidal wave travels along the pipe. It may be noted that the motion of the elements of air is parallel to the direction of propagation of the wave. This motion is said to be **longitudinal** and the wave produced is, therefore, called a **longitudinal wave**. The sound waves produced in air are such pressure waves and are therefore of longitudinal character.

In short, **in transverse waves, the constituents of the medium oscillate perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation and in longitudinal waves they oscillate along the direction of wave propagation**.

A wave, transverse or longitudinal, is said to be **travelling or progressive** if it travels from one point of the medium to another. A progressive wave is to be distinguished from a standing or stationary wave (see Section 15.7). In Fig. 15.3 transverse waves travel from one end of the string to the other end while the longitudinal waves in Fig. 15.4 travel from one end of the pipe to its other end. We note again that in both the cases, it is the wave or the disturbance that moves from end to end, not the material through which the waves propagate.

In transverse waves, the particle motion is normal to the direction of propagation of the wave. Therefore, as the wave propagates, each element of the medium undergoes a shearing strain. Transverse waves can, therefore, be propagated only in those media which can sustain shearing stress, such as solids and strings, and not in fluids. Fluids as well as solids can sustain compressive strain; therefore, longitudinal waves can propagate in all elastic media. For example, in medium like a steel bar, both transverse and longitudinal waves can propagate while air can sustain only longitudinal waves. The waves on the surface of water are of two kinds: **capillary waves** and **gravity waves**. The former are ripples of fairly short wavelength—no more than a few centimetres—and the restoring force that produces them is the surface tension of water. Gravity waves have wavelengths typically ranging from several metres to several hundred metres. The restoring force that produces these waves is the pull of gravity, which tends to keep the water surface at its lowest level. The oscillations of the particles in these waves are not confined to the surface only, but extend with diminishing amplitude to the very bottom. The particle motion in the water waves involves a complicated motion; they not only move up and down but also back and forth. The waves in an ocean are a combination of both longitudinal and transverse waves.

It is found that generally transverse and longitudinal waves travel with different speeds in the same medium.

Example 15.1 Given below are some examples of wave motion. State in each case if the wave motion is transverse, longitudinal or a combination of both:

(a) Motion of a kink in a longitudinal spring produced by displacing one end of the spring sideways.

(b) Waves produced in a cylinder containing a liquid by moving its piston back and forth.

(c) Waves produced by a motorboat sailing in water.

(d) Ultrasonic waves in air produced by a vibrating quartz crystal.

Answer

(a) Transverse and longitudinal
(b) Longitudinal
(c) Transverse and longitudinal
(d) Longitudinal ◀

15.3 DISPLACEMENT RELATION IN A PROGRESSIVE WAVE

To describe the propagation of a wave in a medium (and the motion of any constituent of the medium), we need a function that completely gives the shape of the wave at every instant of time. For example, to completely describe the wave on a string (and the motion of any element along its length) we need a relation which describes the displacement of an element at a particular position as a function of time and also describes the state of vibration of various elements of the string along its length at a given instant of time. For a sinusoidal wave, as shown in Fig. 15.3, this function should be periodic in space as well as in time. Let $y\,(x,\ t)$ denote the transverse displacement of the element at position x at time t. As the wave sweeps through succeeding elements of the string, the elements oscillate parallel to the y-axis. At any time t, the displacement y of the element located at position x is given by

$$y\,(x,\,t) = a \sin\,(kx - \omega t + \phi) \qquad (15.2)$$

One can as well choose a cosine function or a linear combination of sine and cosine functions such as,

$$y\,(x,\,t) = A \sin\,(kx - \omega t) + B \cos\,(kx - \omega t), \qquad (15.3)$$

then in Eq. (15.2),

$$a = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2} \text{ and } \phi = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{B}{A}\right)$$

The function represented in Eq. (15.2) is periodic in position coordinate x and time t. It represents a transverse wave moving along the x-axis. At any time t, it gives the displacement of the elements of the string as a function of their position. It can tell us the shape of the wave at any given time and show how the wave progresses. Functions, such as that given in Eq. (15.2), represent a progressive wave travelling along the positive direction of the x-axis. On the other hand a function,

$$y(x,\,t) = a \sin\,(kx + \omega t + \phi), \qquad (15.4)$$

represents a wave travelling in the negative direction of x-axis (see Section 15.4). The set of four parameters a, ϕ, k, and ω in Eq. (15.2) completely describe a harmonic wave. The names of these parameters are displayed in Fig. 15.5 and are defined later.

$$\overbrace{y\,(x,\,t)}^{\textit{Displacement}} = \overbrace{a}^{\textit{Amplitude}} \;\; \overbrace{\sin\,(\underbrace{kx}_{\substack{\uparrow\\ \textit{Angular}\\ \textit{Wave}\\ \textit{Number}}} - \underbrace{\omega t}_{\substack{\uparrow\\ \textit{Angular}\\ \textit{Frequency}}} + \underbrace{\phi}_{\substack{\uparrow\\ \textit{Initial}\\ \textit{Phase}\\ \textit{Angle}}})}^{\text{Phase}}$$

Fig. 15.5 *The names of the quantities in Eq. (15.2) for a progressive wave.*

To understand the definition of the quantities in Eq. (15.2), let us consider the graphs shown in Fig. 15.6. These graphs represent plots of Eq. (15.2) for five different values of time t as the wave travels in positive direction of x-axis. A point of maximum positive displacement in a wave, shown by the arrow, is called *crest*, and a point of maximum negative displacement is called **trough**. The progress of the wave is indicated by the progress of the short arrow pointing to a crest of the wave towards the right. As we move from one plot to another, the short arrow moves to the right with the wave shape,

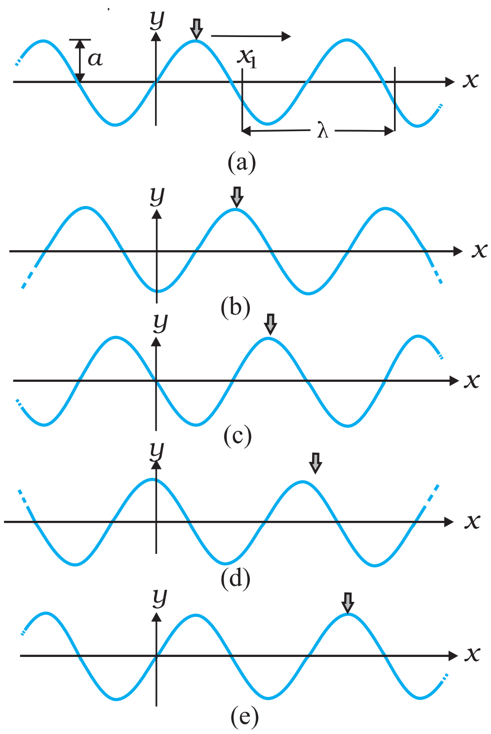


Fig. 15.6 *Plots of Eq. (15.2) for a wave travelling in the positive direction of an x-axis at five different values of time t.*

but the string moves only parallel to y-axis. It can be seen that as we go from plot (a) to (e), a particular element of the string has undergone one complete cycle of changes or completed one full oscillation. During this course of time the short arrow head or the wave has moved by a characteristic distance along the x-axis.

In the context of the above five plots, we will now define various quantities in Eq. (15.2) and shown in Fig.15.5.

15.3.1 Amplitude and Phase

The **amplitude** a of a wave such as that in Figs.15.5 and 15.6 is the magnitude of the maximum displacement of the elements from their equilibrium positions as the wave passes through them. It is depicted in Fig. 15.6 (a). Since a is a magnitude, it is a positive quantity, even if the displacement is negative.

The **phase** of the wave is the argument $(kx - \omega t + \phi)$ of the oscillatory term sin $(kx - \omega t + \phi)$ in Eq. (15.2). It describes the state of motion as the wave sweeps through a string element at a particular position x. It changes linearly with time t. The sine function also changes with time, oscillating between +1 and –1. Its extreme positive value +1 corresponds to a peak of the wave moving through the element; then the value of y at position x is a. Its extreme negative value –1 corresponds to a valley of the wave moving through the element, then the value of y at position x is $-a$. Thus, the sine function and the time dependent phase of a wave correspond to the oscillation of a string element, and the amplitude of the wave determines the extremes of the element's displacement. The constant ϕ is called the **initial phase angle**. The value of ϕ is determined by the initial (t = 0) displacement and velocity of the element (say, at x = 0).

It is always possible to choose origin (x = 0) and the initial instant (t = 0) such that ϕ = 0. There is no loss of generality in working with Eq. (15.2) with ϕ = 0.

15.3.2 Wavelength and Angular Wave Number

The **wavelength** λ of a wave is the distance (parallel to the direction of wave propagation) between the consecutive repetitions of the shape of the wave. It is the minimum distance between two consecutive troughs or crests or two consecutive points in the same phase of wave motion. A typical wavelength is marked in Fig.15.6(a), which is a plot of Eq. (15.2) for $t = 0$ and ϕ = 0. At this time Eq. (15.2) reduces to

$$y(x, 0) = a \sin kx \qquad (15.5)$$

By definition, the displacement y is same at both ends of this wavelength, that is at $x = x_1$ and at $x = x_1 + \lambda$. Thus, by Eq. (15.2),

$$a \sin k x_1 = a \sin k (x_1 + \lambda)$$
$$= a \sin (k x_1 + k \lambda)$$

This condition can be satisfied only when,

$$k \lambda = 2\pi n$$

where n = 1, 2, 3... Since λ is defined as the least distance between points with the same phase, n =1 and

$$k \quad \frac{2}{\ } \qquad (15.6)$$

k is called the **propagation constant** or the **angular wave number** ; its SI unit is radian per metre or rad m^{-1}.*

It may be noted that in Fig. 15.6, as we move from one plot to another, the wave moves to the right by a distance equal to ¼ λ. Thus, by the fifth plot, it has moved to the right by a distance equal to λ.

15.3.3 Period, Angular Frequency and Frequency

Figure15.7 shows a graph of the displacement y, of Eq. (15.2), versus time t at a certain position along the string, taken to be x = 0. If you were to monitor the string, you would see that the

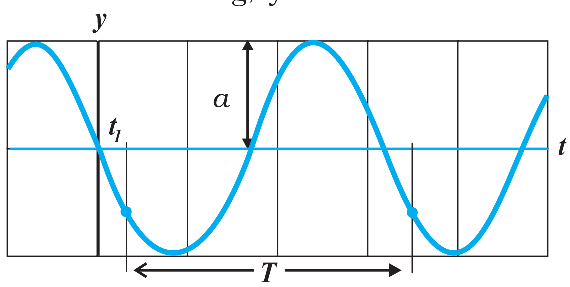


Fig. 15.7 *A graph of the displacement of the string element at x = 0 as a function of time, as the sinusoidal wave of Fig. 14.6 passes through it. The amplitude a is indicated. A typical period T, measured from an arbitrary time t_1 is also indicated.*

* *Here again, 'radian' could be dropped and the units could be written merely as m^{-1}. Thus, k represents 2π times the number of waves (or the total phase difference) that can be accommodated per unit length, with SI units m^{-1}.*

element of the string at that position moves up and down in simple harmonic motion given by Eq. (15.2) with $x = 0$,

$$y\,(0,t) = a \sin(-\omega t)$$

$$= -\,a \sin \omega t$$

Figure 15.7 is a graph of this equation; it does not show the shape of the wave.

The **period** of oscillation T of a wave is defined as the time any string element takes to move through one complete oscillation. A typical period is marked on the Fig. 15.7. Applying Eq. (15.2) on both ends of this time interval, we get

$$-\,a \sin \omega t_1 = -\,a \sin \omega(t_1 + T)$$

$$= -\,a \sin(\omega t_1 + \omega T)$$

This can be true only if the least value of ωT is 2π, or if

$$\omega = 2\pi/T \qquad (15.7)$$

ω is called the **angular frequency** of the wave, its SI unit is rad s^{-1}.

Look back at the five plots of a travelling wave in Fig. 15.6. The time between two consecutive plots is $T/4$. Thus, by the fifth plot, every string element has made one full oscillation.

The **frequency** ν of a wave is defined as $1/T$ and is related to the angular frequency ω by

$$\nu = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \qquad (15.8)$$

It is the number of oscillations per unit time made by a string element as the wave passes through it. It is usually measured in hertz.

In the discussion above, reference has always been made to a wave travelling along a string or a transverse wave. In a longitudinal wave, the displacement of an element of the medium is parallel to the direction of propagation of the wave. In Eq. (15.2), the displacement function for a longitudinal wave is written as,

$$s(x,\,t) = a \sin(kx - \omega t + \phi) \qquad (15.9)$$

where $s(x, t)$ is the displacement of an element of the medium in the direction of propagation of the wave at position x and time t. In Eq. (15.9), a is the displacement amplitude; other quantities have the same meaning as in case of a transverse wave except that the displacement function $y\,(x, t)$ is to be replaced by the function $s\,(x, t)$.

Example 15.2 A wave travelling along a string is described by,

$$y(x,\,t) = 0.005 \sin(80.0\,x - 3.0\,t),$$

in which the numerical constants are in SI units (0.005 m, 80.0 rad m^{-1}, and 3.0 rad s^{-1}). Calculate (a) the amplitude, (b) the wavelength, and (c) the period and frequency of the wave. Also, calculate the displacement y of the wave at a distance $x = 30.0$ cm and time $t = 20$ s ?

Answer On comparing this displacement equation with Eq. (15.2),

$$y\,(x,\,t) = a \sin(kx - \omega t),$$

we find

(a) the amplitude of the wave is 0.005 m = 5 mm.

(b) the angular wave number k and angular frequency ω are

$$k = 80.0 \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ and } \omega = 3.0 \text{ s}^{-1}$$

We then relate the wavelength λ to k through Eq. (15.6),

$$\lambda = 2\pi/k$$

$$= \frac{2\pi}{80.0 \text{ m}^{-1}}$$

$$= 7.85 \text{ cm}$$

(c) Now we relate T to ω by the relation

$$T = 2\pi/\omega$$

$$= \frac{2\pi}{3.0 \text{ s}^{-1}}$$

$$= 2.09 \text{ s}$$

and frequency, $\nu = 1/T = 0.48$ Hz

The displacement y at $x = 30.0$ cm and time $t = 20$ s is given by

$$y = (0.005 \text{ m}) \sin(80.0 \times 0.3 - 3.0 \times 20)$$

$$= (0.005 \text{ m}) \sin(-36 + 12\pi)$$

$$= (0.005 \text{ m}) \sin(1.699)$$

$$= (0.005 \text{ m}) \sin(97^0) \simeq 5 \text{ mm}$$

15.4 THE SPEED OF A TRAVELLING WAVE

Let us monitor the propagation of a travelling wave represented by Eq. (15.2) along a string. The wave is travelling in the positive direction of x. We find that an element of string at a particular position x moves up and down as a function of time but the waveform advances to the right. The displacement of various elements of the string at two different instants of time t differing by a small time interval Δt is depicted in Fig. 15.8 (the phase angle ϕ has been taken to be zero). It is observed that during this interval of time the entire wave pattern moves by a distance Δx in the positive direction of x. Thus the wave is travelling to the right, in the positive direction of x. The ratio $\Delta x/\Delta t$ is the wave speed v.

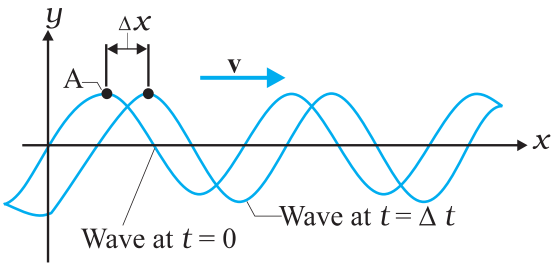


Fig. 15.8 *The plots of Eq.(15.2) at two instants of time differing by an interval Δt, at $t = 0$ and then at $t = \Delta t$. As the wave moves to the right at velocity **v**, the entire curve shifts a distance Δx during Δt. The point A rides the waveform but the string element moves only up and down.*

As the wave moves (see Fig. 15.8), each point of the moving waveform represents a particular phase of the wave and retains its displacement y. It may be noted that the points on the string do not retain their displacement, but the points on the waveform do. Let us consider a point like A marked on a peak of the waveform. If a point like A on the waveform retains its displacement as it moves, it follows from Eq. (15.2) that this is possible only when the argument is constant. It, therefore, follows that

$$kx - \omega t = \text{constant} \tag{15.10}$$

Note that in the argument both x and t are changing; therefore, to keep the argument constant, if t increases, x must also increase. This is possible only when the wave is moving in the positive direction of x.

To find the wave speed v, let us differentiate Eq. (15.10) with respect to time ;

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\, kx \qquad t \qquad 0$$

or $$k\frac{\mathrm{d}x}{\mathrm{d}t} \qquad 0$$

or $$\frac{\mathrm{d}x}{\mathrm{d}t} \quad \frac{}{k} \quad v \tag{15.11}$$

Making use of Eqs. (15.6)-(15.8), we can write,

$$v = \frac{\omega}{k} = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda\nu \tag{15.12}$$

Equation (15.11) is a general relation valid for all progressive waves. It merely states that the wave moves a distance of one wavelength in one period of oscillation. The speed of a wave is related to its wavelength and frequency by the Eq. (15.12), **but it is determined by the properties of the medium.** If a wave is to travel in a medium like air, water, steel, or a stretched string, it must cause the particles of that medium to oscillate as it passes through it. For this to happen, the medium must possess mass and elasticity. Therefore the linear mass density (or mass per unit length, in case of linear systems like a stretched string) and the elastic properties determine how fast the wave can travel in the medium. Conversely, it should be possible to calculate the speed of the wave through the medium in terms of these properties. In subsequent sub-sections of this chapter, we will obtain specific expressions for the speed of mechanical waves in some media.

15.4.1 Speed of a Transverse Wave on Stretched String

The speed of transverse waves on a string is determined by two factors, (i) the linear mass density or mass per unit length, μ, and (ii) the tension T. The mass is required so that there is kinetic energy and without tension no disturbance can be propagated in the string. The exact derivation of the relationship between the speed of wave in a stretched string and the two parameters mentioned above is outside the scope of this book. However, we take recourse to a simpler procedure. In dimensional analysis, we have already learnt (Chapter 2) how to get a relationship between different quantities which are interrelated. Such a relation is, however, uncertain to the extent of a constant factor.

The linear mass density, μ, of a string is the mass m of the string divided by its length l. Therefore its dimension is $[ML^{-1}]$. The tension T

has the dimension of force — namely, [M L T^{-2}]. Our goal is to combine μ and T in such a way as to generate υ [dimension (L T^{-1})]. If we examine the dimensions of these quantities, it can be seen that the ratio T/μ has the dimension

$$\frac{\left[MLT^{-2}\right]}{\left[ML^{-1}\right]} = \left[L^2\,T^{-2}\right]$$

Therefore, if υ depends only on T and μ , the relation between them must be

$$\upsilon = C\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \tag{15.13}$$

Here C is a dimensionless constant that cannot be determined by dimensional analysis. By adopting a more rigorous procedure it can be shown that the constant C is indeed equal to unity. The speed of transverse waves on a stretched string is, therefore, given by

$$\upsilon = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \tag{15.14}$$

Equation (15.14) tells us :

The speed of a wave along a stretched ideal string depends only on the tension and the linear mass density of the string and does not depend on the frequency of the wave.

The **frequency** of the wave is determined by the source that generates the wave. The **wavelength** is then fixed by Eq. (15.12) in the form,

$$\lambda = \frac{\upsilon}{\nu} \tag{15.15}$$

Example 15.3 A steel wire 0.72 m long has a mass of 5.0 ×10^{-3} kg. If the wire is under a tension of 60 N, what is the speed of transverse waves on the wire ?

Answer Mass per unit length of the wire,

$$\mu = \frac{5.0\times10^{-3}\ \text{kg}}{0.72\ \text{m}}$$

$$= 6.9\times10^{-3}\ \text{kg m}^{-1}$$

Tension, T = 60 N

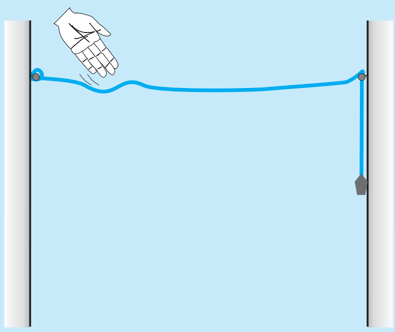
The speed of wave on the wire is given by

$$\upsilon = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{60\ \text{N}}{6.9\times10^{-3}\ \text{kg m}^{-1}}} = 93\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

15.4.2 Speed of a Longitudinal Wave Speed of Sound

In a longitudinal wave the constituents of the medium oscillate forward and backward in the direction of propagation of the wave. We have already seen that the sound waves travel in the form of compressions and rarefactions of small

Propagation of a pulse on a rope



You can easily see the motion of a pulse on a rope. You can also see its reflection from a rigid boundary and measure its velocity of travel. You will need a rope of diameter 1 to 3 cm, two hooks and some weights. You can perform this experiment in your classroom or laboratory.

Take a long rope or thick string of diameter 1 to 3 cm, and tie it to hooks on opposite walls in a hall or laboratory. Let one end pass on a hook and hang some weight (about 1 to 5 kg) to it. The walls may be about 3 to 5 m apart.

Take a stick or a rod and strike the rope hard at a point near one end. This creates a pulse on the rope which now travels on it. You can see it reaching the end and reflecting back from it. You can check the phase relation between the incident pulse and reflected pulse. You can easily watch two or three reflections before the pulse dies out. You can take a stopwatch and find the time for the pulse to travel the distance between the walls, and thus measure its velocity. Compare it with that obtained from Eq. (15.14).

This is also what happens with a thin metallic string of a musical instrument. The major difference is that the velocity on a string is fairly high because of low mass per unit length, as compared to that on a thick rope. The low velocity on a rope allows us to watch the motion and make measurements beautifully.

volume elements of air. The property that determines the extent to which the volume of an element of a medium changes when the pressure on it changes, is the **bulk modulus** B, defined (see Chapter 9) as,

$$B = -\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta V/V} \tag{15.16}$$

Here $\Delta V/V$ is the fractional change in volume produced by a change in pressure ΔP. The SI unit for pressure is N m^{-2} or pascal (Pa). Now since the longitudinal waves in a medium travel in the form of compressions and rarefactions or changes in density, the inertial property of the medium, which could be involved in the process, is the density ρ. The dimension of density is $[ML^{-3}]$. Thus, the dimension of the ratio B/ρ is,

$$\frac{\left[M\,L^{-1}\,T^{-2}\right]}{\left[M\,L^{-3}\right]} = \left[L^2\;T^{-2}\right] \tag{15.17}$$

Therefore, on the basis of dimensional analysis the most appropriate expression for the speed of longitudinal waves in a medium is

$$v = C\sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \tag{15.18}$$

where C is a dimensionless constant and can be shown to be unity. Thus the speed of longitudinal waves in a medium is given by,

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \tag{15.19}$$

The speed of propagation of a longitudinal wave in a fluid therefore depends only on the bulk modulus and the density of the medium.

When a solid bar is struck a blow at one end, the situation is somewhat different from that of a fluid confined in a tube or cylinder of constant cross section. For this case, the relevant modulus of elasticity is the Young's modulus, since the sideway expansion of the bar is negligible and only longitudinal strain needs to be considered. It can be shown that the speed of a longitudinal wave in the bar is given by,

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{Y}{\rho}} \tag{15.20}$$

where Y is the Young's modulus of the material of the bar.

Table 15.1 gives the speed of sound in various media.

Table 15.1 Speed of Sound in some Media

Medium	Speed (m s^{-1})
Gases	
Air (0 °C)	331
Air (20 °C)	343
Helium	965
Hydrogen	1284
Liquids	
Water (0 °C)	1402
Water (20 °C)	1482
Seawater	1522
Solids	
Aluminium	6420
Copper	3560
Steel	5941
Granite	6000
Vulcanised Rubber	54

It may be noted that although the densities of liquids and solids are much higher than those of the gases, the speed of sound in them is higher. It is because liquids and solids are less compressible than gases, i.e. have much greater bulk modulus.

In the case of an ideal gas, the relation between pressure P and volume V is given by (see Chapter 11)

$$PV = Nk_BT \tag{15.21}$$

where N is the number of molecules in volume V, k_B is the Boltzmann constant and T the temperature of the gas (in Kelvin). Therefore, for an isothermal change it follows from Eq.(15.21) that

$$V\Delta P + P\Delta V = 0$$

or $$-\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta V/V} = P$$

Hence, substituting in Eq. (15.16), we have

$$B = P$$

Therefore, from Eq. (15.19) the speed of a longitudinal wave in an ideal gas is given by,

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{P}{\rho}} \tag{15.22}$$

This relation was first given by Newton and is known as Newton's formula.

> **Example 15.4** Estimate the speed of sound in air at standard temperature and pressure. The mass of 1 mole of air is 29.0×10^{-3} kg.

Answer We know that 1 mole of any gas occupies 22.4 litres at STP. Therefore, density of air at STP is :

ρ_o = (mass of one mole of air)/ (volume of one mole of air at STP)

$$\frac{29.0 \quad 10^{\ 3}\ \text{kg}}{22.4 \quad 10^{\ 3}\ \text{m}^3}$$

$$= 1.29 \text{ kg m}^{-3}$$

According to Newton's formula for the speed of sound in a medium, we get for the speed of sound in air at STP,

$$v = \left[\frac{1.01 \times 10^5 \text{ N m}^{-2}}{1.29 \text{ kg m}^{-3}}\right]^{1/2} = 280 \text{ m s}^{-1} \quad (15.23)$$

The result shown in Eq.(15.23) is about 15% smaller as compared to the experimental value of 331 m s^{-1} as given in Table 15.1. Where did we go wrong ? If we examine the basic assumption made by Newton that the pressure variations in a medium during propagation of sound are isothermal, we find that this is not correct. It was pointed out by Laplace that the pressure variations in the propagation of sound waves are so fast that there is little time for the heat flow to maintain constant temperature. These variations, therefore, are adiabatic and not isothermal. For adiabatic processes the ideal gas satisfies the relation,

$$PV^{\gamma} = \text{constant}$$

i.e. $\quad \Delta(PV^{\gamma}) = 0$

or $\quad P\gamma V^{\gamma-1}\Delta V + V^{\gamma}\Delta P = 0$

Thus for an ideal gas the adiabatic bulk modulus is given by,

$$B_{ad} = -\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta V/V} = \gamma P$$

where γ is the ratio of two specific heats, C_p/C_v. The speed of sound is, therefore, given by,

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma P}{\rho}} \quad (15.24)$$

This modification of Newton's formula is referred to as the **Laplace correction**. For air $\gamma = 7/5$. Now using Eq. (15.24) to estimate the speed of sound in air at STP, we get a value 331.3 m s^{-1}, which agrees with the measured speed.

15.5 THE PRINCIPLE OF SUPERPOSITION OF WAVES

Let us consider that two waves are travelling simultaneously along the same stretched string in opposite directions. The sequence of pictures shown in Fig. 15.9 depicts the state of displacement of various elements of the string at different time instant. Each picture depicts the resultant waveform in the string at a given instant of time. It is observed that the **net displacement of any element of the string at a given time is the algebraic sum of the displacements due to each wave**. This way of

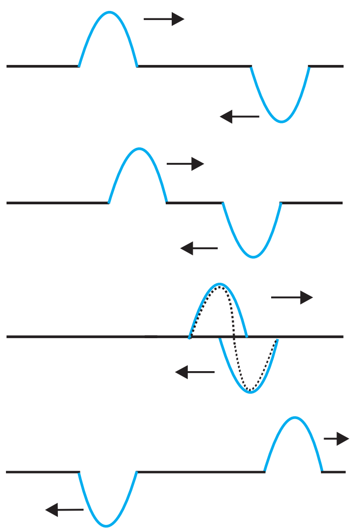


Fig. 15.9 *A sequence of pictures depicting two pulses travelling in opposite directions along a stretched string. They meet and pass through each other and move on independently as shown by the sequence of time snapshots (a) through (d). The total disturbance is the algebraic sum of the displacements due to each pulse. When the two disturbances overlap they give a complicated pattern as shown in (c). In region (d) they have passed each other and proceed unchanged.*

addition of individual waveforms to determine the net waveform is called the **principle of superposition**. To put this rule in a mathematical form, let $y_1(x, t)$ and $y_2(x, t)$ be the displacements that any element of the string would experience if each wave travelled alone. The displacement $y(x,t)$ of an element of the string when the waves overlap is then given by,

$$y(x, t) = y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t) \quad (15.25)$$

The principle of superposition can also be expressed by stating that **overlapping waves algebraically add to produce a resultant wave (or a net wave)**. The principle implies that the overlapping waves do not, in any way, alter the travel of each other.

If we have two or more waves moving in the medium the resultant waveform is the sum of wave functions of individual waves. That is, if the wave functions of the moving waves are

$$y_1 = f_1(x-vt),$$
$$y_2 = f_2(x-vt),$$
....
....
$$y_n = f_n(x-vt)$$

then the wave function describing the disturbance in the medium is

$$y = f_1(x-vt) + f_2(x-vt) + \ldots + f_n(x-vt)$$
$$= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i(x-vt) \quad (15.26)$$

As illustrative examples of this principle we shall study the phenomena of interference and reflection of waves.

Let a wave travelling along a stretched string be given by,

$$y_1(x, t) = a \sin(kx - \omega t) \quad (15.27)$$

and another wave, shifted from the first by a phase ϕ,

$$y_2(x, t) = a \sin(kx - \omega t + \phi) \quad (15.28)$$

Both the waves have the same angular frequency, same angular wave number k (same wavelength) and the same amplitude a. They travel in the positive direction of x-axis, with the same speed. Their phases at a given distance and time differ by a constant angle ϕ. These waves are said to be out of phase by ϕ or have a phase difference ϕ.

Now, applying the superposition principle, the resultant wave is the algebraic sum of the two constituent waves and has displacement

$$y(x, t) = a \sin(kx - \omega t) + a \sin(kx - \omega t + \phi) \quad (15.29)$$

We now use the trigonometric relation

$$\sin\alpha + \sin\beta = 2\sin\frac{1}{2}(\alpha+\beta)\cos\frac{1}{2}(\alpha-\beta) \quad (15.30)$$

Applying this relation to Eq. (15.29) we have

$$y(x, t) = [2a\cos\frac{1}{2}\phi]\sin(kx - \omega t + \frac{1}{2}\phi) \quad (15.31)$$

Equation (15.31) shows that the resultant wave is also a sinusoidal wave, travelling in the positive direction of x-axis.

The resultant wave differs from the constituent waves in two respects: (1) its phase angle is $(½)\phi$ and (2) its amplitude is the quantity in brackets in Eq. (15.31) viz.,

$$A(\phi) = 2a\cos(½)\phi \quad (15.32)$$

If $\phi = 0$, i.e. the two waves are in phase, Eq. (15.31) reduces to

$$A(0) = 2a\sin(kx - \omega t) \quad (15.33)$$

The amplitude of the resultant wave is $2a$, which is the largest possible value of $A(\phi)$.

If $\phi = \pi$, the two waves are completely out of phase, the amplitude of the resultant wave given by Eq. (15.32) reduces to zero. We then have for all x and t,

$$y(x, t) = 0 \quad (15.34)$$

These cases are shown in Fig. 15.10.

15.6 REFLECTION OF WAVES

In previous sections we have discussed wave propagation in unbounded media. What happens when a pulse or a travelling wave encounters a rigid boundary ? It is a common experience that under such a situation the pulse or the wave gets reflected. An everyday example of the reflection of sound waves from a rigid boundary is the phenomenon of echo. If the boundary is not completely rigid or is an interface between two different elastic media, the effect of boundary conditions on

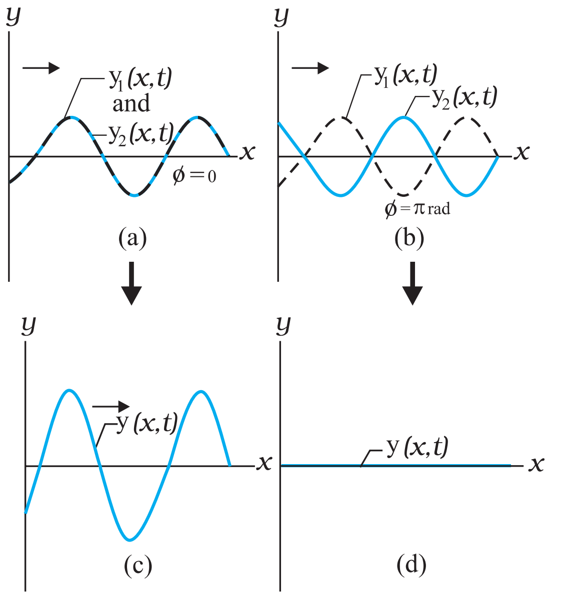


Fig. 15.10 *Two identical sinusoidal waves, $y_1(x, t)$ and $y_2(x, t)$, travel along a stretched string in the positive direction of x-axis. They give rise to a resultant wave y (x, t). The phase difference between the two waves is (a) 0 and (b) π or 180°. The corresponding resultant waves are shown in (c) and (d).*

an incident pulse or a wave is somewhat complicated. A part of the wave is reflected and a part is transmitted into the second medium. If a wave is incident obliquely on the boundary between two different media the transmitted wave is called the **refracted wave**. The incident and refracted waves obey Snell's law of refraction, and the incident and reflected waves obey the usual laws of reflection.

To illustrate the reflection of waves at a boundary, we consider two situations. First, a string is fixed to a rigid wall at its left end, as shown in Fig. 15.11(a). Second, the left end of the string is tied to a ring, which slides up and down without any friction on a rod, as shown in Fig. 15.11(b). A pulse is allowed to propagate in both these strings, the pulse, on reaching the left end, gets reflected; the state of disturbance in the string at various times is shown in Fig. 15.11.

In Fig. 15.11(a), the string is fixed to the wall at its left end. When the pulse arrives at that end, it exerts an upward force on the wall. By Newton's third law, the wall exerts an opposite force of equal magnitude on the string. This second force generates a pulse at the support (the wall), which travels back along the string in the direction opposite to that of the incident pulse. In a reflection of this kind, there must be no displacement at the support as the string is fixed there. The reflected and incident pulses must have opposite signs, so as to cancel each other at that point. Thus, in case of a travelling wave, the reflection at a rigid boundary will take place with a phase reversal or with a phase difference of π or 180°.

In Fig. 15.11(b), the string is fastened to a ring, which slides without friction on a rod. In this case, when the pulse arrives at the left end, the ring moves up the rod. As the ring moves, it pulls on the string, stretching the string and producing a reflected pulse with the same sign and amplitude as the incident pulse. Thus, in such a reflection, the incident and reflected pulses reinforce each other, creating the

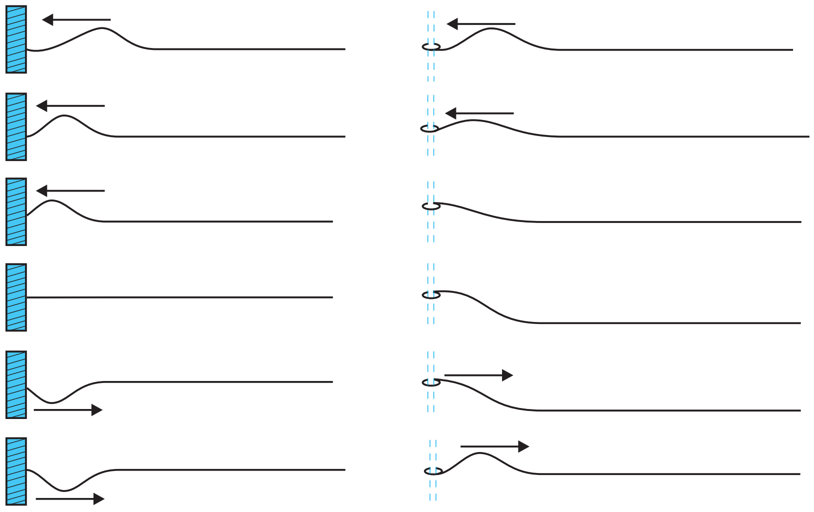


Fig. 15.11 *(a) A pulse incident from the right is reflected at the left end of the string, which is tied to a wall. Note that the reflected pulse is inverted from the incident pulse. (b) Here the left end is tied to a ring that can slide up and down without friction on the rod. Now the reflected pulse is not inverted by reflection.*

maximum displacement at the end of the string: the maximum displacement of the ring is twice the amplitude of either of the pulses. Thus, the reflection is without any additional phase shift. In case of a travelling wave the reflection at an open boundary, such as the open end of an organ pipe, the reflection takes place without any phase change.

We can thus, summarise the reflection of waves at a boundary or interface between two media as follows:

A travelling wave, at a rigid boundary or a closed end, is reflected with a phase reversal but the reflection at an open boundary takes place without any phase change.

To express the above statement mathematically, let the incident wave be represented by

$$y_i(x, t) = a \sin (kx - \omega t),$$

then, for reflection at a rigid boundary the reflected wave is represented by,

$$y_r(x, t) = a \sin (kx + \omega t + \pi).$$

$$= - a \sin (kx + \omega t) \qquad (15.35)$$

For reflection at an open boundary, the reflected wave is represented by

$$y_r (x, t) = a \sin (kx + \omega t). \qquad (15.36)$$

15.6.1 Standing Waves and Normal Modes

In the previous section we have considered a system which is bounded at one end. Let us now consider a system which is bounded at both the ends such as a stretched string fixed at the ends or an air column of finite length. In such a system suppose that we send a continuous sinusoidal wave of a certain frequency, say, toward the right. When the wave reaches the right end, it gets reflected and begins to travel back. The left-going wave then overlaps the wave, travelling to the right. When the left-going wave reaches the left end, it gets reflected again and the newly reflected wave begins to travel to the right, overlapping the left-going wave. This process will continue and, therefore, very soon we have many overlapping waves, which interfere with one another. In such a system, at any point x and at any time t, there are always two waves, one moving to the left and another to the right. We, therefore, have

$y_1(x, t) = a \sin (kx - \omega t)$ (wave travelling in the positive direction of x-axis)

and $y_2(x, t) = a \sin (kx + \omega t)$ (wave travelling in the negative direction of x-axis).

The principle of superposition gives, for the combined wave

$$y (x, t) = y_1(x, t) + y_2(x, t)$$

$$= a \sin (kx - \omega t) + a \sin (kx + \omega t)$$

$$= (2a \sin kx) \cos \omega t \qquad (15.37)$$

The wave represented by Eq. (15.37) does not describe a travelling wave, as the waveform or the disturbance does not move to either side. Here, the quantity $2a \sin kx$ within the brackets is the amplitude of oscillation of the element of the string located at the position x. In a travelling wave, in contrast, the amplitude of the wave is the same for all elements. Equation (15.37), therefore, represents a **standing wave**, a wave in which the waveform does not move. The formation of such waves is illustrated in Fig. 15.12.

It is seen that the points of maximum or minimum amplitude stay at one position.

The amplitude is zero for values of kx that give $\sin kx = 0$. Those values are given by

$$kx = n\pi, \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

Substituting $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ in this equation, we get

$$x = n\frac{\lambda}{2}, \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad (15.38)$$

The positions of zero amplitude are called **nodes**. Note that a distance of $\frac{\lambda}{2}$ or half a wavelength separates two consecutive nodes.

The amplitude has a maximum value of $2a$, which occurs for the values of kx that give $|\sin kx| = 1$. Those values are

$$kx = (n + ½) \pi \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

Substituting $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ in this equation, we get

$$x = (n + ½)\frac{\lambda}{2} \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad (15.39)$$

as the positions of maximum amplitude. These are called the **antinodes**. The antinodes are separated by $\lambda/2$ and are located half way between pairs of nodes.

For a stretched string of length L, fixed at both ends, the two ends of the string have to be nodes.

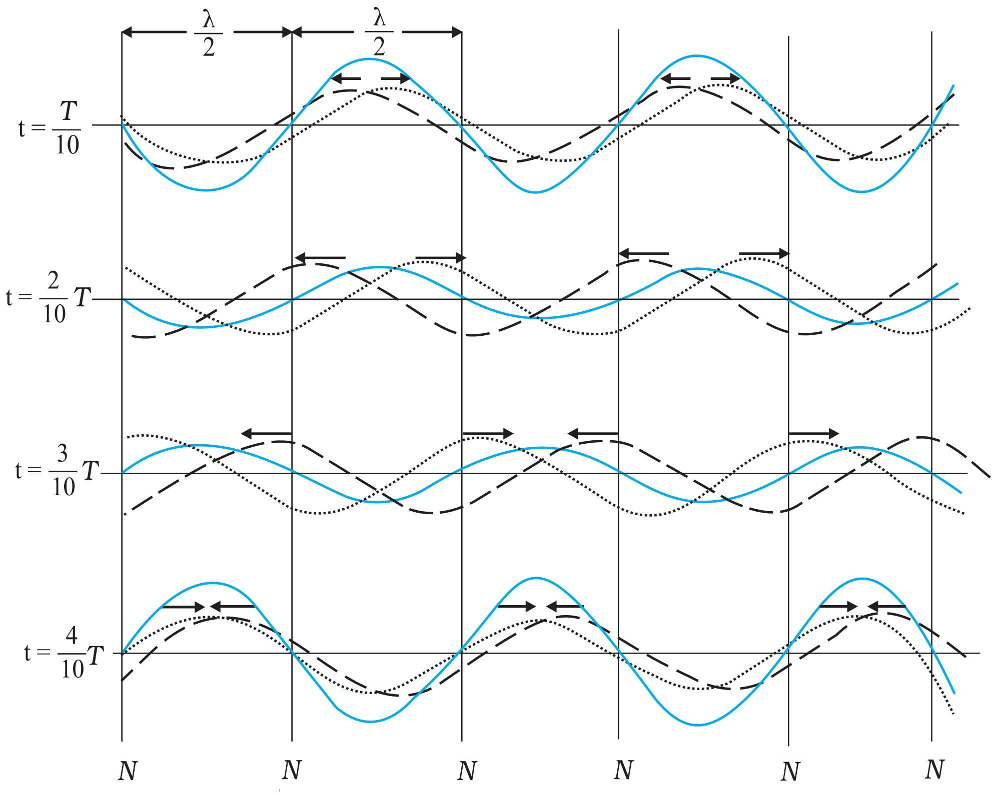


Fig. 15.12 *The formation of a standing wave in a stretched string. Two sinusoidal waves of same amplitude travel along the string in opposite directions. The set of pictures represent the state of displacements at four different times. The displacement at positions marked as N is zero at all times. These positions are called nodes.*

If one of the ends is chosen as position $x = 0$, then the other end is $x = L$. In order that this end is a node; the length L must satisfy the condition

$$L = n\,\frac{\lambda}{2}, \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad (15.40)$$

This condition shows that standing waves on a string of length L have restricted wavelength given by

$$\lambda = \frac{2L}{n}, \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \text{ etc.} \qquad (15.41)$$

The frequencies corresponding to these wavelengths follow from Eq. (15.12) as

$$\nu = n\,\frac{v}{2L}, \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \text{ etc.} \qquad (15.42)$$

where v is the speed of travelling waves on the string. The set of frequencies given by Eq. (15.42) are called the natural frequencies or **modes** of oscillation of the system. This equation tells us that the natural frequencies of a string are integral multiples of the lowest frequency $\nu = \frac{v}{2L}$, which corresponds to $n = 1$. The oscillation mode with that lowest frequency is called the **fundamental mode** or the **first harmonic**. The **second harmonic** is the oscillation mode with $n = 2$. The third harmonic corresponds to $n = 3$ and so on. The frequencies associated with these modes are often labelled as ν_1, ν_2, ν_3 and so on. The collection of all possible modes is called the **harmonic series** and n is called the harmonic number.

Some of the harmonics of a stretched string fixed at both the ends are shown in Fig. 15.13. According to the principle of superposition, a stretched string tied at both ends can vibrate simultaneously in more than one modes. Which mode is strongly excited depends on where the string is plucked or bowed. Musical instruments like sitar and violin are designed on this principle.

We now study the modes of vibration of a system closed at one end, with the other end being free. Air columns such as glass tubes partially filled with water provide examples of such systems. In these, the length of the air column can be adjusted by changing the water level in the tube. In such systems, the end of the air column in touch with the water suffers no displacement as the reflected and incident waves are exactly out of phase. For this reason the pressure changes here are the largest, since when the compressional part is reflected the pressure increase is doubled, and when the rarefaction is reflected the decrease in pressure is doubled. On the other hand, at the open end, there is maximum displacement and minimum pressure change. The two waves travelling in opposite directions are in phase here, so there are no pressure changes. Now if the length of the air column is L, then the open end, $x = L$, is an antinode and therefore, it follows from Eq. (15.39) that

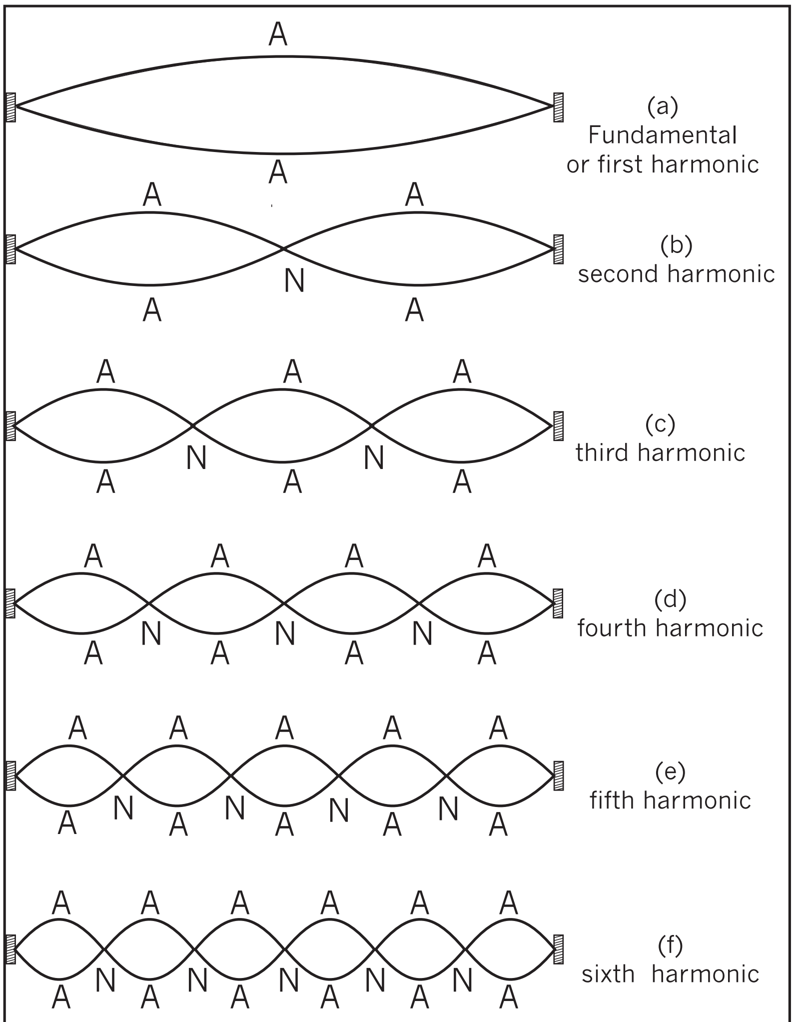


Fig. 15.13 *Stationary waves in a stretched string fixed at both ends. Various modes of vibration are shown.*

$$L = (n + \frac{1}{2})\,\frac{\ }{2}, \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

The modes, which satisfy the condition

$$\lambda = \frac{2L}{(n + 1/2)}, \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad (15.43)$$

are sustained in such an air column. The corresponding frequencies of various modes of such an air column are given by,

$$\nu = (n + \frac{1}{2})\frac{v}{2L}, \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad (15.44)$$

Some of the normal modes in an air column with the open end are shown in Fig. 15.14. The fundamental frequency is $\frac{v}{4L}$ and the higher frequencies are **odd harmonics** of the fundamental frequency, i.e. $3\frac{v}{4L}$, $5\frac{v}{4L}$, etc.

In the case of a pipe open at both ends, there will be antinodes at both ends, and **all harmonics** will be generated.

Normal modes of a circular membrane rigidly clamped to the circumference as in a tabla are determined by the boundary condition that no point on the circumference of the membrane vibrates. Estimation of the frequencies of normal modes of this system is more complex. This problem involves wave propagation in two dimensions. However, the underlying physics is the same.

We have seen above that in a string, fixed at both ends, standing waves are produced only at certain frequencies as given by Eq. (15.42) or the system **resonates** at these frequencies. Similarly an air column open at one end resonates at frequencies given by Eq. (15.44).

Example 15.5 A pipe, 30.0 cm long, is open at both ends. Which harmonic mode of the pipe rasonates a 1.1 kHz source? Will resonance with the same source be observed if one end of the pipe is closed ? Take the speed of sound in air as 330 m s^{-1}.

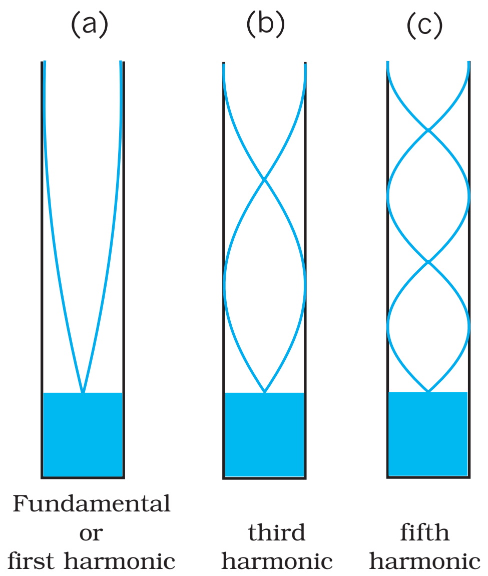
Answer The first harmonic frequency is given by

$$\nu_1 = \frac{\upsilon}{\lambda_1} = \frac{\upsilon}{2L} \quad \text{(open pipe)}$$

where L is the length of the pipe. The frequency of its nth harmonic is:

$$\nu_n = \frac{n\upsilon}{2L}, \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \text{ (open pipe)}$$

First few modes of an open pipe are shown in Fig. 15.14.



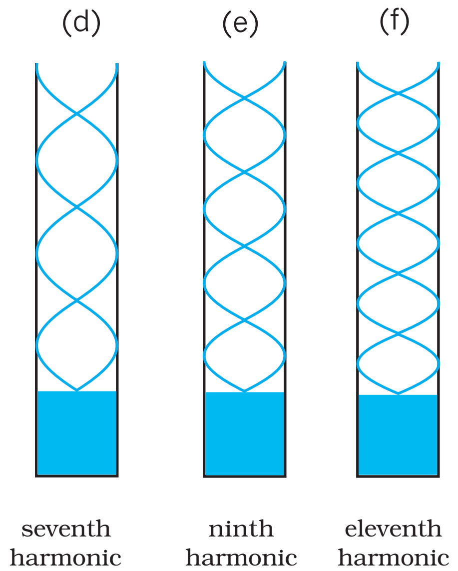


Fig. 15.14 *Some of the normal modes of vibration of an air column open at one end.*

For $L = 30.0$ cm, $\upsilon = 330$ m s^{-1},

$$\nu_n = \frac{n \times 330 \text{ (m s}^{-1})}{0.6 \text{ (m)}} = 550\, n \text{ s}^{-1}$$

Clearly, a source of frequency 1.1 kHz will resonate at υ_2, i.e. the **second harmonic**.

Now if one end of the pipe is closed (Fig. 15.15), it follows from Eq. (14.50) that the fundamental frequency is

$$\nu_1 = \frac{\upsilon}{\lambda_1} = \frac{\upsilon}{4L} \text{ (pipe closed at one end)}$$

and only the odd numbered harmonics are present :

$$\nu_3 = \frac{3\upsilon}{4L}, \quad \nu_5 = \frac{5\upsilon}{4L}, \text{ and so on.}$$

For L = 30 cm and υ = 330 m s^{-1}, the fundamental frequency of the pipe closed at one end is 275 Hz and the source frequency corresponds to its fourth harmonic. Since this harmonic is not a possible mode, no resonance will be observed with the source, the moment one end is closed.

15.7 BEATS

If we listen, a few minutes apart, two sounds of very close frequencies, say 256 Hz and 260 Hz, we will not be able to discriminate between

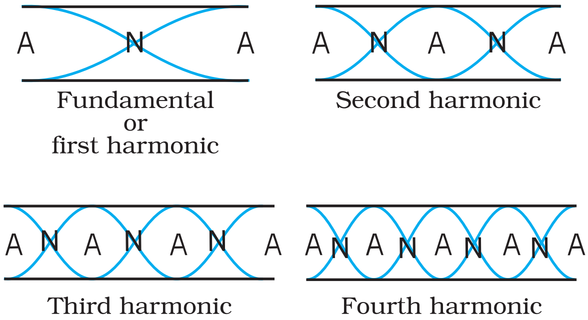


Fig. 15.15 *Standing waves in an open pipe, first four harmonics are depicted.*

them. However, if both these sounds reach our ears simultaneously, what we hear is a sound of frequency 258 Hz, the **average** of the two combining frequencies. In addition we hear a striking variation in the intensity of sound — it increases and decreases in slow, wavering **beats** that repeat at a frequency of 4 Hz, the **difference** between the frequencies of two incoming sounds. The phenomenon of wavering of sound intensity when two waves of nearly same frequencies and amplitudes travelling in the same direction, are superimposed on each other is called **beats**.

Let us find out what happens when two waves having slightly different frequencies are superposed on each other. Let the time dependent variations of the displacements due to two sound waves at a particular location be

$$s_1 = a \cos \omega_1 t \quad \text{and} \quad s_2 = a \cos \omega_2 t \qquad (15.45)$$

where $\omega_1 > \omega_2$. We have assumed, for simplicity, that the waves have same amplitude and phase. According to the superposition principle, the resultant displacement is

$$s = s_1 + s_2 = a(\cos \omega_1 t + \cos \omega_2 t)$$

$$= 2\,a \cos \frac{(\omega_1 - \omega_2)t}{2} \cos \frac{(\omega_1 + \omega_2)t}{2} \qquad (15.46)$$

If we write $\omega_b = \dfrac{(\omega_1 - \omega_2)}{2}$ and $\omega_a = \dfrac{(\omega_1 + \omega_2)}{2}$

then Eq. (15.46) can be written as

$$s = [2\,a \cos \omega_b t] \cos \omega_a t \qquad (15.47)$$

If $|\omega_1 - \omega_2| << \omega_1, \omega_2$, $\omega_a >> \omega_b$, then in Eq. (15.47) the main time dependence arises from cosine function whose angular frequency is ω_a. The quantity in the brackets can be regarded as the amplitude of this function (which is not a constant but, has a small variation of angular frequency ω_b). It becomes maximum whenever $\cos \omega_b t$ has the value +1 or –1, which happens twice in each repetition of cosine function. Since ω_1 and ω_2 are very close, ω_a cannot be differentiated easily from either of them. Thus, the result of superposition of two waves having nearly the same

Musical Pillars

Temples often have some pillars portraying human figures playing musical instruments, but seldom do these pillars themselves produce music. At the Nellaiappar temple in Tamil Nadu, gentle taps on a cluster of pillars carved out of a single piece of rock produce the basic notes of Indian classical music, viz. Sa, Re, Ga, Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni, Sa. Vibrations of these pillars depend on elasticity of the stone used, its density and shape.

Musical pillars are categorised into three types: The first is called the **Shruti Pillar**, as it can produce the basic notes — the "swaras". The second type is the **Gana Thoongal**, which generates the basic tunes that make up the "ragas". The third variety is the **Laya Thoongal** pillars that produce "taal" (beats) when tapped. The pillars at the Nellaiappar temple are a combination of the Shruti and Laya types.

Archaeologists date the Nelliappar temple to the 7th century and claim it was built by successive rulers of the Pandyan dynasty.

The musical pillars of Nelliappar and several other temples in southern India like those at Hampi (picture), Kanyakumari, and Thiruvananthapuram are unique to the country and have no parallel in any other part of the world.

Reflection of sound in an open pipe

When a high pressure pulse of air traveling down an open pipe reaches the other end, its momentum drags the air out into the open, where pressure falls rapidly to the atmospheric pressure. As a result the air following after it in the tube is pushed out. The low pressure at the end of the tube draws air from further up the tube. The air gets drawn towards the open end forcing the low pressure region to move upwards. As a result a pulse of *high* pressure air travelling *down* the tube turns into a pulse of *low* pressure air travelling *up* the tube. We say a pressure wave has been reflected at the open end with a change in phase of 180^0. Standing waves in an open pipe organ like the flute is a result of this phenomenon.

Compare this with what happens when a pulse of high pressure air arrives at a closed end: it collides and as a result pushes the air back in the opposite direction. Here, we say that the pressure wave is reflected, with no change in phase.

frequencies is a wave with nearly same angular frequency but its amplitude is not constant. Thus the intensity of resultant sound varies with an angular frequency $\omega_{beat} = 2\ \omega_b = \omega_1 - \omega_2$. Now using the relation,

$$\omega = 2\pi\nu$$

the beat frequency, ν_{beat}, is given by

$$\nu_{beat} = \nu_1 - \nu_2 \tag{15.48}$$

Thus we hear a waxing and waning of sound with a frequency equal to the difference between the frequencies of the superposing waves. The time-displacement graphs of two waves of frequency 11 Hz and 9 Hz is shown in Figs. 15.16(a) and 15.16(b). The result of their 'superposition' is shown in Fig. 15.16(c).

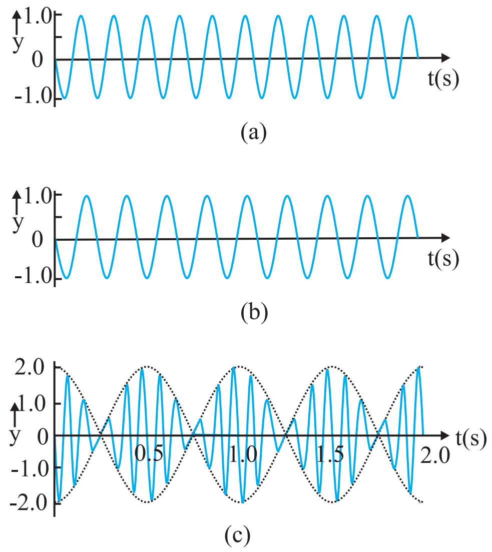


Fig. 15.16 *(a) Plot of a harmonic wave of frequency 11 Hz. (b) Plot of a harmonic wave of frequency 9 Hz. (c) Superposition of (a) and (b), showing clearly the beats in the slow (2 Hz) of the total disturbance.*

Musicians use the beat phenomenon in tuning their instruments. If an instrument is sounded against a standard frequency and tuned until the beat disappears, then the instrument is in tune with that standard.

Example 15.6 Two sitar strings A and B playing the note '*Dha*' are slightly out of tune and produce beats of frequency 5 Hz. The tension of the string B is slightly increased and the beat frequency is found to decrease to 3 Hz. What is the original frequency of B if the frequency of A is 427 Hz ?

Answer Increase in the tension of a string increases its frequency. If the original frequency of B (ν_B) were greater than that of A (ν_A), further increase in ν_B should have resulted in an increase in the beat frequency. But the beat frequency is found to decrease. This shows that $\nu_B < \nu_A$. Since $\nu_A - \nu_B = 5$ Hz, and $\nu_A = 427$ Hz, we get $\nu_B = 422$ Hz.

15.8 DOPPLER EFFECT

It is an everyday experience that the pitch (or frequency) of the whistle of a fast moving train decreases as it recedes away. When we approach a stationary source of sound with high speed, the pitch of the sound heard appears to be higher than that of the source. As the observer recedes away from the source, the observed **pitch** (or frequency) becomes lower than that of the source. This motion-related frequency change is called **Doppler effect**. The Austrian physicist Johann Christian Doppler first proposed the effect in 1842. Buys Ballot in Holland tested it experimentally in 1845. Doppler effect is a wave phenomenon, it holds not only for sound waves but also for electromagnetic waves. However, here we shall consider only sound waves.

We shall analyse changes in frequency under three different situations: (1) observer is stationary but the source is moving, (2) observer is moving but the source is stationary, and (3) both the observer and the source are moving. The situations (1) and (2) differ from each other because of the absence or presence of relative motion between the observer and the medium. Most waves require a medium for their propagation; however, electromagnetic waves do not require any medium for propagation. If there is no medium present, the Doppler shifts are same irrespective of whether the source moves or the observer moves, since there is no way of distinction between the two situations.

15.8.1 Source Moving ; Observer Stationary

Let us choose the convention to take the direction from the observer to the source as the positive direction of velocity. Consider a source S moving with velocity v_s and an observer who is stationary in a frame in which the medium is also at rest. Let the speed of a wave of angular frequency ω and period T_o, both measured by an observer at rest with respect to the medium, be v. We assume that the observer has a detector that counts every time a wave crest reaches it. As shown in Fig. 15.17, at time $t = 0$ the source is at point S_1, located at a distance L from the observer, and emits a crest. This reaches the observer at time $t_1 = L/v$. At time $t = T_0$ the source has moved a distance v_sT_0 and is at point S_2, located at a distance $(L + v_sT_0)$ from the observer. At S_2, the source emits a second crest. This reaches the observer at

$$t_2 = T_0 + \frac{(L + v_sT_0)}{v}$$

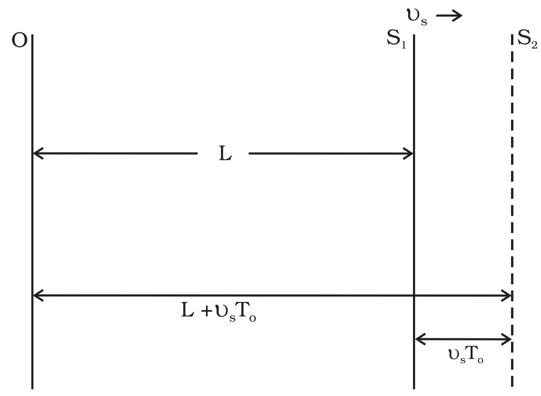


Fig. 15.17 *A source moving with velocity v_s emits a wave crest at the point S_1. It emits the next wave crest at S_2 after moving a distance v_sT_0.*

At time $n\,T_0$, the source emits its $(n+1)^{th}$ crest and this reaches the observer at time

$$t_{n+1} \quad n\,T_0 \quad \frac{L \quad n\ _sT_0}{v}$$

Hence, in a time interval

$$nT_0 \quad \frac{L \quad nv_sT_0}{v} \quad \frac{L}{v}$$

the observer's detector counts n crests and the observer records the period of the wave as T given by

$$T \quad nT_0 \quad \frac{L \quad nv_sT_0}{v} \quad \frac{L}{v} \ /n$$

$$= T_0 + \frac{v_sT_0}{v}$$

$$= T_0\left(1 + \frac{v_s}{v}\right) \qquad (15.49)$$

Equation (15.49) may be rewritten in terms of the frequency ν_o that would be measured if the source and observer were stationary, and the frequency ν observed when the source is moving, as

$$\nu = \nu_0\left(1 + \frac{v_s}{v}\right)^{-1} \qquad (15.50)$$

If v_s is small compared with the wave speed v, taking binomial expansion to terms in first order in v_s/v and neglecting higher power, Eq. (15.50) may be approximated, giving

$$\nu = \nu_0\left(1 - \frac{v_s}{v}\right) \qquad (15.51)$$

For a source approaching the observer, we replace v_s by $-v_s$ to get

$$\nu = \nu_0\left(1+\frac{\upsilon_s}{\upsilon}\right) \qquad (15.52)$$

The observer thus measures a lower frequency when the source recedes from him than he does when it is at rest. He measures a higher frequency when the source approaches him.

15.8.2 Observer Moving; Source Stationary

Now to derive the Doppler shift when the observer is moving with velocity υ_o towards the source and the source is at rest, we have to proceed in a different manner. We work in the reference frame of the moving observer. In this reference frame the source and medium are approaching at speed υ_o and the speed with which the wave approaches is $\upsilon_o + \upsilon$. Following a similar procedure as in the previous case, we find that the time interval between the arrival of the first and the $(n+1)$ th crests is

$$t_{n+1} - t_1 = n\, T_0 - \frac{n\upsilon_0 T_0}{\upsilon_0 + \upsilon}$$

The observer thus, measures the period of the wave to be

$$= T_0\left(1-\frac{\upsilon_0}{\upsilon_0+\upsilon}\right)$$

$$T_0 \quad 1 \quad \frac{\upsilon_0}{\upsilon} \quad ^{-1}$$

giving

$$\nu = {}_0\left(1+\frac{\upsilon_0}{\upsilon}\right) \qquad (15.53)$$

If $\frac{\upsilon_0}{\upsilon}$ is small, the Doppler shift is almost same whether it is the observer or the source moving since Eq. (15.53) and the approximate relation Eq. (15.51) are the same.

15.8.3 Both Source and Observer Moving

We will now derive a general expression for Doppler shift when both the source and the observer are moving. As before, let us take the direction from the observer to the source as the positive direction. Let the source and the observer be moving with velocities υ_s and υ_o respectively as shown in Fig.15.18. Suppose at time $t = 0$, the observer is at O_1 and the source is at S_1, O_1 being to the left of S_1. The source emits a wave of velocity υ, of frequency υ and period T_0 all measured by an observer at rest with respect to the medium. Let L be the distance between O_1 and S_1 at $t = 0$, when the source emits the first crest. Now, since the observer is moving, the velocity of the wave relative to the observer is $\upsilon + \upsilon_0$. Therfore the first crest reaches the observer at time $t_1 = L/(\upsilon+\upsilon_0)$. At time $t = T_0$, both the observer and the source have moved to their new positions O_2 and S_2 respectively. The new distance between the observer and the source, $O_2\, S_2$, would be $L+(\upsilon_s - \upsilon_0)\, T_0]$. At S_2, the source emits a second crest. This reaches the observer at time.

$$t_2 = T_o + [L + (\upsilon_s - \upsilon_o)T_o)]\ /(\upsilon + \upsilon_o)$$

At time nT_o the source emits its $(n+1)$ th crest and this reaches the observer at time

$$t_{n+1} = nT_o + [L + n\,(\upsilon_s - \upsilon_o)T_o)]\ /(\upsilon + \upsilon_o)$$

Hence, in a time interval $t_{n+1} - t_1$, i.e.,

$$nT_o + [L + n\,(\upsilon_s - \upsilon_o)T_o)]\ /(\upsilon + \upsilon_o) - L\,/(\upsilon + \upsilon_o),$$

the observer counts n crests and the observer records the period of the wave as equal to T given by

Application of Doppler effect

The change in frequency caused by a moving object due to Doppler effect is used to measure their velocities in diverse areas such as military, medical science, astrophysics, etc. It is also used by police to check over-speeding of vehicles.

A sound wave or electromagnetic wave of known frequency is sent towards a moving object. Some part of the wave is reflected from the object and its frequency is detected by the monitoring station. This change in frequency is called **Doppler shift**.

It is used at airports to guide aircraft, and in the military to detect enemy aircraft. Astrophysicists use it to measure the velocities of stars.

Doctors use it to study heart beats and blood flow in different part of the body. Here they use ulltrasonic waves, and in common practice, it is called **sonography**. Ultrasonic waves enter the body of the person, some of them are reflected back, and give information about motion of blood and pulsation of heart valves, as well as pulsation of the heart of the foetus. In the case of heart, the picture generated is called **echocardiogram**.

$$T = T_0\left(1+\frac{\upsilon_s - \upsilon_o}{\upsilon + \upsilon_0}\right) = T_0\left(\frac{\upsilon+\upsilon_s}{\upsilon+\upsilon_0}\right) \quad (15.54)$$

The frequency ν observed by the observer is given by

$$\nu = \nu_0\left(\frac{\upsilon+\upsilon_0}{\upsilon+\upsilon_s}\right) \quad (15.55)$$

Consider a passenger sitting in a train moving on a straight track. Suppose she hears a whistle sounded by the driver of the train. What frequency will she measure or hear? Here both the observer and the source are moving with the same velocity, so there will be no shift in frequency and the passanger will note the natural frequency. But an observer outside who is stationary with respect to the track will note a higher frequency if the train is approaching him and a lower frequency when it recedes from him.

Note that we have defined the direction from the observer to the source as the positive

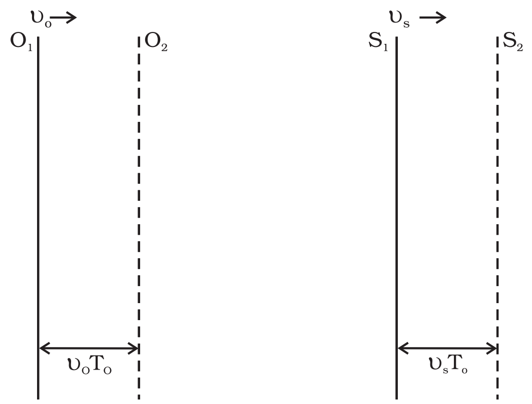


Fig. 15.18 *The observer O and the source S, both moving respectively with velocities υ_0 and υ_s. They are at position O_1 and S_1 at time $t = 0$, when the source emits the first crest of a sound, whose velocity is υ with respect to the medium. After one period, $t = T_0$, they have moved to O_2 and S_2, respectively through distances $\upsilon_0 T_0$ and $\upsilon_s T_0$, when the source emits the next crest.*

direction. Therefore, if the observer is moving towards the source, υ_0 has a positive (numerical) value whereas if O is moving away from S, υ_0 has a negative value. On the other hand, if S is moving away from O, υ_s has a positive value whereas if it is moving towards O, υ_s has a negative value. The sound emitted by the source travels in all directions. It is that part of sound coming towards the observer which the observer receives and detects. Therefore the relative velocity of sound with respect to the observer is $\upsilon + \upsilon_0$ in all cases.

Example 15.7 A rocket is moving at a speed of 200 m s^{-1} towards a stationary target. While moving, it emits a wave of frequency 1000 Hz. Some of the sound reaching the target gets reflected back to the rocket as an echo. Calculate (1) the frequency of the sound as detected by the target and (2) the frequency of the echo as detected by the rocket.

Answer (1) The observer is at rest and the source is moving with a speed of 200 m s^{-1}. Since this is comparable with the velocity of sound, 330 m s^{-1}, we must use Eq. (15.50) and not the approximate Eq. (15.51). Since the source is approaching a stationary target, $\upsilon_o = 0$, and υ_s must be replaced by $-\upsilon_s$. Thus, we have

$$\nu = \nu_0\left(1-\frac{\upsilon_s}{\upsilon}\right)^{-1}$$

$$\nu = 1000 \text{ Hz} \times [1 - 200 \text{ m s}^{-1}/330 \text{ m s}^{-1}]^{-1}$$

$$\simeq 2540 \text{ Hz}$$

(2) The target is now the source (because it is the source of echo) and the rocket's detector is now the detector or observer (because it detects echo). Thus, $\upsilon_s = 0$ and υ_o has a positive value. The frequency of the sound emitted by the source (the target) is ν, the frequency intercepted by the target and not ν_o. Therefore, the frequency as registered by the rocket is

$$\nu' = \nu\left(\frac{\upsilon+\upsilon_0}{\upsilon}\right)$$

$$= 2540 \text{ Hz} \times \frac{200 \text{ m s}^{-1} + 330 \text{ m s}^{-1}}{330 \text{ m s}^{-1}}$$

$$\simeq 4080 \text{ Hz}$$

SUMMARY

1. *Mechanical waves* can exist in material media and are governed by Newton's Laws.
2. *Transverse waves* are waves in which the particles of the medium oscillate perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation.
3. *Longitudinal waves* are waves in which the particles of the medium oscillate along the direction of wave propagation.
4. *Progressive wave* is a wave that moves from one point of medium to another.
5. *The displacement* in a sinusoidal wave propagating in the positive x direction is given by

   $$y\,(x,\ t) = a\ \sin\,(kx - \omega t + \phi)$$

   where a *is the* amplitude of the wave, k is the angular wave number, ω *is the* angular frequency, $(kx - \omega t + \phi)$ *is the* phase, *and* ϕ *is the* phase constant or phase angle.
6. *Wavelength* λ of a progressive wave is the distance between two consecutive points of the same phase at a given time. In a stationary wave, it is twice the distance between two consecutive nodes or anti nodes.
7. *Period* T of oscillation of a wave is defined as the time any element of the medium takes to move through one complete oscillation. It is related to the *angular frequency* ω through the relation

   $$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$$

8. *Frequency* v of a wave is defined as $1/T$ and is related to angular frequency by

   $$f = \frac{\omega}{2\pi}$$

9. *Speed* of a progressive wave is given by $\upsilon \quad \frac{}{\mathrm{k}} \quad \frac{}{\mathrm{T}}$
10. *The speed of a transverse wave* on a stretched string is set by the properties of the string. The speed on a string with tension T and linear mass density μ is

    $$\upsilon = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}}$$

11. *Sound waves* are longitudinal mechanical waves that can travel through solids, liquids, or gases. The speed υ of sound wave in a fluid having *bulk modulus* B and density ρ is

    $$\upsilon = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}}$$

    The speed of longitudinal waves in a metallic bar is

    $$\upsilon = \sqrt{\frac{Y}{\rho}}$$

    For gases, since $B = \gamma P$, the speed of sound is

    $$\upsilon = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma P}{\rho}}$$

12. When two or more waves traverse the same medium, the displacement of any element of the medium is the algebraic sum of the displacements due to each wave. This is known as the *principle of superposition* of waves

$$y = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i(x - vt)$$

13. Two sinusoidal waves on the same string exhibit *interference*, adding or cancelling according to the principle of superposition. If the two are travelling in the same direction and have the same amplitude a and frequency but differ in phase by a *phase constant* ϕ, the result is a single wave with the same frequency ω:

$$y\,(x,\,t) \;=\; 2a\cos\frac{1}{2}\quad \sin\ kx \quad t \quad \frac{1}{2}$$

If $\phi = 0$ or an integral multiple of 2π, the waves are exactly in phase and the interference is constructive; if $\phi = \pi$, they are exactly out of phase and the interference is destructive.

14. A travelling wave, at a rigid boundary or a closed end, is reflected with a phase reversal but the reflection at an open boundary takes place without any phase change.

For an incident wave

$$y_i\,(x,\,t) = a\sin\,(kx - \omega t\,)$$

the reflected wave at a rigid boundary is

$$y_r\,(x,\,t) = -\,a\sin\,(kx + \omega t\,)$$

For reflection at an open boundary

$$y_r\,(x,t\,) = a\sin\,(kx + \omega t)$$

15. The interference of two identical waves moving in opposite directions produces *standing waves.* For a string with fixed ends, the standing wave is given by

$$y\,(x,\,t) = [2a\sin\,kx\,]\cos\,\omega t$$

Standing waves are characterised by fixed locations of zero displacement called *nodes* and fixed locations of maximum displacements called *antinodes.* The separation between two consecutive nodes or antinodes is $\lambda/2$.

A stretched string of length L fixed at both the ends vibrates with frequencies given by

$$\nu \;= \frac{1}{2}\,\frac{v}{2L}, \qquad n = 1,\,2,\,3,\,\ldots$$

The set of frequencies given by the above relation are called the *normal modes* of oscillation of the system. The oscillation mode with lowest frequency is called the *fundamental mode* or the *first harmonic.* The *second harmonic* is the oscillation mode with $n = 2$ and so on.

A pipe of length L with one end closed and other end open (such as air columns) vibrates with frequencies given by

$$\nu \quad \text{n} \quad \tfrac{1}{2} \quad \frac{v}{2\text{L}}, \qquad n = 0,\,1,\,2,\,3,\,\ldots$$

The set of frequencies represented by the above relation are the *normal modes* of oscillation of such a system. The lowest frequency given by $v/4L$ is the fundamental mode or the first harmonic.

16. A string of length L fixed at both ends or an air column closed at one end and open at the other end, vibrates with frequencies called its normal modes. Each of these frequencies is a *resonant frequency* of the system.

17. *Beats* arise when two waves having slightly different frequencies, ν_1 and ν_2 and comparable amplitudes, are superposed. The beat frequency is

$$\nu_{beat} = \nu_1 \sim \nu_2$$

18. The *Doppler effect* is a change in the observed frequency of a wave when the source and the observer O moves relative to the medium. For sound the observed frequency ν is given in terms of the source frequency ν_o by

$$\nu = \nu_o \left(\frac{\upsilon + \upsilon_0}{\upsilon + \upsilon_s} \right)$$

here υ is the speed of sound through the medium, υ_o is the velocity of observer relative to the medium, and υ_s is the source velocity relative to the medium. In using this formula, velocities in the direction OS should be treated as positive and those opposite to it should be taken to be negative.

Physical quantity	Symbol	Dimensions	Unit	Remarks
Wavelength	λ	[L]	m	Distance between two consecutive points with the same phase.
Propagation constant	k	$[L^{-1}]$	m^{-1}	$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$
Wave speed	υ	$[LT^{-1}]$	m s^{-1}	$\nu = \upsilon\lambda$
Beat frequency	ν_{beat}	$[T^{-1}]$	s^{-1}	Difference of two close frequencies of superposing waves.

POINTS TO PONDER

1. A wave is not motion of matter as a whole in a medium. A wind is different from the sound wave in air. The former involves motion of air from one place to the other. The latter involves compressions and rarefactions of layers of air.
2. In a wave, energy and *not the matter* is transferred from one point to the other.
3. Energy transfer takes place because of the coupling through elastic forces between neighbouring oscillating parts of the medium.
4. Transverse waves can propagate only in medium with shear modulus of elasticity, Longitudinal waves need bulk modulus of elasticity and are therefore, possible in all media, solids, liquids and gases.
5. In a harmonic progressive wave of a given frequency all particles have the same amplitude but different phases at a given instant of time. In a stationary wave, all particles between two nodes have the same phase at a given instant but have different amplitudes.
6. Relative to an observer at rest in a medium the speed of a mechanical wave in that medium (υ) depends only on elastic and other properties (such as mass density) of the medium. It does not depend on the velocity of the source.
7. For an observer moving with velocity υ_o relative to the medium, the speed of a wave is obviously different from υ and is given by $\upsilon \pm \upsilon_o$.

EXERCISES

15.1 A string of mass 2.50 kg is under a tension of 200 N. The length of the stretched string is 20.0 m. If the transverse jerk is struck at one end of the string, how long does the disturbance take to reach the other end?

15.2 A stone dropped from the top of a tower of height 300 m high splashes into the water of a pond near the base of the tower. When is the splash heard at the top given that the speed of sound in air is 340 m s^{-1} ? (g = 9.8 m s^{-2})

15.3 A steel wire has a length of 12.0 m and a mass of 2.10 kg. What should be the tension in the wire so that speed of a transverse wave on the wire equals the speed of sound in dry air at 20 °C = 343 m s^{-1}.

15.4 Use the formula $v = \sqrt{\dfrac{\gamma P}{\rho}}$ to explain why the speed of sound in air

(a) is independent of pressure,
(b) increases with temperature,
(c) increases with humidity.

15.5 You have learnt that a travelling wave in one dimension is represented by a function $y = f(x, t)$ where x and t must appear in the combination $x - v\,t$ or $x + v\,t$, i.e. $y = f(x \pm v\,t)$. Is the converse true? Examine if the following functions for y can possibly represent a travelling wave :

(a) $(x - vt)^2$
(b) $\log[(x + vt)/x_0]$
(c) $1/(x + vt)$

15.6 A bat emits ultrasonic sound of frequency 1000 kHz in air. If the sound meets a water surface, what is the wavelength of (a) the reflected sound, (b) the transmitted sound? Speed of sound in air is 340 m s^{-1} and in water 1486 m s^{-1}.

15.7 A hospital uses an ultrasonic scanner to locate tumours in a tissue. What is the wavelength of sound in the tissue in which the speed of sound is 1.7 km s^{-1} ? The operating frequency of the scanner is 4.2 MHz.

15.8 A transverse harmonic wave on a string is described by

$$y(x, t) = 3.0 \sin (36\ t + 0.018\ x + \pi/4)$$

where x and y are in cm and t in s. The positive direction of x is from left to right.

(a) Is this a travelling wave or a stationary wave ?
If it is travelling, what are the speed and direction of its propagation ?
(b) What are its amplitude and frequency ?
(c) What is the initial phase at the origin ?
(d) What is the least distance between two successive crests in the wave ?

15.9 For the wave described in Exercise 15.8, plot the displacement (y) versus (t) graphs for x = 0, 2 and 4 cm. What are the shapes of these graphs? In which aspects does the oscillatory motion in travelling wave differ from one point to another: amplitude, frequency or phase ?

15.10 For the travelling harmonic wave

$$y(x, t) = 2.0 \cos 2\pi (10t - 0.0080\ x + 0.35)$$

where x and y are in cm and t in s. Calculate the phase difference between oscillatory motion of two points separated by a distance of

(a) 4 m,
(b) 0.5 m,
(c) $\lambda/2$,
(d) $3\lambda/4$

15.11 The transverse displacement of a string (clamped at its both ends) is given by

$$y(x, t) = 0.06 \sin \left(\frac{2}{3}x\right) \cos (120\ \pi t)$$

where x and y are in m and t in s. The length of the string is 1.5 m and its mass is 3.0×10^{-2} kg.

Answer the following :

(a) Does the function represent a travelling wave or a stationary wave?

(b) Interpret the wave as a superposition of two waves travelling in opposite directions. What is the wavelength, frequency, and speed of each wave ?

(c) Determine the tension in the string.

15.12 (i) For the wave on a string described in Exercise 15.11, do all the points on the string oscillate with the same (a) frequency, (b) phase, (c) amplitude? Explain your answers. (ii) What is the amplitude of a point 0.375 m away from one end?

15.13 Given below are some functions of x and t to represent the displacement (transverse or longitudinal) of an elastic wave. State which of these represent (i) a travelling wave, (ii) a stationary wave or (iii) none at all:

(a) $y = 2 \cos (3x) \sin (10t)$

(b) $y = 2\sqrt{x - vt}$

(c) $y = 3 \sin (5x - 0.5t) + 4 \cos (5x - 0.5t)$

(d) $y = \cos x \sin t + \cos 2x \sin 2t$

15.14 A wire stretched between two rigid supports vibrates in its fundamental mode with a frequency of 45 Hz. The mass of the wire is 3.5×10^{-2} kg and its linear mass density is 4.0×10^{-2} kg m^{-1}. What is (a) the speed of a transverse wave on the string, and (b) the tension in the string?

15.15 A metre-long tube open at one end, with a movable piston at the other end, shows resonance with a fixed frequency source (a tuning fork of frequency 340 Hz) when the tube length is 25.5 cm or 79.3 cm. Estimate the speed of sound in air at the temperature of the experiment. The edge effects may be neglected.

15.16 A steel rod 100 cm long is clamped at its middle. The fundamental frequency of longitudinal vibrations of the rod are given to be 2.53 kHz. What is the speed of sound in steel?

15.17 A pipe 20 cm long is closed at one end. Which harmonic mode of the pipe is resonantly excited by a 430 Hz source ? Will the same source be in resonance with the pipe if both ends are open? (speed of sound in air is 340 m s^{-1}).

15.18 Two sitar strings A and B playing the note '*Ga*' are slightly out of tune and produce beats of frequency 6 Hz. The tension in the string A is slightly reduced and the beat frequency is found to reduce to 3 Hz. If the original frequency of A is 324 Hz, what is the frequency of B?

15.19 Explain why (or how):

(a) in a sound wave, a displacement node is a pressure antinode and vice versa,

(b) bats can ascertain distances, directions, nature, and sizes of the obstacles without any "eyes",

(c) a violin note and sitar note may have the same frequency, yet we can distinguish between the two notes,

(d) solids can support both longitudinal and transverse waves, but only longitudinal waves can propagate in gases, and

(e) the shape of a pulse gets distorted during propagation in a dispersive medium.

15.20 A train, standing at the outer signal of a railway station blows a whistle of frequency 400 Hz in still air. (i) What is the frequency of the whistle for a platform observer when the train (a) approaches the platform with a speed of 10 m s^{-1}, (b) recedes from the platform with a speed of 10 m s^{-1}? (ii) What is the speed of sound in each case ? The speed of sound in still air can be taken as 340 m s^{-1}.

15.21 A train, standing in a station-yard, blows a whistle of frequency 400 Hz in still air. The wind starts blowing in the direction from the yard to the station with at a speed of 10 m s^{-1}. What are the frequency, wavelength, and speed of sound for an observer standing on the station's platform? Is the situation exactly identical to the case when the air is still and the observer runs towards the yard at a speed of 10 m s^{-1}? The speed of sound in still air can be taken as 340 m s^{-1}

Additional Exercises

15.22 A travelling harmonic wave on a string is described by

$$y(x, t) = 7.5 \sin (0.0050x + 12t + \pi/4)$$

(a) what are the displacement and velocity of oscillation of a point at $x = 1$ cm, and $t = 1$ s? Is this velocity equal to the velocity of wave propagation?

(b) Locate the points of the string which have the same transverse displacements and velocity as the $x = 1$ cm point at $t = 2$ s, 5 s and 11 s.

15.23 A narrow sound pulse (for example, a short pip by a whistle) is sent across a medium. (a) Does the pulse have a definite (i) frequency, (ii) wavelength, (iii) speed of propagation? (b) If the pulse rate is 1 after every 20 s, (that is the whistle is blown for a split of second after every 20 s), is the frequency of the note produced by the whistle equal to 1/20 or 0.05 Hz ?

15.24 One end of a long string of linear mass density 8.0×10^{-3} kg m^{-1} is connected to an electrically driven tuning fork of frequency 256 Hz. The other end passes over a pulley and is tied to a pan containing a mass of 90 kg. The pulley end absorbs all the incoming energy so that reflected waves at this end have negligible amplitude. At $t = 0$, the left end (fork end) of the string $x = 0$ has zero transverse displacement ($y = 0$) and is moving along positive y-direction. The amplitude of the wave is 5.0 cm. Write down the transverse displacement y as function of x and t that describes the wave on the string.

15.25 A SONAR system fixed in a submarine operates at a frequency 40.0 kHz. An enemy submarine moves towards the SONAR with a speed of 360 km h^{-1}. What is the frequency of sound reflected by the submarine ? Take the speed of sound in water to be 1450 m s^{-1}.

15.26 Earthquakes generate sound waves inside the earth. Unlike a gas, the earth can experience both transverse (S) and longitudinal (P) sound waves. Typically the speed of S wave is about 4.0 km s^{-1}, and that of P wave is 8.0 km s^{-1}. A seismograph records P and S waves from an earthquake. The first P wave arrives 4 min before the first S wave. Assuming the waves travel in straight line, at what distance does the earthquake occur ?

15.27 A bat is flitting about in a cave, navigating via ultrasonic beeps. Assume that the sound emission frequency of the bat is 40 kHz. During one fast swoop directly toward a flat wall surface, the bat is moving at 0.03 times the speed of sound in air. What frequency does the bat hear reflected off the wall ?